Southern A&E

architects & engineers

PROJECT MANUAL

SA&E PROJECT NUMBER: 01-697-027
BID PACKAGE: BP#1 – BUILDING CONSTRUCTION
ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION: April 08 , 2019

NEW FIELD HOUSE FOR:

# UNION COUNTY HIGH SCHOOL

153 Panther Way, Blairsville, GA 30512

## UNION COUNTY SCHOOLS

124 Hughes Street, Blairsville, GA 30512

FACILITY CODE NUMBER:
FUNDING: FY2019 / LOCAL

STATE OF GEORGIA
GREGORY U. SCHILLINGER
CERTIFICATE NO. RA012616
REGISTERED ARCHITECT

GEORGIA REGISTERED No. 770 LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT REBECCA REAGAN KIRK

GEORGIA REGISTERED No. 27857 PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER FRANK E. CAMPO, JR.

GEORGIA REGISTERED PE028483 PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER MICHAEL C. WALDBILLIG

GEORGIA REGISTERED No. 13785 PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER MICHAEL S. EIDSON



1. 00 03 00 - ADVERTISEMENT/INVITATION FOR BIDS
2. 00 30 00 - BID FORMS
3. 01 29 00.A- STATUTORY AFFIDAVIT
4. 01 29 00.B- CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTIES
5. 01 29 00.C- ROOFING GUARANTEE
6. 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUEST FORM

**WARNING**: Contractors, subcontractors, vendors and suppliers are advised that the Contract Documents consist of Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Post-Bid Addenda and Change Orders that have been printed, bound and numbered by the Architect. Any documents reproduced by parties other than the Architect, whether hard copy or electronic format, shall not be considered part of the Contract Documents and do not supersede the provisions of the Contract Documents. Contractors, subcontractors, vendors and suppliers are solely responsible for verifying that information used for bidding, development of shop drawings and construction of the facility are identical to the Architect's Contract Documents.

HOUSE BILL 1079 REQUIRES THAT NO GOVERNMENTAL ENTITY SHALL ISSUE OR CAUSE TO BE ISSUED ANY ADDENDA MODIFYING PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS WITHIN A PERIOD OF 72 HOURS PRIOR TO THE ADVERTISED TIME FOR THE OPENING OF BIDS, EXCLUDING SATURDAYS, SUNDAYS, AND LEGAL HOLIDAYS. THEREFORE, SOUTHERN A & E REQUESTS THAT ALL QUESTIONS REQUIRING CLARIFICATION BY ADDENDUM BE SUBMITTED NO LESS THAN ***96*** HOURS PRIOR TO THE ADVERTISED TIME FOR THE OPENING OF BIDS.

# Table of Contents

06 10 53 Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry
06 16 00 Sheathing
06 41 13 Wood-Veneer Faced Cabinets

**DIVISION 7- THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 21 00 Thermal Insulation
07 41 13 Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels
07 42 13.13 Formed Metal Wall Panels
07 42 17 Metal Soffit Panels
07 62 00 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
07 71 00 Roof Specialties
07 72 00 Roof Accessories
07 84 13 Penetration Firestopping
07 84 46 Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
07 92 00 Joint Sealants

**DIVISION 8- OPENINGS**

08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08 14 16 Flush Wood Doors
08 33 23 Overhead Coiling Doors
08 51 13 Aluminum Windows
08 71 00 Door Hardware
08 80 00 Glazing

**DIVISION 9- FINISHES**

09 22 16 Non-Structural Metal Framing
09 29 00 Gypsum Board
09 51 13 Acoustical Panel Ceilings
09 65 13 Resilient Wall Base and Accessories
09 65 16 Resilient Sheet Flooring
09 65 19 Resilient Tile Flooring
09 67 23 Resinous Flooring
09 91 13 Exterior Painting
09 91 23 Interior Painting

**DIVISION 10- SPECIALTIES**

10 14 23 Panel Signs
10 28 00 Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
10 44 16 Fire Extinguishers and Cabinets
10 51 13 Lockers

**DIVISION 11- EQUIPMENT**

11 13 13 Loading Dock Bumpers
11 31 13 Commercial Appliances

**DIVISION 12- FURNISHINGS**

**NOT USED**

**DIVISION 13- SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13 34 19 Metal Building Systems

**DIVISION 14- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

**NOT USED**

**DIVISION 21- FIRE SUPPRESSION**

**NOT USED**

**DIVISION 22- PLUMBING**

22 05 13 Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment
22 05 16 Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping
22 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping

| | |
|---|---|
| 22 05 18 | Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping |
| 22 05 19 | Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping |
| 22 05 23 | General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping |
| 22 05 29 | Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment |
| 22 05 33 | Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping |
| 22 05 48.13 | Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment |
| 22 05 53 | Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment |
| 22 07 19 | Plumbing Piping Insulation |
| 22 11 13 | Facility Water Distribution Piping |
| 22 11 16 | Domestic Water Piping |
| 22 11 19 | Domestic Water Piping Specialties |
| 22 11 23 | Domestic Water Pumps |
| 22 13 13 | Facility Sanitary Sewers |
| 22 13 16 | Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping |
| 22 13 19 | Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties |
| 22 13 21 | Miscellaneous Drain Piping |
| 22 13 23 | Sanitary Waste Interceptors |
| 22 32 00 | Domestic Water Filtration Equipment |
| 22 34 00 | Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters |
| 22 42 13.13 | Commercial Water Closets |
| 22 42 13.16 | Commercial Urinals |
| 22 42 16.13 | Commercial Lavatories |
| 22 42 16.16 | Commercial Sinks |
| 22 42 23 | Commercial Showers and Bathtubs |
| 22 47 16 | Pressure Water Coolers |

**DIVISION 23- HVAC**

| | |
|---|---|
| 23 05 13 | Common Motor Requirements For HVAC Equipment |
| 23 05 17 | Sleeves And Sleeve Seals For HVAC Piping |
| 23 05 18 | Escutcheons For HVAC Piping |
| 23 05 29 | Hangers And Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment |
| 23 05 48.13 | Vibration Controls For HVAC |
| 23 05 53 | Identification For HVAC Piping And Equipment |
| 23 05 93 | Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing For HVAC |
| 23 07 13 | Duct Insulation |
| 23 07 19 | HVAC Piping Insulation |
| 23 09 00 | Instrumentation And Control For HVAC |
| 23 11 26 | Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping |
| 23 23 00 | Refrigerant Piping |
| 23 31 13 | Metal Ducts |
| 23 33 00 | Air Duct Accessories |
| 23 34 23 | HVAC Power Ventilators |
| 23 36 00 | Air Terminal Units |
| 23 37 13 | Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles |
| 23 41 00 | Particulate Air Filtration |
| 23 44 00 | Air Treatment Devices |
| 23 74 13 | Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units |
| 23 74 33 | Dedicated Outdoor Air Units |
| 23 81 13 | Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners |
| 23 81 19 | Self-Contained Air-Conditioners |
| 23 82 39.19 | Wall And Ceiling Unit Heaters |
| 23 91 16 | Mechanical Wall Louvers |

**DIVISION 26- ELECTRICAL**

| | |
|---|---|
| 26 01 00 | General Electrical Requirements |
| 26 05 19 | Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables |
| 26 05 19.23 | Manufactured Wiring Systems |
| 26 05 26 | Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems |
| 26 05 29 | Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems |
| 26 05 33 | Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems |
| 26 05 44 | Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling |
| 26 05 53 | Identification for Electrical Systems |
| 26 09 23 | Lighting Control Devices |
| 26 24 16 | Panelboards |
| 26 27 26 | Wiring Devices |
| 26 28 13 | Fuses |
| 26 28 16 | Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers |
| 26 51 00 | Interior Lighting |

**DIVISION 27- COMMUNICATIONS**

**DIVISION 28- ELECTRONIC SAFETY & SECURITY**

**DIVISION 31- SITE CONSTRUCTION**

| | |
|---|---|
| 31 10 00 | Site Clearing |
| 31 10 19 | Erosion, Sedimentation and Pollution Control > 1 ac |
| 31 20 00 | Earth Moving |
| 31 31 16 | Termite Control |

**DIVISION 32- EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

| | |
|---|---|
| 32 12 16 | Asphalt Paving |
| 32 13 13 | Concrete Paving |
| 32 17 23 | Pavement Markings |
| 32 32 23 | Segmental Retaining Walls |
| 32 92 00 | Turf and Grasses |

**DIVISION 33- UTILITIES**

| | |
|---|---|
| 33 41 00 | Storm Utility Drainage Piping |
| 33 46 00 | Subdrainage |

**APPENDIX**

Geotechnical Report for Union Co. Field House

1.1 SOLICITATION

A. Sealed proposals from General Contractors will be received by Union County Schools in the Board office at 124 HUGHES STREET BLAIRSVILLE, GA 30512 until 2:00 pm in at on May 07, 2019 for construction of:

New field house for Union County High School
153 Panther Way, Blairsville, GA 30512

A mandatory pre-proposal meeting will be held at May 01, 2019 at 11:00 AM at 153 Panther Way, Blairsville, GA 30512. Any person or entity that fails to attend the mandatory pre-proposal meeting will not be permitted to submit a Proposal for the Project and any Proposal submitted by a person or entity that did not attend the mandatory pre-proposal meeting will be returned unopened.

B. Competitive Sealed Proposals will be opened by the Review Committee and scored as outlined in the Instructions to Proposers. Proposals will not be opened publicly. The Owner will notify the proposers, in writing, of the results.

1.2 BID DOCUMENTS

A. Proposal forms and construction documents may be examined at Southern A & E's office at 7951 Troon Circle, Austell, Georgia 30168 or by calling 770-819-7777 to request a password and a link to Southern A & E's online plan service to view the documents. Upon further request documents may be downloaded for printing or hardcopies may be ordered through the online plan service. Only complete sets will be provided for downloading or as hardcopies.

B. No deposits are required and no refunds will be made.

C. Construction documents will not be sent to plan rooms.

1.3 CONDITIONS

A. No proposal may be withdrawn for a period of thirty (30) days after proposals are submitted.

B. Proposals shall include: a) the completed [Competitive Sealed] Proposal Form [b) the signed Bid Form c) the Bid Bond] d) The "Contractor Affidavit and Agreement" demonstrating compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, Georgia Security and Immigration Compliance Act and e) affidavits demonstrating compliance with O.C.G.A. 50-36-1, Verification of Lawful Presence Within United states through the use of the Systematic Alien Verification for Entitlements (SAVE) program which are available on the Georgia Audits and Accounts website (http://www.audits.ga.gov/NALGAD/section_3_affidavits.html)

C. Retain the following paragraph for Competitive Sealed Proposals only.

D. Bid bond in the amount of five percent of the base bid is required and must be submitted with the bid. A bid bond is the **only acceptable form of bid security**. **No** personal checks, cashier's checks, certified checks or cash will be accepted in lieu of the bid bond.

E. Performance and payment bonds in the amount of one-hundred percent (100%) of the contract sum will be required prior to commencement of construction.

F. All bonds shall be written by a surety licensed to conduct business in Georgia, listed on the Federal Register and acceptable to the Owner.

G. Owner reserves the right to waive technicalities and irregularities and to reject any or all proposals.

1.4 SOLICITED BY:

Mr. John Hill, Superintendent
Union County Schools

**END OF SECTION 00 03 00**

1.1 CONSIDERATION: To be considered by the Owner, each Competitive Sealed Proposal must be made in accordance with these Instructions to Proposers.

1.2 EXAMINATION: Proposers (General Contractor) shall carefully examine the documents and the construction site to obtain first-hand knowledge of existing conditions. If the General Contractor's site inspection reveals conditions which would alter the scope and cost of the project, the General Contractor shall notify the Architect, in writing, immediately. General Contractors will not be given extra payments for conditions which can be determined by examining the site and the bidding documents.

1.3 QUESTIONS: Submit all questions concerning the Contract Documents to the Architect in writing. Replies will be issued to all proposers of record as Addenda to the Drawings and Specifications and will become part of the Contract for Construction. Addenda will not be issued to parties who are not recorded holders of bidding documents. The Architect and he Owner will not be responsible for oral clarifications.

1.4 PREPARATION OF COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS: Competitive Sealed Proposals including the Bid Form shall be made on unaltered Proposal and Bid Forms furnished by the Architect. Fill in all blank spaces in the attachments and submit 6 copies of the Proposal Form in a sealed envelope. In a separate sealed envelope, submit 2 copies of the Bid Form, with the Bid Bond attached. Forms shall be signed with the name of the signatory typed below the signature. Where the Proposer is a corporation, Forms must be signed with the legal name of the corporation followed by the name, state of incorporation and legal signature of an officer of the corporation authorized to bind the corporation to a contract.

1.5 BID SECURITY: A Bid Bond shall be attached to the Bid Form and shall be payable to Union County High School in the amount of five percent of the bid amount, issued by a surety licensed to conduct business in Georgia. A Bid Bond is the only acceptable form of bid security. No personal checks, cashier's checks, certified checks or cash will be accepted in lieu of the Bid Bond. The Surety must be approved by the United States Department of the Treasury Fiscal Services and must be listed in the latest edition of Circular 570, as required by the Owner and any exceptions must be pre-approved by the Owner five (5) days prior to bid opening. The successful Proposer's bond will be retained until that Proposer has signed the contract and has furnished the required performance and payment bonds. The Owner reserves the right to retain the bonds of the next three (3) lowest Proposers until a contract has been signed.

1.6 PERFORMANCE AND LABOR & MATERIAL PAYMENT BONDS: The accepted Proposer shall furnish a proper Performance Bond and Labor & Material Payment Bond covering the full amount of the contract price as security for the faithful performance of all work under the Contract and payment of all charges in connection with the Contract. The cost of these bonds shall be included in the Proposer's bid amount.

1.7 SECURITY AND IMMIGRATION COMPLIANCE: A "Contractor Affidavit and Agreement" shall be attached to the Proposal Form demonstrating compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, Georgia Security and Immigration Compliance Act. Affidavit may be obtained at the Georgia Department of Labor website, www.dol.state.ga.us. Proposer shall also comply with provisions of O.C.G.A. 50-36-1, Verification of Lawful Presence Within United States through the use of the Systematic Alien Verification for Entitlements (SAVE) program and, upon selection, shall provide verification of compliance with executed affidavits which are available on the Georgia Audits and Accounts website (http://www.audits.ga.gov/NALGAD/Files/OCGA_50-36-1xex2x/pdf).

1.8 PRINTING OF CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS: Proposer is responsible for the cost of printing all construction documents needed for the construction of the project. The cost of printing the documents shall be included in the Proposer's base bid amount.

1.9 SUBCONTRACTORS: The names of all categories of subcontractors listed on the Bid Form shall be filled in with only one subcontractor for each classification and shall become the contractual provider of services for that classification unless the Owner objects or agrees otherwise.

1.10 SUBMITTAL: Submit 6 copies of the completed Proposal Form in an opaque, sealed envelope. Submit 2 copies of the completed Bid Form with the Bid Bond in a separate opaque, sealed envelope. Identify the project name and Proposer's name on the face of each envelope.

1.11 MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL: Proposers may not modify their proposals after submittal. Proposers may withdraw their proposals at any time before being opened, but may not resubmit them. No proposal may be withdrawn or modified after the opening except where the award of the contract has been delayed for more than thirty (30) days.

1.12 DISQUALIFICATION: The Owner reserves the right to disqualify proposals, before or after opening, upon evidence of collusion with the intent to defraud or of any other illegal practices upon the part of the Proposer. The Owner reserves the right to disqualify Competitive Sealed Proposals which are submitted without the proper bid security or without subcontractors listed on the Bid Form.

1.13 AWARD: A contract will be awarded based on the score obtained by the Review Committee from evaluating the Proposer's qualifications and the Proposer's bid using the criteria established in the Request for Proposal. The Review Committee will evaluate and score each Proposer based on the qualifications presented on the Proposal Form. After scoring each Proposer's qualifications, the sealed bids will be opened and scored separately. Qualification scores will then be combined with bid scores for each Proposer to determine the successful Pro-

poser. In evaluating the Proposer's bid the base bid amount may be reduced by deductive alternates, if any, taken in consecutive ascending order. Additive alternates as selected by the Owner, will be used to determine the low bidder. If multiple individual and combined bids are requested, the Owner will accept the combination of individual or combined bids that are deemed by the Owner to be in the Owner's best interest. The Owner reserves the right to accept any Proposal, to reject any or all Proposals, or to negotiate Contract Terms with the various Proposers, when such is deemed by the Owner to be in the Owner's best interest.

1.14 CONTRACT FORM: The form of the Contract shall be AIA Document A101, 2007.

1.15 COMMENCEMENT: The accepted Proposer shall cooperate with and assist the Owner in preparing the Contract, and within 10 days following its presentation shall execute the Contract and shall return it to the Owner along with the required performance and payment bonds and certificates of insurance. The accepted Proposer must be ready to begin work within ten (10) days of the Contract date or ten (10) days following receipt of a written Notice to Proceed from the Owner or the Owner's representative.

**END OF SECTION 00 10 00**

1.1 SUBMITTED TO: Mr. John Hill, Superintendent
Union County Schools

A. I have received and reviewed the Bid Documents dated March 01, 2019 and titled:

NEW FIELD HOUSE FOR

UNION COUNTY HIGH SCHOOL

I have received Addenda #___ thru #___ and have included their provisions in my bid.

B. I have examined both the Bid Documents and the Project Site.

C. In submitting this bid I agree:
1. To hold by bid open until **thirty (30)** days after bid opening.
2. To accept the provisions of the Instructions to Bidders.
3. To execute a Contract, if awarded, on the basis of this bid and to furnish Performance and Payment Bonds.
4. To accomplish the work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
5. To construct New Fieldhouse for Union County High School for the individual project base bid sum of

_____dollars ($_____) and to com

plete all work in _____consecutive calendar days.

D. In submitting this bid I further agree to the following unit prices for the work indicated:

1. To excavate alluvial deposits under slab, waste **off-site** and replace with crushed #57 stone obtained **off-**

2. **site** for the unit price of ($_____) per cubic yard.

3. To excavate alluvial deposits under wall footings, waste **off-site** and replace with crushed #57 stone ob

tained **off-site** for the unit price of ($_____) per cubic yard.

4. To excavate trench rock, waste **on-site** and replace with suitable compacted fill obtained **off-site** for the

unit price of ($_____) per cubic yard.

5. To perform rock boring as required for utility installation for the unit price of ($_____) per linear foot.
6.
7. To provide and install additional Type C silt fence for the unit price of ($_____) per linear foot.

8. To provide and install additional erosion control matting as specified for the unit price of ($_____) per square yard.

9. To provide and install straw mulching for the unit price of ($_____) per square foot.

10. To provide and install additional temporary grassing as specified for the unit price of ($_____) per square foot.

11. To provide and install additional permanent grassing as specified for the unit price of ($_____) per square foot.

12. To provide and install additional Tiftway 419 sod as specified for the unit price of ($_____) per square foot.

13. To provide and install additional two (2) foot high by eight (8) foot long check dam with two (2) inch to

ten (10) inch stone for the unit price of ($_____) each.

14. To provide and install additional staked, hay bale check dam for the unit price of ($_____) per bale.

15. To provide and machine place additional rip-rap for the unit price of ($_____) per ton.

16. To provide and install additional Sd2-F inlet sediment trap, fabric-wire backed with support frame for the unit price of ($_____) each.

17. To provide and install additional Sd2 block and gravel inlet sediment trap for the unit price of ($_____) each.

18. To provide and install additional "Silt Saver", or equal, inlet sediment trap for the unit price of ($_____) each.

E. In submitting this bid, I further agree to adjust the base bid price upon acceptance of selected alternates as listed below:

1. Alternate # 1: Pre Engineered Metal Building System Design

**Add** ($_____)

2. Alternate # 2: Metal Open Front Athletic Lockers

**Add** ($_____)

3. Alternate # 3: HDPE Open Front Athletic Lockers

**Add** ($_____)

Alternate # 4: Metal Wall Panel Veneer
**Add** ($_____)

F. I have included, in my base bid, Allowances for removal and replacement of unsuitable soils based on my unit prices and as outlined in Section 31 20 00, Earthmoving in the Specifications.

G. I have attached the required Contractor Affidavit and Agreement demonstrating compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, Georgia Security and Immigration Compliance Act and affidavits verifying compliance with provisions of O.C.G.A. 50-36-1, Verification of Lawful Presence Within United States.

H. I will contract with the listed subcontractors for the work categories described below:

1. Grading:_____

2. Plumbing:_____

3. HVAC:_____

4. Electrical:_____

5. Roofing:_____

I. I have attached the required Bid Bond:

1. By:_____

2. Signed:_____

3. Title:_____

4. Date:_____

5. Company_____

6. Address:_____

**END OF SECTION 00 30 00**
01-697-027

# AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

**for the following PROJECT:**
*(Name and location or address)*

New Field House For:
Union County High School
153 Panther Way
Blairsville, GA 30512

**THE OWNER:**
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Union County Schools
124 Hughes Street
Blairsville, GA 30512

**THE ARCHITECT:**
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Southern A & E, LLC
7951 Troon Circle
Austell, GA 30168

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

**TABLE OF ARTICLES**



Init.
/

14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

**INDEX**
(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### § 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### § 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### § 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### § 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### § 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### § 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### § 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### § 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### § 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### § 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### § 1.6 Notice

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### § 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### § 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## ARTICLE 2 OWNER

### § 2.1 General

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### § 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### § 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

### § 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

### § 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

## ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

### § 3.1 General

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

### § 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### § 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### § 3.4 Labor and Materials

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### § 3.5 Warranty

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### § 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### § 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### § 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- **.1** allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- **.2** Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- **.3** whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

**§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

**§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

**§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely

upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### § 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### § 3.14 Cutting and Patching

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### § 3.15 Cleaning Up

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### § 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### § 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### § 3.18 Indemnification

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

### § 4.1 General

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### § 4.2 Administration of the Contract

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### § 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

**§ 4.2.13** The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.14** The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

**§ 5.1.1** A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

**§ 5.1.2** A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**§ 5.2.1** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.2** The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.3** If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

**§ 5.2.4** The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

**§ 5.4.1** Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- **.1** assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- **.2** assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

### § 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### § 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### § 7.2 Change Orders

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- **.1** The change in the Work;
- **.2** The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- **.3** The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- **.1** Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- **.2** Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- **.3** Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- **.4** As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

.1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
.2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
.3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
.4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
.5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

### § 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

## ARTICLE 8 TIME

### § 8.1 Definitions

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

**§ 8.1.4** The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

**§ 8.2 Progress and Completion**

**§ 8.2.1** Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

**§ 8.2.2** The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

**§ 8.2.3** The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

**§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time**

**§ 8.3.1** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

**§ 8.3.2** Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 8.3.3** This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

**§ 9.1 Contract Sum**

**§ 9.1.1** The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.1.2** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

**§ 9.2 Schedule of Values**

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

**§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

**§ 9.3.1** At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

### § 9.4 Certificates for Payment

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

### § 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- **.1** defective Work not remedied;
- **.2** third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- **.3** failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

.4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
.5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
.6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
.7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

**§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

### § 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### § 9.8 Substantial Completion

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

**§ 9.10.1** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- **.1** liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- **.2** failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- **.3** terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- **.4** audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

**§ 10.2.1** The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

.1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
.2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
.3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**
If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**
**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

### § 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

## ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

### § 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or

expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

**§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

**§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

**§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**
The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

**§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**
**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

**ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**
**§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**
**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 12.2 Correction of Work**
**§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**
The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**
**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during

that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### § 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### § 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### § 13.2 Successors and Assigns

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### § 13.3 Rights and Remedies

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

### § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

### § 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- **.1** Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- **.2** An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- **.3** Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- **.4** The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

**§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- **.1** repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- **.2** fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- **.3** repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- **.4** otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- **.1** Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- **.2** Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- **.3** Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

**§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- **.1** that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- **.2** that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

**§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- **.1** cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

**.2** take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and

**.3** except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### § 15.1 Claims

#### § 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### § 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### § 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### § 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### § 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### § 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

**§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

**.1** damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and

**.2** damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

**§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.3** The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

**§ 15.4.4.1** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

**§ 15.4.4.2** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

**§ 15.4.4.3** The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

1.1 SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS:

A. The following Supplementary Conditions modify, change, delete from or add to the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Form A201-2017. Where any part of the General Conditions is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered provisions of that part remain in effect.

1.2 ARTICLE 1 – GENERAL PROVISIONS

A. Add new paragraph to read: "1.2.4 The provisions contained in all Division 1 Specification Sections – General Requirements, govern all sections of the specifications."

1.3 ARTICLE 3 – CONTRACTOR

A. Add the following sentence to the end of paragraph 3.7.1: "Per the Official Code of Georgia Annotated 20-2-261, a local board of education shall be exempt from county and municipal assessments and fees for county and municipal building permits and inspections and exempt from county and municipal impact fees. This exemption supersedes any county and municipal fee requirements references in other sections of the Project Manual."

B. Add the following to the end of paragraph 3.7.2:

1. 3.7.2.1 Pursuant to Chapter 44-14-361.5 of the Official Code of Georgia Annotated, the Contractor/ Construction Manager, shall, within 15 days after physically commencing work on the property, file a NOTICE OF COMMENCEMENT with the clerk of the superior court in the county in which the project is located.
2. 3.7.2.2 Pursuant to Chapter 44.14.361.5(c) of the Official Code of Georgia Annotated, any person providing labor, services, or materials for the improvement of the property and does not have a contract with the General Contractor/Construction Manager, shall, within 30 days following the first delivery of labor, services or material, give a written NOTICE TO CONTRACTOR.
3. 3.7.2.3 The General Contractor/Construction Manager shall determine when the work meets the requirements for 80% and 100% inspections as defined by the Georgia State Fire Marshal's office and shall apply for inspections using application forms available at www.gainsurance.org.
4. 3.7.2.4 The General Contractor/Construction Manager shall bear the costs of any additional follow-up inspections performed by the Fire Marshal on the contractual portions of the Work following the first follow-up inspection.

1.4 ARTICLE 7 – CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Delete from paragraph 7.3.4 the words "the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount" and insert the words "paragraph 7.3.11".

B. Add new paragraph 7.3.11 and subparagraphs 7.3.11.1, 7.3.11.2, 7.3.11.3, 7.3.11.4 and 7.3.11.5 as follows:

1. 7.3.11 Changes in the Contract Sum described in paragraphs 7.2 and 7.3, shall include a combined allowance for overhead and profit, included in the total cost to the Owner, based on the following:
   a. 7.3.11.1. For the Contractor/Construction Manager, for any work performed by his own forces, fifteen percent (15%) of the cost.
   b. 7.3.11.2. For the Contractor/Construction Manager, for any work performed by his subcontractor, seven and one half percent (7 ½%) of the amount due the subcontractor.
   c. 7.3.11.3. For each Subcontractor involved, for any work performed by his own forces, fifteen percent (15%) of the subcontractor's cost.
   d. 7.3.11.4. The only costs to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with paragraphs 7.3.7.1 thru 7.3.7.5.
   e. 7.3.11.5. In order to facilitate checking and verification of change order proposals for both increases and decreases in the contract amount, all change order proposals shall be accompanied by a complete cost breakdown of the items included in 7.3.7.1 thru 7.3.7.5 for both the General Contractor/Construction Manager and the subcontractors involved in the change.

1.5 ARTICLE 8 – TIME

A. In paragraph 8.3.1, delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

1.6 ARTICLE 9 – PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

A. In paragraph 9.3.1 delete the words 'if required under Section 9.2" and insert the words "as provided for in the Agreement and in accordance with the Official Code of Georgia Annotated, Section 13-10-80".

B. In paragraph 9.3.2 delete the second sentence which reads "If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing." In the last sentence, delete the words "or off the" and the words "and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site".

C. In paragraph 9.7 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

1.7 Article 10 – PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

A. In paragraph 10.2.1.2 delete the word "whether" and the words "or off".

1.8 ARTICLE 11 – INSURANCE AND BONDS

A. Add the following sentence to the end of paragraph 11.1.1: "Prior to commencement of the Work, the Contractor/Construction Manager shall file copies of the Certificate of Insurance with the Owner and the Architect."

**Consult with Owner to verify that insurance coverages and limits listed below are sufficient to protect the Owner's interest.**

B. Add new paragraphs 11.1.1.1, 11.1.1.2, 11.1.1.3 and 11.1.1.4 to read as follows:

1. "11.1.1.1 The insurance required by subparagraph 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than the following limits or as required by law, whichever is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until the date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment and, with respect to the Contractor's/Construction Manager's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of work or for such other period for maintenance of completed work as specified in the Contract Documents.

.1 Workers Compensation:

.a State: Statutory

.b Employer's Liability:

.1 Each Accident: $500,000

.2 Disease Policy Limit: $500,000

.3 Disease Each Employee: $500,000

.2 Comprehensive General Liability, including Premises-Operations; Independent Contractor's Protective; Products and Completed Operations; Broad Form Property Damage; X-C/U Explosion, Collapse and Underground Coverage.

.a General Aggregate: $2,000,000

.b Products and Completed Operations Aggregate: $2,000,000

.c Products and Completed Operations – Each Occurrence: $1,000,000

.d Personal and Advertising Injury: $1,000,000

.e Fire Damage – Any One Event: $100,000

.3 Comprehensive Automobile Liability

.a Combined Single Limits: $1,000,000

.4 Umbrella Excess Liability

.a General Aggregate: $1,000,000

.b Products and Completed Operations Aggregate: $1,000,000

.c Products and Completed Operations – Each Occurrence: $1,000,000

.e Personal and Advertising Injury: $1,000,000

**Architectural Project Manager must choose one of the following two paragraphs based on whether the project in new construction or additions/renovations. For new construction, retain the first paragraph and delete the second paragraph. For addition/renovation projects, delete the first paragraph and retain the second paragraph. Also for addition/renovation projects the PM must consult with the Owner's representative to determine which party shall purchase Property Insurance and must also determine the value of the property to be covered. Insert that value in the space provided. Though Owners typically require the Contractor/Construction Manager to purchase this coverage, the cost of coverage would be lower if purchased by the Owner.**

2. 11.1.1.2 Property Insurance for New Construction: The Contractor/Construction Manager shall purchase and maintain, in a company lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the project is located, property insurance upon the entire Work at the site, including all existing facilities which are being added to or renovated, to the full insurable value thereof. Such insurance shall be in a company or companies against which the Owner has no reasonable objection. This insurance shall include the interest of the Owner, the Contractor/Construction Manager, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work and shall insure against the perils of fire and extended coverage and shall include "all risk" insurance for physical loss or damage including, without duplication of coverage, theft, vandalism and malicious mischief. If not covered under "all risk" insurance or otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall effect and maintain similar property insurance on portions of the Work stored off-site, if specifically allowed by the Owner in writing, or in transit when such portions of the Work are to be included in Application for Payment under subparagraph 9.3.2."

a. Deductibles: If by the terms of this insurance, any mandatory deductibles are required or if the Contractor/Construction Manager should elect, with the concurrence of the Owner, to increase the mandatory deductible amounts or purchase this insurance with voluntary deductible amounts, the Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for payment of the amount of all deductibles in the event of a paid claim. If separate contractors are added as insured's to be covered by this policy, the separate contractors shall be responsible for payment of the appropriate part of any deductibles in the event claims are paid on their part of the Project."

b. Partial Occupancy: Partial occupancy or use in accordance with paragraph 9.9 may commence after the insurance company providing property insurance has consented to such partial occupancy or use by endorsement or otherwise. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall take appropriate steps to obtain consent of the insurance company and the Owner and Contractor/Construction

Manager shall, without mutual consent, take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse or reduction of insurance coverage."

3. 11.1.1.3 Boiler and Machinery Insurance: The Contractor/Construction Manager shall purchase and maintain boiler and machinery insurance required by the Contract Documents or by law, which shall specifically cover such objects during installation and until final acceptance by the Owner; this insurance shall include interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work and the Owner and Contractor shall be named insureds.
4. 11.1.1.4 Before an exposure to loss may occur, the Contractor/Construction Manager shall file with the Owner two certified copies of each policy that includes insurance coverages required by 11.3. Each policy shall contain all generally applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions and endorsements related to the Project. If the Owner is damaged by failure of the Contractor/Construction Manager to maintain such insurance and to so notify the Owner, then the Contractor/Construction Manager shall bear all reasonable costs properly attributable thereto."

C. Delete the first sentence in paragraph 11.1.2 and substitute the following: "The Contractor/Construction Manager shall furnish a Performance Bond and a Labor and Material Payment Bond written for 100% of the Construction Cost and covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder as stipulated in the bidding requirements and the Agreement, on the date of execution of the Agreement."

D. Add a new paragraph 11.1.3.1 to read as follows: "11.1.3.1 Should the Contractor/Construction Manager elect to require that certain subcontractors provide Performance Bonds and Labor and Material Payment Bonds on their portion of the Work, the cost of these subcontractor provided bonds shall be the responsibility of the Contractor/Construction Manager and shall not be included in the Guaranteed Maximum Price. The cost of these subcontractor provided bonds shall be itemized as a separate line item on the subcontractor's bid form. However, should the Owner require the Contractor/Construction Manager to contract with a subcontractor against the advise of the Contractor/Construction Manager, the Owner shall pay for the cost of required subcontractor Performance Bonds and Labor and Material Payment Bonds."

E. After the first sentence of paragraph 11.1.4 insert the following: "The insurance certificates and policies required by Article 11 shall contain a provision that coverage afforded under the policies will not be canceled, changed, allowed to expire or that its limits reduced until 15 days after the Owner has received written notice evidenced by return receipt of a registered letter."

F. Delete paragraph 11.2.2 entirely.

G. Delete paragraph 11.2.3 entirely.

1.9 ARTICLE 13 – MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

A. Delete the last sentence in paragraph 13.1.

1.10 ARTICLE 15 – CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

A. Add the following sentence to the end of paragraph 15.1.5: "No increases in the Contract Sum will be awarded for adverse weather conditions encountered during the construction of the Project."

B. In paragraph 15.2.1 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

C. In paragraph 15.2.5 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

D. In paragraph 15.2.6.1 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

E. In paragraph 15.3.1 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

F. In paragraph 15.3.2 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

G. In paragraph 15.3.2 delete the last sentence.

H. In paragraph 15.3.3 delete the words "binding dispute resolution" and insert the word "litigation".

I. Delete Article 15.4 Arbitration.

J. Delete Article 15.4.4 Consolidation and Joinder.

**END OF SECTION 00 80 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

1. The construction of a new approximate 6,500 square foot field house facility to include locker room, office and meeting spaces, laundry and equipment storage. The construction will be load bearing masonry with light gage metal stud trusses and metal roof system
2. The Work includes, but is not limited to:

a. Demolition of existing site elements.
b. Site Improvements
c. Site clearing and grading.
d. Slope protection and erosion control.
e. Construction of new field house facility
f. New athletic lockers
g. Commercial washer and dryer
h. Grassing.
i. As-built drawing.
j. NPDES storm water monitoring and inspections.

3. The Work does not include:

a. Demolition of existing fieldhouse.
b. County and municipal permit fees, inspection fees and impact fees.
c. Geotechnical testing and engineering.
d. Loose equipment and furniture.
e. Ice machine
f. Training room equipment including hot tubs and taping stations
g. Metal storage shelving.
h. Residential appliances.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION DELIVERY METHOD

A. Design-Bid-Build.

1.4 CONTRACTS

A. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

B. Contract form for this project is AIA A101-2007.

1. Structural Tests and Special Inspections: The Owner will contract directly with a material testing and special inspections agency as specified in Section 01 41 00. Administration, coordination and scheduling if this work will be transferred to the General Contractor/Construction Manager.

1.5 ACCESS TO SITE

A. General: Contractor/Construction Manager shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's/Construction Manager's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

B. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to **areas within the Contract limits** indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.

a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

1.6 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations including limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner not less than [**two**] <**Insert number**> days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.

C. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.

1. Notify Owner not less than [**two**] <**Insert number**> days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.

2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.

D. Controlled Substances: Use of any controlled substances **including tobacco products** are not permitted on Project site.

E. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor/Construction Manager personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

F. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor/Construction Manager personnel working on Project site.

1. Contractor/Construction Manager shall comply, and shall require all subcontractors and sub-subcontractors to comply, with the Immigration and Control Act of 1986 and with the Georgia Security and Immigration Act of 2006.
2. Contractor/Construction Manager shall maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 10 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.

B. Types of allowances include the following:

1. Lump-sum allowances.
2. Unit-cost allowances.
3. Quantity allowances.
4. Contingency allowances.
5. Testing and inspecting allowances.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices.
2. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise the Owner and Architect/Engineer of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.

B. At Owner's or Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections.

C. Purchase products and systems selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

1.7 [**LUMP-SUM**] [**UNIT-COST**] [**AND**] [**QUANTITY**] ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor/Construction Manager of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect/Engineer under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's/Construction Manager's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect/Engineer under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. **Allowance No. 1: Quantity Allowance:** Include in the base bid **17** cu. yd. of unsuitable soil excavation and disposal **off-site** and replace with **No. 57 crushed stone** from **off-site**, for unsuitable soils encountered under **interior or exterior wall footings** as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".

1. Base this quantity allowance on the unit price provided on the Bid Form and as defined in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices".
2. In the event additional unsuitable material must be removed and replaced, the Contractor/Construction Manager will be reimbursed by change order based on the unit price provided on the Bid Form.
3. For this allowance, Contractor's/Construction Manager's and subcontractor's costs for overhead and profit are included in the allowance amount.

B. **Allowance No. 2**: **Quantity Allowance:** Include in the base bid **139** cu. yd. of unsuitable soil excavation and disposal **off-site** and replace with **No. 57 crushed stone** from **off-site**, for unsuitable soils encountered under the **building slab** as specified as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".

1. Base this quantity allowance on the unit price provided on the Bid Form and as defined in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices".
2. In the event additional trench rock must be removed and replaced, the Contractor/Construction Manager will be reimbursed by change order based on the unit price provided on the Bid Form.
3. For this allowance, Contractor's/Construction Manager's and subcontractor's costs for overhead and profit are included in the allowance amount.

**END OF SECTION 01 21 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.

B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.

C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's/Construction Manager's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor/Construction Manager.

D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price 1: Unsatisfactory Soils - Footings

1. Description: Excavate unsatisfactory alluvial soils, dispose of **off-site** and replace with **No. 57 crushed stone** from **off-site** for unsuitable soils encountered under **interior or exterior wall footings** as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of soils excavated based on survey of volume removed.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 01 21 00 "Allowances".

B. Unit Price No. 2: Unsatisfactory Soils - Slab

1. Description: Excavate unsatisfactory alluvial soils, dispose of **off-site** and replace with **No. 57 crushed stone** from **off-site** for unsuitable soils encountered under **building slab** as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of soils excavated based on survey of volume removed.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 01 21 00 "Allowances".

C. Unit Price No. 3: Trench Rock

1. Description: Excavate trench rock, waste **on-site** and replace with suitable compacted fill obtained **off-site** according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of rock excavated based on survey of volume removed.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 01 21 00 "Allowances".

D. Unit Price No. 4: Rock Boring

1. Description: Perform rock boring as required for utility installation according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Linear foot of rock bored based on survey of distance bored.

E. Unit Price No. 5: Type C Silt Fence

1. Description: Provide and install additional Type C Silt fence according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Linear foot of silt fence installed based on survey of additional length.

F. Unit Price No. 6: Erosion Control Matting

1. Description: Provide and install additional erosion control matting according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
2. Unit of Measurement: Square yard of matting installed based upon survey of additional area covered.

G. Unit Price No. 7: Straw Mulch

1. Description: Provide and install additional straw mulching according to Section 31 20 00 “Earth Moving”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Square foot of straw mulching installed based on survey of additional area covered.

H. Unit Price No. 8: Temporary Grassing
1. Description: Provide and install additional temporary grassing according to Section 32 92 00 “Turf and Grasses”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Square foot of temporary grassing installed based on survey of additional area covered.

I. Unit Price No. 9: Permanent Grassing
1. Description: Provide and install additional permanent grassing according to Section 32 92 00 “Turf and Grasses”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Square foot of permanent grassing installed based on survey of additional area covered.

J. Unit Price No. 10: Tiftway 419 Sod
1. Description: Provide and install additional Tiftway 419 sod according to Section 32 91 00 “Turf and Grasses”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Square foot of sod installed based on survey of additional area covered.

K. Unit Price No. 11: Stone Check Dam
1. Description: Provide and install additional two foot high by eight foot long check dam using two (2) inch to ten (10) inch stone according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Each based on survey of number of additional units installed.

L. Unit Price No. 12: Hay Bale Check Dam
1. Description: Provide and install additional staked, hay bale check dam according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Each base on survey of number of additional units installed.

M. Unit Price No. 13: Rip-Rap
1. Description: Provide and machine place additional rip-rap according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Per ton based on delivery tickets.

N. Unit Price No. 14: Sd2-F Inlet Sediment Trap
1. Description: Provide and install additional Sd2-F inlet sediment trap, fabric-wire backed with support frame according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Each based on survey of number of additional units installed.

O. Unit Price No. 15: Sd2 Inlet Sediment Trap
1. Description: Provide and install additional Sd2 block and gravel inlet sediment trap according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Each based on survey of number of additional units installed.

P. Unit Price No. 16: “Silt Saver” Inlet Sediment Trap
1. Description: Provide and install additional “Silt Saver”, or equal, inlet sediment trap according to the “Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Each based on survey of number of additional units installed.

**END OF SECTION 01 22 00**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.

1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.4 PROCEDURES

Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.

1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.

Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.

Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

Alternate No. 1: Pre Engineered Metal Building Design

The contractor will provide and install a pre engineered metal building system as designed in the contract drawings and specifications in lieu of the load bearing masonry with pre engineered metal stud trusses. Reference all disciplines for design revisions as required by the building system change.

Alternate No. 2: Metal Open Front Athletic Lockers

The contractor will provide and install metal athletic lockers in lieu of wood athletic lockers (Base Bid) in locker room 111. All lockers called for in other spaces will be provided as metal lockers and be included in the base bid.

Alternate No. 3: HDPE Open Front Athletic Lockers

The contractor will provide and install metal athletic lockers in lieu of wood athletic lockers (Base Bid) in locker room 111. All lockers called for in other spaces will be provided as metal lockers and be included in the base bid.

Alternate No.4: Metal Wall Panels

The contractor will provide and install metal wall panels in lieu of brick veneer at building exterior. Refer to contract drawings for details

**END OF SECTION 01 23 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
2. Section 01 23 00 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
3. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.

1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor/Construction Manager that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, unavailability of required warranty terms or the need to reduce construction cost through “value engineering”.
2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to the Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Substitution Requests Prior to Bidding: Submit **1** (one) copy of request for product consideration. Include all applicable listed below.

1. Documentation:
   a. Name of Project.
   b. Name of entity proposing substitution.
   c. Specification section name and number and paragraph number.
   d. Drawing name and sheet number.
   e. Name and description of proposed substitution including product data.
   f. Itemized list of all deviations from specification requirements.
   g. Itemized list of all changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to any construction performed by the Owner or separate contractors for proper coordination with proposed substitution.
   h. Include all necessary technical data to support substitution request.
   i. Include samples if required to support substitution request.
2. Architect/Engineer’s Action: Architect/Engineer will issue substitution approval by addendum to all plan holders registered with the Architect/Engineer’s office. Contractor/Construction Manager shall furnish and install products and materials specified unless prior approval for substitution has been approved before bidding by addendum or after bidding through substitution process outlined below.

B. Substitution Requests After Bidding (**including the process of “value engineering’ to reduce cost**): Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

1. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
   a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
   b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by the Owner or separate contractors for proper coordination with proposed substitution.
   c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
   d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
   e. Samples if required to support substitution request.
   f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
   g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
   h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.

i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES or applicable code organization.

j. Detailed comparison of construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.

k. Itemized cost information. Include a Change Order Proposal for changing the Contract Sum.

l. Contractor's/Construction Manager's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.

m. Contractor's/Construction Manager's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

2. Architect/Engineer's Action: If necessary, Architect/Engineer will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within **seven** days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect/Engineer will notify Contractor/Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within **15** days of receipt of request, or **seven** days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.

b. Use product specified if Architect/Engineer does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS PRIOR TO BIDDING

A. Product/Manufacturer Substitution Requests: Submit requests for approval of product manufacturer substitutions not later than **5** days prior to the bid date. Architect/Engineer will consider the request for product/manufacturer approval if all relevant information listed in Paragraph 1.4.A has been provided.

2.2 SUBSTITUTIONS AFTER BIDDING INCLUDING **"VALUE ENGINEERING"**

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than [**15**] <**Insert number**> days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect/Engineer will consider Contractor's/Construction Manager's request for substitution(s), including requests for "**value engineering**" changes, when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are **not** satisfied, Architect/Engineer will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.

b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.

c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.

d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect construction schedule.

e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.

f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.

g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.

h. Requested substitution provides warranty equal to originally specified product or system.

i. Requested substitutions that result in an increase or decrease in the contract amount, including items on a "**value engineering**" list, shall be documented as specified in Section 01 26 00, "Contract Modification Procedures".

j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience by Contractor/Construction Manager: Not allowed.

C. Substitutions for Convenience by Owner: Architect/Engineer will review Owner requests for substitution for code compliance at any time during the course of the Project. Architect/Engineer will issue a Change Order Proposal Request to the Contractor for adjustment of the Contract amount and Contract time, if any.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 25 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after bidding and Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect/Engineer will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on Architect's Field Report or on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect/Engineer will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within at earliest possible date but in no case later than **15** days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
   a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
   b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
   c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
   d. Include an updated construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

B. Contractor/Construction Manager-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor/Construction Manager may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect/Engineer will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor/Construction Manager on **AIA Document G701**.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Construction Change Directive: Architect/Engineer may issue a Construction Change Directive on **AIA Document G714**. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor/Construction Manager to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 26 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
2. Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
3. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
4. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the construction schedule.

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's/Construction Manager's construction schedule.

1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
   a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
   b. Submittal schedule.
   c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in the construction schedule.
2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect/Engineer at earliest possible date, but no later than **ten** days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
4. Subschedules for Separate Design Contracts: Where the Owner has retained the Architect/Engineer under separate project contracts and Architect/engineer will provide separate payment certifications for each project, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with the scope of each design contract.

B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of **AIA Document G703**.
2. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents.
3. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
   a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site, if off-site storage has been approved by the Owner. Include evidence of insurance.
4. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity.
6. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
   a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
7. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications as certified by Architect/Engineer and paid for by Owner.

B. Payment Application Times: The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.

C. Application for Payment Forms: Use **AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 and Georgia DOE Form 0263, Revised June 2010** as forms for Applications for Payment.

D. Davis-Bacon Reporting Requirements: Contractor/Construction Manager shall submit, to the Owner, weekly certified payroll reports and a "statement of compliance" on Form WH-347 which is available at http://www.dol.gov/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm.

E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor/Construction Manager. Architect will return incomplete applications for correction, without action.
   1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
   2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
   3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued and/or approved before last day of construction period covered by application.

F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site, if off-site storage has been approved by the Owner.
   1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
   2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
   3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
      a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
      b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
      c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

G. Transmittal: Submit **five** signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect/Engineer by a method ensuring receipt **within 48 hours**. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.

H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
   1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage on each item.
   2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
   3. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
   4. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.

I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
   1. List of subcontractors.
   2. Schedule of values.
   3. Construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
   4. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
   5. List of Contractor's/Construction Manager’s staff assignments.
   6. Copies of building permits, authorizations and licenses for performance of the Work.
   7. Initial progress report.
   8. Report of preconstruction conference.
   9. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
   10. Performance and payment bonds.

J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect/Engineer issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
   1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.

K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
   1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements including completion of all Punch List items.
   2. Receipt by Owner and Architect/Engineer of all required project construction records including As-Build Drawings.
   3. Removal of all temporary facilities, services, surplus materials and rubbish.

4. Change-over of all door locks and other Contractor/Construction Manager access provisions to the Owner.
5. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
6. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
7. Receipt of conditional final lien waivers from all entities lawfully entitled to a lien.
8. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's/Construction Manager's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
9. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
10. Receipt by Architect/Engineer of Statutory Affidavit (attached).
11. Receipt by Architect/Engineer of Contractor's/Construction Manager's Warranty (attached).
12. Receipt by Architect/Engineer of Roofing Guarantee (attached) and Roofing Weathertightness Warranty.
13. Evidence that claims have been settled.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 29 00**

ROOFING GUARANTEE

Project Name_____

Location_____

Owner's Name_____

General Contractor/Construction Manager_____

Address_____

Date of Acceptance_____ Date of Expiration_____

1. The General Contractor/Construction Manager does hereby certify that the roofing work included in this contract was installed in strict accordance with all requirements of the plans and specifications and in accordance with approved roofing manufacturer's recommendations.
2. The General Contractor/Construction Manager does hereby guarantee the roofing and associated work including but not limited to all flashing and counter flashing both composition and metal; roof decking and/or sheathing; all materials used as roof substrate or insulation over which roof is applied; promenade decks or any other work on the surface of the roof; metal work; gravel stops and roof expansion joints to be absolutely watertight and free from all leaks, due to faulty or defective materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the date of substantial completion of the project(s). This guarantee does not include liability for damage to interior contents of the building due to roof leaks, nor does it extend to any deficiency which was caused by the failure of work which the General Contractor/Construction Manager did not damage or did not accomplish or was not charged to accomplish.
3. Subject to the terms and conditions listed below, the General Contractor/Construction Manager also guarantees that during the Guarantee Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to, or replacement of, said work in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's recommendations as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and/or materials which may develop in the work including but not limited to: blisters, delamination, exposed felts, ridges, wrinkles, splits, warped insulation and/or loose flashing etc. in a manner pursuant to the total anticipated life of the roofing system and the best standards applicable to the particular roof type in value and in accordance with construction documents as are necessary to maintain said work in watertight conditions. And further, to respond on or within three (3) calendar days upon proper notification of leaks or defects by the Owner or Architect.
4. Specifically excluded from this Guarantee are damages to the work, other parts of the building and building contents caused by: 1) lightning, windstorm, hailstorm and other unusual phenomena of the elements, and 2) fire. When the Work has been damaged by any of the foregoing causes, the Guarantee shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by the General Contractor/Construction Manager, and until the cost and expense thereof has been paid by the Owner or by the responsible party so designated.
5. During the Guarantee Period, if the Owner allows alterations to the Work by anyone other than the General Contractor/Construction Manager, including cutting, patching and maintenance in connection with penetrations, and positioning of anything on the roof, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said alteration. If the Owner engages the General Contractor/Construction Manager to perform said alterations, the Guarantee shall not become null and void, unless the General Contractor/Construction Manager, prior to proceeding with said alterations, shall have notified the Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the Work, thereby reasonably justifying a termination of this Guarantee.
6. Future building additions will not void this guarantee, except for that portion of the future addition that might affect the Work under this contract at the point of connection of the roof areas, and any damage caused by such addition. If this contract is for roofing of an addition to an existing building, then this guarantee covers the work involved at the point of connection with the existing roof.
7. During the Guarantee Period, if the original use of the roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for a promenade, work deck, spray cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said change.
8. The Owner shall promptly notify the General Contractor/Construction Manager of observed, known or suspected leaks, defects or deterioration, and shall afford reasonable opportunity for the General Contractor/Construction Manager to inspect the Work, and to examine the evidence of such leaks, defects or deterioration.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this ____day of_____, 20____.

_____

General Contractor's/Construction Manager's Authorized Signature

_____

Type or Print Name and Title

END OF SECTION 01 29 03

STATUTORY AFFIDAVIT

State of Georgia, County of _____

From: _____

To: _____

Re: Contract entered into on the ____day of _____, 20____, between the above mentioned parties for the construction of _____
at_____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS

1. The undersigned hereby certifies that all work required under the above contract has been performed in accordance with the terms thereof, that all materialmen, subcontractors, mechanics, and laborers have been paid and satisfied in full, and that there are no outstanding claims of any character arising out of the performance of the contract which have not been paid and satisfied in full.
2. The undersigned further certifies that to the best of his knowledge and belief there are no unsatisfied claims or damages resulting from injury of death of any employees, subcontractors, or the public at large arising out of this performance of the contract, or any suits or claims for any other damage of any kind, nature, or description which might constitute a lien upon the property of the Owner.
3. The undersigned makes this affidavit as provided by law and for the purpose of receiving final payment in full settlement of all claims arising under or by virtue of the contract, and acceptance of such payment is acknowledged as a release of the Owner from any and all claims arising under or by virtue of the contract.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the undersigned has signed and sealed this instrument this ____ day of _____, 20____.

By: _____
_____

Personally appeared before the undersigned, _____and _____ who after being duly sworn, deposed(s) and say(s) that the fact stated in the above affidavit are true.

_____
Notary Public

_____ County, Georgia

This ____day of _____, 20____

My commission expires _____

END OF SECTION 01 29 01

WARRANTY BY GENERAL CONTRACTOR/CONSTRUCTION MANAGER

Owner: _____

Project Name: _____

Project Address: _____

County of: _____

State of: _____

Date: _____

_____, as Contractor/Construction Manager on the above construction project, do hereby guarantee that all work executed under the plans and specifications will be free from defects in materials and/or workmanship for a period of **one year** beginning on _____ and ending on _____, and that all defects occurring within the warranty period shall be replaced or repaired at no cost to the Owner.

This guarantee covers all work shown on the plans and specified in the Project Manual and Contract Documents.

Nothing in the above shall be deemed to imply that this guarantee shall apply to any work which has been abused or neglected by the Owner.

Legal Name of Contractor/Construction Manager:

_____

By: _____

Title: _____

_____
Notary Public

This ____day of _____, 20____

END OF SECTION 01 29 02

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. General coordination procedures.
   2. Coordination drawings.
   3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
   4. Project Web site.
   5. Project meetings.

**Retain first paragraph below only for a project using multiple contracts under CM agency.**

B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

C. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 01 12 00 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a description of the division of work among separate contracts and responsibility for coordination activities not in this Section.
   2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting construction schedule.
   3. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
   4. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.
   5. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for coordinating the Work with Owner's Commissioning Authority.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
   1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
   2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
   3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

B. Key Personnel Names: At least **seven** days prior to starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
   1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office. Keep list current at all times.

1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
   1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
   2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
   3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
   1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

C. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
   1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
   a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
   b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
   c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
   d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
   e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
   f. Indicate required installation sequences.
   g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor/Construction Manager shall prepare and submit an RFI containing information listed below.
   1. Architect/Engineer will return RFIs submitted to Architect/Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor/Construction Manager with no response.
   2. Coordinate and submit RFIs promptly to avoid delays in the Work.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
   1. Project name and Architect’s project number.
   2. Date.
   3. Name of Contractor/Construction Manager.
   4. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
   5. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
   6. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
   7. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
   8. Contractor's/Construction Manager’s suggested resolution. If suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, state impact in the RFI.
   9. Contractor's/ Construction Manager’s signature.
   10. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

C. Architect/Engineer's Action: Architect/Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow **seven** working days for Architect/Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect/Engineer after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
   1. The following Contractor/Construction Manager generated RFIs will be returned without action:
      a. Requests for approval of submittals or substitutions.
      b. Requests for approval of Contractor's/Construction Manager’s means and methods.
      c. Requests for coordination information already shown in the Contract Documents.
      d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
      e. Requests for interpretation of Architect/Engineer's actions on submittals.
      f. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
   2. Architect/Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect/Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
   3. Architect/Engineer's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
      a. If Contractor/Construction Manager believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect/Engineer in writing within **10** days of receipt of response.

D. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log **weekly**. Include the following:
   1. Project name.

2. Name and address of Contractor/Construction Manager.
3. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
4. RFI description.
5. Date the RFI was submitted.
6. Date Architect/Engineer's response was received.

E. On receipt of Architect/Engineer's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect/Engineer within **seven** days if Contractor/Construction Manager disagrees with response.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site.
1. Attendees: Inform Owner and Architect and other participants whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting.
2. Agenda: Prepare and distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Record all discussions and agreements. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect/Engineer, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect/Engineer, but no later than **10** days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect/Engineer, and their consultants; General Contractor/Construction Manager and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including:
a. Tentative construction schedule.
b. Phasing.
c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
e. Lines of communications.
f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
g. Procedures for RFIs.
h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
k. Submittal procedures.
l. Preparation of record documents including As-Built Drawings.
m. Use of the premises.
n. Work restrictions.
o. Working hours.
p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
t. Construction waste management and recycling.
u. Office, work, and storage areas.
v. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
w. First aid.
x. Security.
y. Progress cleaning.

C. Pre-installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Owner and Architect/Engineer of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
   1. Attendees: Representatives of Owner, Architect/Engineer, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress of the Work.
   2. Agenda: Review minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
      a. Contractor's/Construction Manager's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's/Construction Manager's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      b. Review present and future needs of each entity present that are required to insure completion of each entity's portion of the Work on schedule.
   3. Minutes: Record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
      a. Schedule Updating: Revise construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 31 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
   1. Construction schedule.
   2. Construction schedule updating reports.
   3. Daily construction reports.
   4. Material location reports.
   5. Site condition reports.
   6. Special reports.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 01 12 00 "Multiple Contract Summary" for preparing a combined construction schedule.
   2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
   3. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
   1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
   2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
   3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.

B. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

C. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

D. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Scheduler’s Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.

B. Coordinate construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
   1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
   2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice of Award or the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.

B. Activities: Treat each building wing, story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
   1. Activity Duration: Define activities in the shortest practicable time segments.
   2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for long lead time items and all major items of the Work.
   3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in construction schedule with submittal schedule.
   4. Startup and Testing Time: Include sufficient days for startup and testing.
   5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect/Engineer's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
   6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than **30** days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.

1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date.
5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date.
6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the work restrictions itemized in 01 10 00 “Summary”.
7. Work Stages: Indicate stages of construction for each major portion of the Work.
8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities.

D. Milestones: Include milestones in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion**.**

E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
1. See Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.

F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor/Construction Manager intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

2.2 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, construction schedule within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

2.3 REPORTS

A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.
7. Accidents.
8. Meetings and significant decisions.
9. Unusual events (see special reports).
10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
12. Emergency procedures.
13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
14. Change Orders received and implemented.
15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
16. Services connected and disconnected.
17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
18. Partial completions and occupancies.
19. Substantial Completions authorized.

B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Scheduling Consultant: Employ experienced personnel to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using Gantt chart or CPM scheduling.

B. Construction Schedule Updating: Update schedule monthly to reflect actual construction progress. Issue schedule one week before regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.

2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.

C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect/Engineer, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations.

**END OF SECTION 01 32 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including construction schedule.
3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
4. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
5. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect/Engineer's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."

B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect/Engineer's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Submit a schedule of submittals **electronically**, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect/Engineer and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of construction schedule.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Architect's/Engineer's Digital Data Files: Discipline specific electronic digital data files of certain Drawings will be provided by Architect/Engineer for use in preparing submittals as follows:

1. Civil/Site: No files will be provided.
2. Architectural: Architectural floor plans and reflected ceiling plans showing walls, doors, windows and fixed equipment.
3. Structural: No files will be provided.
4. Fire Protection: Architectural floor plans and reflected ceiling plans
5. Mechanical: Architectural floor plans and reflected ceiling plans.
6. Electrical: Architectural floor plans and reflected ceiling plans.
7. Food Service: Kitchen floor plan with equipment layout.
   a. Architect/Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.

B. Coordination: Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

1. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved in advance.
2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
   a. Architect/Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow **15** days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect/Engineer will advise Contractor/Construction Manager when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
2. Resubmittal Review: Allow **15** days for review of each resubmittal.

D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.

1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.

2. Provide a 6 inch by 8 inch clear space on label or beside title block to record Contractor's/Construction Manager's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect/Engineer.
3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
   a. Project name.
   b. Date.
   c. Name of Architect.
   d. Name of Contractor/Construction Manager.
   e. Name of subcontractor.
   f. Name of supplier.
   g. Name of manufacturer.
   h. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
   i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
   j. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
4. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect/Engineer will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.

E. Electronic Submittals [**Thru Submittal Exchange**]: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's/Construction Manager's review and electronic approval markings and action taken by Architect/Engineer.
3. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Owner**,** containing the following information:
   a. Project name.
   b. Date.
   c. Name of Contractor/Construction Manager.
   d. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
   e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
   f. Specification Section number and title.
   g. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
   h. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
   i. Related physical samples submitted directly.
4. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
   a. Project name.
   b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
   c. Manufacturer name.
   d. Product name.

F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect/Engineer.

G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's/Construction Manager's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect/Engineer on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.

H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval or approved as noted notation from Architect/Engineer's action stamp.

I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval or approved as noted notation from Architect/Engineer's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit all submittals required by individual Specification Sections to Contractor/Construction Manager.
1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
   a. Architect/Engineer will return annotated file. Annotate and retain copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.

2. Action Submittals: Submit **electronic copy** of each submittal required by the individual specification section. Architect/Engineer will retain two copies and will return all remaining copies.
   a. Samples: **In addition to electronic submittal of material and color samples,** transmit actual samples for selection of color, texture and pattern.
3. Informational Submittals: Submit **electronic copy** of each submittal.
4. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
   a. Digital signatures are not acceptable for certificates and certifications.

B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
2. Include catalog cuts, product specifications, color charts, statement of compliance with specified referenced standards, test reports, application of testing agency labels and seals and coordination requirements.
3. For equipment, also include wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring, printed performance curves, operational range diagrams and clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
4. Submit Product Data in the following format:
   a. PDF electronic file [using Submittal Exchange].
   b. Two paper copies plus the number of copies required by the Contractor/Construction Manager. Architect/Engineer will retain two copies and return all remaining copies.

C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include identification of products, schedules, compliance with specified standards, coordination requirements, dimensions established by field measurement, relationship and attachment to adjoining construction and seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
2. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
   a. PDF electronic file [using Submittal Exchange].
   b. Two paper copies plus the number of copies required by the Contractor/Construction Manager of each submittal. Architect/Engineer will retain **two** copies and return all remaining copies.

D. Samples: Submit actual physical units or sections of material for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture and for coordination of these characteristics with other elements
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
2. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
   a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will retain submittal for use in preparation of color boards.
5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected.
   a. Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
   b. If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit sufficient number of units for verification.

E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

F. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

G. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

H. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

I. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

J. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

K. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

L. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

M. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

N. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor/Construction Manager by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect/Engineer.

B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required [**electronic**] submittals, submit two paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor/Construction Manager to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR/CONSTRUCTION MANAGER REVIEW

A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with **electronic** approval stamp before submitting to Architect/Engineer.

B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, [**electronic**] approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's/Construction Manager’s approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S/ENGINEER’S ACTION

A. Action Submittals: Architect/Engineer will review each submittal, make [**electronic**] marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect/Engineer will [**electronically**] stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.

B. Informational Submittals: Architect/Engineer will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect/Engineer will forward each submittal to appropriate party.

C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect/Engineer.

D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable and will be returned for resubmittal without review.

E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

3.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

1. 01 21 00 ALLOWANCES
   a. Action Submittals
      1) Proposals
   b. Informational Submittals
      1) Invoices

2) Time Sheets

2. 01 25 00 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Subcontractor List
      2) Key Personnel
3. 01 31 00 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Subcontractor List
      2) Key Personnel
4. 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Initial Construction Schedule
      2) Construction Schedule Updates
      3) Daily Construction Reports
      4) Special Reports
5. 01 40 00 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Quality Control Plan
      2) Qualification Data
      3) Testing Agency Qualification
6. 01 41 00 STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Inspection Reports
      2) Special Inspection Report
      3) Schedule of Non-Compliant Work
      4) Final Report of Special Inspections
7. 01 60 00 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS
   a. Action Submittals
      1) Basis-of-Design Product Submittals
8. 01 73 00 EXECUTION
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Land Surveyor Certificates
9. 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
   a. Action Submittals
      1) Contractor's List of Incomplete Items
      2) Certified List of Incomplete Items
10. 01 78 39 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
   a. Survey (Informational) Submittals
      1) As-Built Erosion Control Survey
      2) Final As-Built Site & Topographic Survey
11. 02 41 16 STRUCTURAL DEMOLITION
   a. Informational submittals
      1) Inventory of Removed and Salvaged Items
12. 02 41 19 SELECTIVE STRUCTURE DEMOLITION
   a. Informational Submittals
      1) Inventory of Removed and Salvaged Items
      2) Warranties for Existing Systems
13. 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
   a. Action Submittals
      1) Product Data
      2) Design Mixes
      3) Shop Drawings for Structural Reinforcement
      4) Shop Drawings for Formwork
      5) Samples of Pigments and Dyes
      6) Mock-ups for Polished Concrete
   b. Informational Submittals
      1) Qualification Data for Concrete Polisher
      2) Warranty for Polished Concrete
      3) Welding Certificates
      4) Material Certificates
      5) Moisture Test Reports

6) Slab Flatness and Levelness Measurements

14. 04 20 00 UNIT MASONRY
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Samples (brick, special block, accessories)
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Brick Stain Applicator
        2) Material Certificates (brick and concrete masonry)
15. 04 72 00 CAST STONE MASONRY
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
16. 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Welding Procedure Specs & Procedure Qualification Records
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Installer
        2) Welding Certificates
        3) Paint Compatibility Certificates
        4) Mill Test Reports
        5) Product Test Reports
17. 05 21 00 STEEL JOIST FRAMING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Manufacturer
        2) Welding Certificates
        3) Engineering Analysis
18. 05 31 00 STEEL DECKING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Welding Certificates
        2) Product Certificates
        3) Product Test Reports
        4) Evaluation Reports
        5) Field Quality Control Reports
19. 05 44 00 COLD-FORMED METAL TRUSSES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Delegated Design Submittal
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Testing Agency
        2) Welding Certificates
        3) Product Test Reports
        4) Field Quality Control Reports
20. 05 50 00 METAL FABRICATIONS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data for Metal Nosings and Treads
        2) Shop Drawings
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Welding Certificates
21. 05 52 13 PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Shop Drawings

2) Delegated Design Submittal
b. Informational Submittal
1) Qualification Data for Professional Engineer
2) Welding Certificates
22. 06 10 53 MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY
a. Informational Submittals
1) ICC-ES Evaluation Report for Fire Retardant Treated Wood
23. 06 16 00 SHEATHING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) ICC-ES Evaluation Report for Fire Retardant Treated Wood
24. 06 20 13 EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Evaluation Reports from ICC-ES
a) Wood Preservative Treated Wood
b) Fire Retardant Treated Wood
c) Cellular PVC Trim
d) Foam Plastic Moldings.
2) Sample Warranty for Cellular PVC Trim.
3) Sample Warranty for Columns.
25. 06 41 13 WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
26. 07 21 00 THERMAL INSULATION
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
27. 07 41 13 STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data for Installer
2) Third Party Inspection Reports
3) Sample Warranty
28. 07 42 13.13 FORMED METAL WALL PANELS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data for Installer
2) Sample Warranties
29. 07 42 17 METAL SOFFIT PANELS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Sample Warranty
30. 07 62 00 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples

31. 07 71 00 ROOF SPECIALTIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
32. 07 72 00 ROOF ACCESSORIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
    b. Informational Submittals
33. 07 84 13 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Product Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Installer
        2) Installer Certificates
        3) Product Test Reports
34. 07 84 46 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Product Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Installer
        2) Installer Certificates
        3) Product Test Reports
35. 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Samples
36. 08 11 13 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Manufacturer’s Certification
        2) Contractor/CM Certification
37. 08 14 16 FLUSH WOOD DOORS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
38. 08 51 13 ALUMINUM WINDOWS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
39. 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Samples
        2) Door Hardware Schedule
        3) Keying Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals

1) Qualification Data for Supplier
2) Product Certificates
3) Product Test Reports
4) Sample Warranties

40. 08 80 00 GLAZING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Sample Warranties

41. 09 22 16 NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

42. 09 29 00 GYPSUM BOARD
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

43. 09 51 13 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples

44. 09 65 13 RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples

45. 09 65 19 RESILIENT TILE FLOORING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings for Special Patterns
3) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Moisture and pH Test Results

46. 09 65 66 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Moisture and pH Test Results

47. 09 67 23 RESINOUS FLOORING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples
b. Informational Submittals
1) Moisture and pH Test Results

48. 09 91 13 EXTERIOR PAINTING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples
3) Product List

49. 09 91 23 INTERIOR PAINTING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples
3) Product List

50. 10 14 23 PANEL SIGNAGE
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Samples
4) Sign Schedule
b. Informational Submittals

1) Sample Warranty

51. 10 28 00 TOILET, BATH AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
52. 10 44 16 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Product Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
53. 10 51 13 LOCKERS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Samples
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Sample Warranty
54. 11 13 13 LOADING DOCK BUMPERS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Shop Drawings
55. 11 31 13 COMMERCIAL APPLIANCES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Product Schedule
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Qualification Data for Manufacturer
        2) Qualification Data for Installer
        3) Sample Warranties
56. 22 05 16 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
57. 22 05 17 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
58. 22 05 18 ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
59. 22 05 19 METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
60. 22 05 23 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
61. 22 05 29 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
62. 22 05 48.13 VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
63. 22 05 53 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
        2) Equipment-Label Schedule
        3) Valve Numbering Scheme
        4) Valve Schedules
64. 22 07 19 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data

65. 22 11 13 FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
66. 22 11 16 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Information Submittals
        1) System Purging And Disinfecting Activities Report
        2) Field Quality-Control Reports
67. 22 11 19 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Information Submittals
        1) Field Quality-Control Reports
68. 22 11 23 DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
69. 22 13 13 FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Field Quality-Control Reports
70. 22 13 16 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Information Submittals
        1) Field Quality-Control Reports
71. 22 13 19 SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Information Submittals
        1) Field Quality-Control Reports
72. 22 13 23 SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
73. 22 32 00 DOMESTIC WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
74. 22 34 00 FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
    b. Informational Submittals
        1) Field Quality-Control Reports
        2) Sample Warranty
75. 22 42 13.13 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
76. 22 42 13.16 COMMERCIAL URINALS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
77. 22 42 16.13 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
78. 22 42 16.16 COMMERCIAL SINKS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
79. 22 42 23 COMMERCIAL SHOWERS AND BATHTUBS
    a. Action Submittals
        1) Product Data
80. 22 47 16 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS
    a. Action Submittals

1) Product Data

81. 23 05 48.13 VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Delegated Design Submittal
b. Informational Submittal
1) Coordination Drawings

82. 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
a. Informational Submittal
1) Qualification Data
2) Certified TAB reports
3) Sample Report Forms

83. 23 07 13 DUCT INSULATION
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

84. 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

85. 23 11 26 FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals

86. 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

87. 23 31 13 METAL DUCTS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

88. 23 33 00 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

89. 23 37 13 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

90. 23 41 00 PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

91. 23 44 00 AIR TREATMENT DEVICES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

92. 23 74 13 PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

93. 23 74 33 DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR UNITS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

94. 23 81 13 PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

95. 23 82 39.19 WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

96. 23 91 16 MECHANICAL WALL LOUVERS

a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
3) Field Quality-Control Reports

97. 26 05 19 LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) Field Quality-Control Reports

98. 26 05 19.23 MANUFACTURED WIRING SYSTEMS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

99. 26 05 26 GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data for Testing Agency
2) As-Built Data
3) Field Quality-Control Reports

100. 26 05 29 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

101. 26 05 33 RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings

102. 26 05 44 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

103. 26 05 53 IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Identification Schedule

104. 26 09 23 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
b. Informational Submittals
1) Field Quality-Control Reports

105. 26 24 16 PANELBOARDS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
b. Informational Submittals
1) Field Quality-Control Reports
2) Field Quality-Control Reports

106. 26 27 26 WIRING DEVICES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) Field Quality-Control Reports

107. 26 28 13 FUSES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

108. 26 28 16 ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
b. Informational Submittals

1) Field Quality-Control Reports

109. 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data

110. 31 10 19 EROSION, SEDIMENTATION & POLLUTION CONTROL (greater than 1 acre)
a. Informational Submittals
1) Notice of Intent (NOI)
2) Daily Rainfall Monitoring Data
3) Storm Water Monitoring Data
4) Erosion & Sedimentation Inspection and Maintenance Report
b. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples for Verification
3) Subcontractor List

111. 31 20 00 EARTH MOVING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples for Verification
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data for qualified testing agency

112. 31 31 16 TERMITE CONTROL
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data
2) Product Certificates
3) Application Reports

113. 32 12 16 ASPHALT PAVING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Job-Mix Designs
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data
2) Material Certificates
3) Field Quality Control Reports

114. 32 13 13 CONCRETE PAVING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Samples for Initial Selection
3) Samples for Verification
4) Job-Mix Designs
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data
2) Material Certificates
3) Field Quality Control Reports

115. 32 17 23 PAVEMENT MARKING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data
2) Product Certificates

116. 32 32 23 SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Design Submittal/Shop Drawings
3) Samples for Initial Color Selection – face of partial blocks
4) Samples for Verification –full size block
b. Informational Submittals
1) Qualification Data
2) Licensed Engineer’s Qualifications
3) Preconstruction Test Reports

4) Product Test Reports
5) Product Certificates

117. 32 92 00 TURF AND GRASSES
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Sample for Verification – Erosion Control Mats & Blankets
b. Informational Submittals
1) Certification of Grass Seed
2) Certification of Sod
3) Qualification Data for Installer
4) Material Test Reports
5) Product Certificates

118. 33 41 00 STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Shop Drawings
b. Informational Submittals
1) Coordination Drawings
2) Field Quality Control Reports
3) Product Test Reports

119. 33 46 00 SUBDRAINAGE
a. Action Submittals
1) Product Data
2) Sieve analysis
b. Informational Submittals
1) Coordination Drawings
2) Flat Drain sample
3) Field Quality Control Reports
4) Product Test Reports
5) Warranty

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.

B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor/Construction Manager of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.

1. Specified tests and inspections do not limit Contractor's/Construction Manager's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
2. Requirements for Contractor/Construction Manager to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect/Engineer, Owner or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for testing and inspecting allowances.
2. Section 01 41 00 "Structural Tests and Special Inspections" for IBC Chapter 17 required tests and inspections and as indicated on "Statement of Special Inspections".

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.

B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect/Engineer.

C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

D. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

E. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.

F. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and they establish different or conflicting requirements, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect/Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Contractor's/Construction Manager's quality-control personnel.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

1.6 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sampling, testing and inspecting.
11. Professional's opinion on whether Work complies with the Contract Documents.
12. Name and signature of tester or inspector.

13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.

F. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

G. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products indicated for this Project.

H. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are indicated for this Project.

I. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect/Engineer.
2. Notify Architect/Engineer seven days prior to mockups being constructed.
3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
4. Obtain Architect/Engineer's and Owners approval of mockups before starting work.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.8 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
   1. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor/Construction Manager and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
B. Contractor/Construction Manager Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's/Construction Manager's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements and those required by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
   1. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
   2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
   3. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
   4. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor/Construction Manager and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's/Construction Manager's responsibility.
   5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing.
D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's/Construction Manager's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect/Engineer and Contractor/Construction Manager in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
   1. Notify Architect/Engineer and Contractor/Construction Manager promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
   2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
   3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
   4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
   1. Access to the Work.
   2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
   3. Adequate quantities of material samples for testing and inspecting.
   4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
   5. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for materials that require control testing.
   6. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment.
H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
   1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
   1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
   2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
   3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect/Engineer.
   4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect/Engineer's reference.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
   1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's/Construction Manager's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 01 40 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements required for compliance with the International Building Code, Chapter 17, Structural Tests and Special Inspections

B. Structural testing and special inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor/Construction Manager of responsibility for compliance with other Construction Document requirements.

1. Quality–assurance and quality-control requirements for specific construction activities are specified in the individual Sections. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
2. Specified tests, inspections and related actions do not limit the Contractor's/Construction Manager's responsibility for other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Construction Document requirements.
3. Requirements for Contractor/Construction Manger to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by the Owner, Architect/Engineer or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

C. Owner will engage one or more qualified Special Inspectors and/or testing agencies to conduct Structural Tests and Special Inspections specified in this Section and related Sections. The administration, coordination and scheduling of this Work shall be transferred to the Contractor/Construction Manager**.**

D. Related Sections include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements.
2. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete.
3. Section 03 41 00 Precast Structural Concrete.
4. Section 04 20 00 Unit Masonry.
5. Section 05 12 00 Structural Steel Framing.
6. Section 05 21 00 Steel Joist Framing.
7. Section 05 31 00 Steel Decking.
8. Section 07 24 13 Polymer Based Exterior Insulation and Finish System.
9. Section 07 24 19 Water Drainage Exterior Insulation and Finish System.
10. Section 07 42 13 Metal Wall Panels.
11. Section 07 81 00 Applied Fireproofing.
12. Division 23 Sections.
13. Division 26 Sections.
14. Section 31 20 00 Earth Moving.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Approved Testing Agency: An agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services and that has been approved by the local Building Official.

B. Construction Documents: Written, graphic and pictorial documents describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a construction project which are necessary for obtaining a building permit. Construction Documents include all supplementary instructions, sketches, addenda and revisions to the drawings and specifications issued by the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge beyond those issued for the building permit.

C. Shop Drawings and Submittal Data: Written and/or graphic documents prepared and/or assembled by the Contractor/Construction Manager based on the Construction Documents.

D. Structural Observation: Visual observation of the structural system by the Registered Design Professional or his representative to ensure general compliance to the approved Construction Documents. Structural observations are not considered part of the Structural Tests and Special Inspections and do not replace inspections and tests performed by the approved testing agency or Special Inspector.

E. Special Inspector: A qualified inspector who demonstrates competence, to the satisfaction of the local building official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge, for inspection of the particular type of construction or operation requiring special inspection. The Special Inspector shall be a licensed professional engineer, an engineering intern or a qualified representative from the approved testing agency.

F. Special Inspection, Continuous: The full-time observation of Work requiring special inspection by an approved Special Inspector who is present when and where the Work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the Work.

G. Special Inspection, Periodic: The part-time or intermittent observation of Work requiring special inspection by an approved Special Inspector who is present where the Work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the Work.

H. Testing Agency: A qualified materials testing laboratory under the responsible charge of a licensed professional engineer, approved by the local Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge, to measure, examine, test calibrate or otherwise determine the performance characteristics of construction materials and to verify compliance with Construction Documents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications

1. Minimum qualifications of inspection and testing agencies and their personnel shall comply with ASTM E 329-03. Individuals performing tests shall be certified for the work being performed as outlined in the appendix of ASTM E 329. Certification by organizations other than those listed must be submitted to the local Building Official for consideration before proceeding with the Work.
2. Local jurisdictions may have additional requirements. The testing and inspection agency is responsible for meeting all local requirements and complying with all local procedures.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS, REPORTS AND TEST RESULTS

A. If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards established differ or conflict with requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that differ, but are apparently equal, to the Registered Design Professional for a decision before proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity and Quality Levels: The quantity or quality levels indicated shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality indicated, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum as appropriate for the context.

C. The Special Inspector's reports and the testing agencies results shall have precedence over reports and test results provided by the Contractor.

D. Where conflicts exist between the Construction Documents and approved shop drawings or submittal data, the most restrictive requirement shall govern. Refer all conflicts to the Registered Design Professional for a decision before proceeding.

1.6 SUBMITTALS BY SPECIAL INSPECTOR AND/OR TESTING AGENCY

A. Inspection Reports: Special Inspectors shall keep and distribute inspection reports to the Building Official, the Owner, the Registered Design Professional, the Architect/Engineer and the Contractor/Construction Manager. Reports shall indicate that Work inspected was done in compliance with the approved Construction Documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor/Construction Manager for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, they shall be brought to the attention of the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional prior to the completion of that phase of the Work. A final report documenting required special inspections and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon by the permit applicant and the Building Official prior to the start of Work.

B. Special Inspection Reports and test results include, but are not be limited to, the following:

1. Date of inspection.
2. Description of inspections or tests performed including location on site by referencing grid lines, floor levels, elevations, etc.
3. Statement noting that the Work, material and/or product conforms or does not conform to the construction document requirements.
4. Name and signature of the Contractor's/Construction Manager's representative who was notified of work, material and/or products that do not meet construction document requirements.
5. Name and signature of Special Inspector and/or testing agency representative performing the inspection or test.

C. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work: Each agent shall maintain a log of work that does not meet the requirements of the Construction Documents. Include reference to original inspection or test report and subsequent dates of re-inspecting or re-testing.

D. Frequency: Reports and test results shall be submitted within one week of inspection or test. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work shall be updated daily and submitted at monthly intervals.

E. Final Report of Special Inspections: Submitted by each agent listed in the Schedule of Special Inspection Services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR/CONSTRUCTION MANAGER RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor/Construction Manager shall coordinate the inspection and testing services with the progress of the Work. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall provide sufficient notice to allow proper scheduling of all personnel. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall provide safe access for performing inspections and on-site testing.

B. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall submit schedules for required inspections and tests to the Owner, Registered Design Professional and the testing and inspection agencies.

C. Each entity responsible for the construction of either a seismic-force-resisting system or a main wind-force-resisting system, where requirements for seismic resistance or wind resistance are included in the Statement of Special Inspections, shall submit a written Contractor's Statement of Responsibility to the Building Official and the Owner prior to the commencement of work on the system or component. The Contractor's Statement of Responsibility shall contain the following:
   1. Acknowledgment of awareness of the special requirements contained in the quality assurance plan.
   2. Acknowledgment that control will be exercised to obtain compliance with the Construction Documents approved by the Building Official.
   3. Procedures for exercising control within the entity's organization, the method and frequency of reporting and the distribution of the reports.
   4. Identification and qualifications of the person(s) exercising such control and their position(s) within the organization.

D. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall repair and/or replace Work that does not meet the requirements of the Construction Documents.
   1. Contractor/Construction Manager shall engage an Architect/Engineer to design repair and/or replacement procedures.
   2. Architect/Engineer shall be registered in the state in which the project is located. Architect/Engineer shall be acceptable to the Registered Design Professional, the Building Official and the Owner.
   3. Procedures shall be submitted for review and acceptance by the Registered Design Professional, the Building Official and the Owner before proceeding with corrective action.

E. The Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for all repair and/or replacement costs including:
   1. Re-testing and re-inspecting of materials, work and/or products that do not meet the requirements of the Construction Documents and shop drawings or submittal data.
   2. Review of proposed repair and/or replacement procedures by the Registered Design Professional and the Special Inspectors and testing agencies.
   3. Repair and/or replacement of Work that does not meet the requirements of the Construction Documents.

3.2 STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

A. Structural observations may be made periodically as determined by the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge.

3.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION

A. Testing and inspection shall be in accordance with the attached Schedule of Special Inspection Services.

B. Reference related specification Sections for the minimum level of inspections and testing. Provide additional inspections and testing as necessary to assure compliance with the Construction Documents.

3.4 SCHEDULES AND FORMS (ATTACHED)

A. Attachment A: Statement of Special Inspections
B. Attachment B: Statement of Special Inspections; Requirements for Seismic Resistance
C. Attachment C: Statement of Special Inspections; Requirements for Wind Resistance
D. Attachment D: Schedule of Special Inspection Services
E. Attachment E: Final Report of Special Inspections
F. Attachment F: Contractor's Statement of Responsibility
G. Attachment G: Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance
H. Attachment H: Special Inspection Daily Report
I. Attachment I: Special Inspection Interim Report
J. Attachment J: Special Inspection Discrepancy Notice

**END OF SECTION 01 41 00**

# STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

**PROJECT:** Union High Fieldhouse **01-697-027**

**LOCATION:** 153 Panther Way, Blairsville, GA

**PERMIT APPLICANT:** _____

**APPLICANT'S ADDRESS:** _____

**ARCHITECT OF RECORD:** Gregory Shillinger, AIA

**STRUCTURAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Michael Eidson, P.E.

**MECHANICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Michael Waldbillig, P.E.

**ELECTRICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Frank Campo, P.E.

**REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE:** Michael Eidson, P.E.

This Statement of Special Inspections is submitted in accordance with Section 1704.3 of the 2012 International Building Code. It includes a *Schedule of Special Inspection Services* applicable to the above-referenced Project as well as the identity of the individuals, agencies, or firms intended to be retained for conducting these inspections. If applicable, it includes *Requirements for Seismic Resistance* and/or *Requirements for Wind Resistance*.

Are *Requirements for Seismic Resistance* included in the *Statement of Special Inspections*? ☑ Yes ☐ No

Are *Requirements for Wind Resistance* included in the *Statement of Special Inspections*? ☐ Yes ☑ No

The Special Inspector(s) shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish interim inspection reports to the Building Official and to the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge at a frequency agreed upon by the Design Professional and the Building Official prior to the start of work. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge prior to completion of that phase of work. A *Final Report of Special Inspections* documenting required special inspections and corrections of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted to the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge at the conclusion of the project.

Frequency of interim report submittals to the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge:

✓ Weekly __Bi-Weekly __Monthly Other; specify:_____

The Special Inspection program does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to comply with the Contract Documents. Jobsite safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Statement of Special Inspections Prepared by:

Michael Eidson, P.E.
Type or print name

Signature 1-18-19
Date

Preparer's Seal

GEORGIA REGISTERED No. 13785 PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER MICHAEL S. EIDSON

Building Official's Acceptance:

Signature Date

Permit Number:

Frequency of interim report submittals to the Building Official:

__Monthly __Bi- Monthly __Upon Completion Other; specify:_____

## Statement of Special Inspections
## Requirements for Seismic Resistance

---

See the Schedule of Special Inspections for inspection and testing requirements

**Seismic Design Category: C**

**Statement of Special Inspection for Seismic Resistance Required (Yes/No): Y**

**Description of seismic force-resisting system subject to special inspection and testing for seismic resistance:**
(Required for Seismic Design Categories C, D, E or F in accordance with IBC Sections 1705.11.1 through 1705.11.3, 1705.12.1 and 1705.12.2.)

Reinforced masonry shear walls

**Description of designated seismic systems subject to special inspection and testing for seismic resistance:**
(Required for architectural, electrical and mechanical systems and their components that require design in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE 7, have a component importance factor, *Ip*, greater than one and are in Seismic Design Categories C, D, E or F.)

**Description of additional seismic systems and components requiring special inspections and testing:**
(Required for systems noted in IBC Section 1705.11, cases 3, 4 & 5 in Seismic Design Categories C, D, E or F.)

**Statement of Responsibility:**
Each contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component described above must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

## Statement of Special Inspections
## Requirements for Wind Resistance

---

See the Schedule of Special Inspections for inspection and testing requirements

**Nominal Design Wind Speed, $V_{asd}$: 89 m.p.h.**

**Wind Exposure Category: B**

**Statement of Special Inspection for Wind Resistance Required (Yes/No): No**
(Required in wind exposure Category B, where the nominal design wind speed, $V_{asd}$, is 120 miles per hour or greater. Required in wind exposure Category C or D, where the nominal design wind speed, $V_{asd}$, is 110 miles per hour or greater.)

**Description of main windforce-resisting system subject to special inspection for wind resistance:**
(Required for systems noted in IBC Section 1705.10.1 and 1705.10.2)

**Description of windforce-resisting components subject to special inspection for wind resistance:**
(Required for systems and components noted in IBC Section 1705.10.3)

**Statement of Responsibility:**
Each contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component described above must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **1704.2.5 Inspection of Fabricators** | | | | | |
| Verify fabrication/quality control procedures | In-plant review (3) | Y | Periodic | | |
| **1705.1.1 Special Cases** (work unusual in nature, including but not limited to alternative materials and systems, unusual design applications, materials and systems with special manufacturer's requirements) | Submittal review, shop (3) and/or field inspection | | | | |
| **1705.2 Steel Construction** | | | | | |
| 1. Fabricator and erector documents (Verify reports and certificates as listed in AISC 360, chapter N, paragraph 3.2 for compliance with construction documents) | Submittal Review | Y | Each submittal | 2 | |
| 2. Material verification of structural steel | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 3. Embedments (Verify diameter, grade, type, length, embedment. See 1705.3 for anchors) | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 4. Verify member locations, braces, stiffeners, and application of joint details at each connection comply with construction documents | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 5. Structural steel welding: | | | | | |
| a. Inspection tasks Prior to Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.4-1) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) | 1 | |
| b. Inspection tasks During Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.4-2) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe (4) | 1 | |
| c. Inspection tasks After Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.4-3) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) | 1 | |
| d. Nondestructive testing (NDT) of welded joints: *see Commentary* | | | | | |
| 1) Complete penetration groove welds 5/16" or greater in *risk category* III or IV | Shop (3) or field ultrasonic testing - 100% | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 2) Complete penetration groove welds 5/16" or greater in *risk category* II | Shop (3) or field ultrasonic testing - 10% of welds minimum | Y | Periodic | | |
| 3) Thermally cut surfaces of access holes when material t > 2" | Shop (3) or field magnetic Partical or Penetrant testing | N | Periodic | | |
| 4) Welded joints subject to fatigue when required by AISC 360, Appendix 3, Table A-3.1 | Shop (3) or field radiographic or Ultrasonic testing | | Periodic | | |
| 5) Fabricator's NDT reports when fabricator performs NDT | Verify reports | Y | Each submittal (5) | 2 | |
| 6. Structural steel bolting: | Shop (3) and field inspection | | | | |
| a. Inspection tasks Prior to Bolting (Observe, or perform tasks for each bolted connection, in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-1) | | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) | 1 | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| b.Inspection tasks During Bolting (Observe the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-2) | | | Observe (4) | | |
| 1) Pre-tensioned and slip-critical joints | | Y | | 1 | |
| a) Turn-of-nut with matching markings | | N | Periodic | | |
| b) Direct tension indicator | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| c) Twist-off type tension control bolt | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| d) Turn-of-nut without matching markings | | N | Continuous | | |
| e) Calibrated wrench | | N | Continuous | | |
| 2) Snug-tight joints | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| c. Inspection tasks After Bolting (Perform tasks for each bolted connection in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-3) | | Y | Perform (4) | 1 | |
| 7. Inspection of steel elements of composite construction prior to concrete placement in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N6.1 | Shop (3) and field inspection and testing | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) | 1 | |
| **1705.2.2 Steel Construction Other Than Structural Steel** | | | | | |
| 1. Material verification of cold-formed steel deck: | | | | | |
| a. Identification markings | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| b. Manufacturer's certified test reports | Submittal Review | Y | Each submittal | 2 | |
| 2. Connection of cold-formed steel deck to supporting structure: | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | | 1 | |
| a. Welding | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| b. Other fasteners (in accordance with AISC 360,Section N6) | | | | | |
| 1) Verify fasteners are in conformance with approved submittal | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 2) Verify fastener installation is in conformance with approved submittal and manufacturer's recommendations | | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 3. Reinforcing steel | Shop (3) and field inspection | | | | |
| a. Verification of weldability of steel other than ASTM A706 | | N | Periodic | | |
| b. Reinforcing steel resisting flexural and axial forces in intermediate and special moment frames, boundary elements of special concrete structural walls and shear reinforcement | | N | Continuous | | |
| c. Shear reinforcement | | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| d. Other reinforcing steel | | N | Periodic | | |
| 4. Cold-formed steel trusses spanning 60 feet or greater | | | | | |
| a. Verify temporary and permanent restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.3 Concrete Construction** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection of reinforcing steel installation (see 1705.2.2 for welding) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 2. Inspection of prestressing steel installation | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| 3. Inspection of anchors cast in concrete where allowable loads have been increased per section 1908.5 or where strength design is used | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 4. Inspection of anchors and reinforcing steel post-installed in hardened concrete: Per research reports including verification of anchor type, anchor dimensions, hole dimensions, hole cleaning procedures, anchor spacing, edge distances, concrete minimum thickness, anchor embedment and tightening torque | Field inspection | Y | Periodic or as required by the research report issued by an approved source | 1 | |
| 5. Verify use of approved design mix | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 6. Fresh concrete sampling, perform slump and air content tests and determine temperature of concrete | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| 7. Inspection of concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Continuous | | |
| 8. Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 9. Inspection of prestressed concrete: | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | | | |
| a. Application of prestressing force | | N | Continuous | | |
| b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons in the seismic-force-resisting system | | N | Continuous | | |
| 10. Erection of precast concrete members | | | | | |
| a. Inspect in accordance with construction documents | Field inspection | N | In accordance with construction documents | | |
| b. Perform inspections of welding and bolting in accordance with Section 1705.2 | Field inspection | N | In accordance with Section 1705.2 | | |
| 11. Verification of in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs | Review field testing and laboratory reports | N | Periodic | | |
| 12. Inspection of formwork for shape, lines, location and dimensions | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 13. Concrete strength testing and verification of compliance with construction documents | Field testing and review of laboratory reports | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| **1705.4 Masonry Construction** | | | | | |
| **(A) Level A, B and C Quality Assurance:** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify compliance with approved submittals | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| **(B) Level B Quality Assurance:** | | | | | |
| 1. Verification of f'm and $f'_{AAC}$ prior to construction | Testing by unit strength method or prism test method | Y | Periodic | 1 | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **(C) Level C Quality Assurance:** | | | | | |
| 1. Verification of f'm and $f'_{AAC}$ prior to construction and for every 5,000 SF during construction | Testing by unit strength method or prism test method | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Verification of proportions of materials in premixed or preblended mortar, prestressing grout, and grout other than self-consolidating grout, as delivered to the project site | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 3. Verify placement of masonry units | Field Inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **(D) Levels B and C Quality Assurance:** | | | | | |
| 1. Verification of Slump Flow and Visual Stability Index (VSI) of self-consolidating grout as delivered to the project | Field testing | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| 2. Verify compliance with approved submittals | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 3. Verify proportions of site-mixed mortar, grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 4. Verify grade, type, and size of reinforcement and anchor bolts, and prestressing tendons and anchorages | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 5. Verify construction of mortar joints | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 6. Verify placement of reinforcement, connectors, and prestressing tendons and anchorages | Field Inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic | 1 | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 7. Verify grout space prior to grouting | Field Inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic | 1 | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 8. Verify placement of grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons | Field Inspection | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| 9. Verify size and location of structural masonry elements | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 10. Verify type, size, and location of anchors, including details of anchorage of masonry to structural members, frames, or other construction. | Field inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic | 1 | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 11. Verify welding of reinforcement (see 1705.2.2) | Field inspection | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| 12. Verify preparation, construction, and protestion of masonry during cold weather (temperature below 40°F) or hot weather (temperature above 90°F) | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 13. Verify application and measurement of prestressing force | Field Inspection | N | Continuous | | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| 14. Verify placement of AAC masonry units and construction of thin-bed mortar joints (first 5000 SF of AAC masonry) | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 15. Verify placement of AAC masonry units and construction of thin-bed mortar joints (after the first 5000 SF of AAC masonry) | Field inspection | N | Level B - Periodic | | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 16. Verify properties of thin-bed mortar for AAC masonry (first 5000 SF of AAC masonry) | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 17. Verify properties of thin-bed mortar forAAC masonry (after the first 5000 SF of AAC masonry) | Field inspection | N | Level B - Periodic | | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 18. Prepare grout and mortar specimens | Field testing | Y | Level B - Periodic | 1 | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| 19. Observe preparation of prisms | Field inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic | 1 | |
| | | | Level C - Continuous | | |
| **1705.5 Wood Construction** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection of the fabrication process of wood structural elements and assemblies in accordance with Section 1704.2.5 | In-plant review (3) | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. For high-load diaphragms, verify grade and thickness of structural panel sheathing agree with approved building plans | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 3. For high-load diaphragms, verify nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, nail or staple diameter and length, number of fastener lines, and that spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agree with approved building plans | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 4. Metal-plate-connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater: verify temporary and permanent restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.6 Soils** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 3. Perform classification and testing of controlled fill materials. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 4. Verify use of proper materials, densities, and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of controlled fill | Field inspection | Y | Continuous | 1 | |
| 5. Prior to placement of controlled fill, observe subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **1705.7 Driven Deep Foundations** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with requirements | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 2. Determine capacities of test elements and conduct additional load tests, as required | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 3. Observe driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 4. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 5. For steel elements, perform additional inspections per Section 1705.2 | See Section 1705.2 | N | See Section 1705.2 | | |
| 6. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform additional inspections per Section 1705.3 | See Section 1705.3 | N | See Section 1705.3 | | |
| 7. For specialty elements, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge | Field inspection | N | In accordance with construction documents | | |
| 8. Perform additional inspections and tests in accordance with the construction documents | Field Inspection and testing | N | In accordance with construction documents | | |
| **1705.8 Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations** | | | | | |
| 1.Observe drilling operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm element diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable) and adequate end-bearing strata capacity. Record concrete or grout volumes | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 3. For concrete elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3 | See Section 1705.3 | | See Section 1705.3 | | |
| 4. Perform additional inspections and tests in accordance with the construction documents | Field Inspection and testing | N | In accordance with construction documents | | |
| **1705.9 Helical Pile Foundations** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify installation equipment, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other data as required. | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 2. Perform additional inspections and tests in accordance with the construction documents | Field Inspection and testing | N | In accordance with construction documents | | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **1705.10.1 Structural Wood Special Inspections For Wind Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection of field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 2. Inspection of nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.10.2 Cold-formed Steel Special Inspections For Wind Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1.Inspection during welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 2.Inspections for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.10.3 Wind-resisting Components** | | | | | |
| 1. Roof cladding | Shop (3) and field inspection | | Periodic | | |
| 2. Wall cladding | Shop (3) and field inspection | | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.1 Structural Steel Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| Inspection of structural steel in accordance with AISC 341 | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | In accordance with AISC 341 | 1 | |
| **1705.11.2 Structural Wood Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection of field gluing operations of elements of the seismic-force resisting system | Field inspection | N | Continuous | | |
| 2. Inspection of nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic-force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.3 Cold-formed Steel Light-Frame Construction Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection during welding operations of elements of the seismic-force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Inspections for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic-force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.4 Designated Seismic Systems Verification** | | | | | |
| Inspect and verify that that the component label, anchorage or mounting conforms to the certificate of compliance in accordance with Section 1705.12.3 | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **1705.11.5 Architectural Components Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection during the erection and fastening of exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Inspection during the erection and fastening of interior and exterior nonbearing walls | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 3. Inspection during anchorage of access floors | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.6 Mechanical and Electrical Components Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspection during the anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency or standby power systems | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Inspection during the anchorage of other electrical equipment | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 3. Inspection during installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials, and their associated mechanical units | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 4. Inspection during the installation and anchorage of HVAC ductwork that will contain hazardous materials | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 5. Inspection during the installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.7 Storage Racks Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| Inspection during the anchorage of storage racks 8 feet or greater in height | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.11.8 Seismic Isolation Systems** | | | | | |
| Inspection during the fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices used as part of the seismic isolation system | Shop and field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| **1705.12.1 Concrete Reinforcement Testing and Qualification for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| 1. Review certified mill test reports for each shipment of reinforcement used to resist earthquake-induced flexural and axial forces in reinforced concrete special moment frames, special structural walls, and coupling beams connecting special structural walls | Review certified mill test reports | N | Each shipment | | |

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PROJECT | | | | | |
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| 2. Verify reinforcement weldability of ASTM A615 reinforcement used to resist earthquake-induced flexural and axial forces in reinforced concrete special moment frames, special structural walls, and coupling beams connecting special structural walls | Review test reports | N | Each shipment | | |
| **1705.12.2 Structural Steel Testing and Qualification for Seismic Resistance** | | | | | |
| Test in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341 | Shop (3) and field testing | N | Per AISC 341 | | |
| **1705.12.3 Seismic Certification of Nonstructural Components** | | | | | |
| Review certificate of compliance for designated seismic system components. | Certificate of compliance review | N | Each submittal | | |
| **1705.12.4 Seismic Isolation Systems** | | | | | |
| Test seismic isolation system in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 17.8 | Prototype testing | N | Per ASCE 7 | | |
| **1705.13 Sprayed Fire-resistant Materials** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify surface condition preparation of structural members | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 2. Verify application of sprayed fire-resistant materials | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 3. Verify average thickness of sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to structural members | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| 4. Verify density of the sprayed fire-resistant material complies with approved fire-resistant design | Field inspection and testing | Y | Per IBC Section 1705.13.5 | 1 | |
| 5. Verify the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured sprayed fire-resistant material | Field inspection and testing | Y | Per IBC Section 1705.13.6 | 1 | |
| **1705.14 Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings** | | | | | |
| Inspect mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings applied to structural elements and decks | Field inspection | Y | Periodic | 1 | |
| **1705.15 Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)** | | | | | |
| 1. Verify materials, details and installations are per the approved construction documents | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Inspection of water-resistive barrier over sheathing substrate | Field inspection | N | Periodic | | |

## SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES

| PROJECT | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT | AGENT* | DATE COMPLETED |
| **1705.16 Fire-Resistant Penetrations and Joints** | | | | | |
| 1. Inspect penetration firestop | Field testing | N | Per ASTM E2174 | | |
| 2. Inspect fire-resistant joint systems | Field testing | N | Per ASTM E2393 | | |
| **1705.17 Smoke Control Systems** | | | | | |
| 1. Leakage testing and recording of device locations prior to concealment | Field testing | N | Periodic | | |
| 2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion, pressure difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification | Field testing | N | Periodic | | |

| * INSPECTION AGENTS FIRM | ADDRESS | TELEPHONE NO. |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Testing firm chosen by Owner | | |
| 2. Engineer of Record | | |
| 3. | | |
| 4. | | |

*Notes: 1. The inspection and testing agent(s) shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official prior to commencing work. The qualifications of the Special Inspector(s) and/or testing agencies may be subject to the approval of the Building Official and/or the Design Professional.*

*2. The list of Special Inspectors may be submitted as a separate document, if noted so above.*

*3. Special Insepctions as required by Section 1704.2.5 are not required where the fabricator is approved in accordance with IBC Section 1704.2.5.2*

*4. Observe on a random basis, operations need not be delayed pending these inspections. Perform these tasks for each welded joint, bolted connection, or steel element.*

*5. NDT of welds completed in an approved fabricator's shop may be performed by that fabricator when approved by the AHJ. Refer to AISC 360, N7.*

Are *Requirements for Seismic Resistance* included in the *Statement of Special Inspections*? Yes No

Are *Requirements for Wind Resistance* included in the *Statement of Special Inspections*? Yes No

DATE: 1-18-19

# FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

**PROJECT:** Union County Fieldhouse 01-697-027

**LOCATION:** 153 Panther Way, Blairsville, GA

**PERMIT APPLICANT:** _____

**APPLICANT'S ADDRESS:** _____

_____

**ARCHITECT OF RECORD:** Gregory Shillinger, AIA

**STRUCTURAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Michael Eidson, P.E.

**MECHANICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Michael Waldbillig, P.E.

**ELECTRICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD:** Frank Campo, P.E.

**REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE:** Michael Eidson, P.E.

To the best of my information, knowledge, and belief, which are based upon observations or diligent supervision of our inspection services for the above-referenced Project, I hereby state that the special inspections or testing required for this Project, and designated for this Agent in the *Schedule of Special Inspection Services*, have been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

The Special Inspection program does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to comply with the Contract Documents. Jobsite safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Interim reports submitted prior to this final report and numbered___to___form a basis for, and are to be considered an integral part of this final report. The following discrepancies that were outstanding since the last interim report dated _____ have been corrected:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

*(Attach 8 ½"x11" continuation sheet(s) if required to complete the description of corrections)*

**Prepared By:**

_____
Special Inspection Agent/Firm

_____
Type or print name

_____
Signature Date

## Contractor's Statement of Responsibility

Each contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a main wind or seismic force-resisting system, designated seismic system or wind or seismic-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections, Requirements for Seismic or Wind Resistance, must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

Project:_____

Contractor's Name:_____

Address:_____

License No.:_____

Description of building systems and components included in Statement of Responsibility:

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

### Contractor's Acknowledgement of Special Requirements

I hereby acknowledge that I have received, read, and understand the Statement of Special Inspections and Special Inspection program:

I hereby acknowledge that control will be exercised to obtain conformance with the approved construction documents.

_____
Name and Title (type or print)

_____ _____
Signature Date

### Contractor's Provisions for Quality Control

Procedures for exercising control within the contractor's organization, the method and frequency of reporting and distribution of reports is attached to this Statement.

Identification and qualifications of the person(s) exercising such control and their position(s) in the organization are attached to this Statement

## Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance

Each approved fabricator that is exempt from Special Inspection of shop fabrication and implementation procedures per section 1704.2.5.2 of the International Building Code must submit *Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance* at the completion of fabrication.

Project:_____

Fabricator's Name:_____

Address:_____

Certification or Approval Agency:_____

Certification Number:_____

Date of Last Audit or Approval:_____

Description of structural members and assemblies that have been fabricated:

_____

I hereby certify that items described above were fabricated in strict accordance with the approved construction documents.

_____
Name and Title (type or print)

_____ _____
Signature Date

Attach copies of fabricator's certification or building code evaluation service report and fabricator's quality control manual.

# SPECIAL INSPECTION DAILY REPORT

| |
|---|
| PROJECT NAME / ADDRESS: |
| INSPECTION TYPE(S) COVERAGE<br><br>☐ CONTINUOUS ☐ PERIODIC<br>TIME BEGINNING INSPECTION: TIME ENDING INSPECTION: |
| DESCRIBE INSPECTIONS MADE, INCLUDING LOCATIONS: |
| LIST TESTS MADE: |
| LIST ITEMS REQUIRING CORRECTIONS, CORRECTIONS OF PREVIOUSLY LISTED ITEMS AND PREVIOUSLY LISTED UNCORRECTED ITEMS: PROVIDE COPIES OF DISCREPANCY NOTICES: |
| COMMENTS: |
| TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, WORK INSPECTED WAS IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPROVED DESIGN DRAWINGS, AND SPECIFICATIONS, EXCEPT AS NOTED ABOVE. |

| | |
|---|---|
| PRINTED FULL NAME | |
| NOTE BY "SPECIAL INSPECTOR" OR PROVIDE NAME OF TESTING AGENCY | |

| | |
|---|---|
| SIGNED: | DATE: |
| CERTIFICATION: | NUMBER: |

One copy of this report to remain at job site with the contractor for review upon request.

# SPECIAL INSPECTION INTERIM REPORT

| PROJECT NAME / ADDRESS: |
|---|
| INSPECTION TYPE(S) COVERAGE<br><br>☐ CONTINUOUS ☐ PERIODIC<br>TIME BEGINNING INSPECTION: TIME ENDING INSPECTION: |
| DESCRIBE INSPECTIONS MADE, INCLUDING LOCATIONS: |
| LIST TESTS MADE: |

| TOTAL INSPECTION TIME EACH DAY | DATE | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | HOURS | | | | | | | |

| LIST ITEMS REQUIRING CORRECTIONS, CORRECTIONS OF PREVIOUSLY LISTED ITEMS AND PREVIOUSLY LISTED UNCORRECTED ITEMS: PROVIDE COPIES OF DISCREPANCY NOTICES: |
|---|
| COMMENTS: |
| TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, WORK INSPECTED WAS IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPROVED DESIGN DRAWINGS, AND SPECIFICATIONS, EXCEPT AS NOTED ABOVE. |

| PRINTED FULL NAME | |
|---|---|
| NOTE BY "SPECIAL INSPECTOR" OR PROVIDE NAME OF TESTING AGENCY | |

| SIGNED: | DATE: |
|---|---|
| CERTIFICATION: | NUMBER: |

One copy of this report to remain at job site with the contractor for review upon request.

DISCREPANCY NOTICE No. _____

# SPECIAL INSPECTION DISCREPANCY NOTICE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PROJECT NAME / ADDRESS: | | |
| INSPECTION TYPE(S) COVERAGE<br><br>☐ CONTINUOUS ☐ PERIODIC | | |
| AREA INSPECTED | TYPE OF INSPECTION | |
| NOTICE DELIVERED TO:<br>O CONTRACTOR<br>O ENGINEER/ARCHITECT<br>O OWNER | DATE: | TIME: |
| MAKE THE FOLLOWING CORRECTIONS AND SECURE INSPECTION APPROVAL PRIOR TO PROCEEDING WITH THIS PHASE OF THE WORK. | | |
| | | |
| PRINTED FULL NAME | | |
| NOTE BY "SPECIAL INSPECTOR" OR PROVIDE NAME OF TESTING AGENCY | | |
| SIGNED: | DATE: | |
| CERTIFICATION: | NUMBER: | |

One copy of this report to remain at job site with the contractor for review upon request.

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
2. Section 31 23 19 "Dewatering" for disposal of ground water at Project site.
3. Section 32 12 16 "Asphalt Paving" for construction and maintenance of asphalt pavement for temporary roads and paved areas.
4. Section 32 13 13 "Concrete Paving" for construction and maintenance of cement concrete pavement for temporary roads and paved areas.

1.3 USE CHARGES

A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities including Owner, Architect, testing agencies and authorities having jurisdiction to use temporary services and facilities without cost.

B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.

C. Water Service: Contractor/Construction Manager will pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities until Substantial Completion of the Project.

D. Electric Power Service: Contractor/Construction Manager will be responsible for constructing a temporary service drop, per the utility company's standards, and coordinating electric service to the temporary service drop with Blue Ridge Mountain EMC. Contractor/Construction Manager shall pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities until Substantial Completion of the Project.

E. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

F. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electric Service: Comply with ANSI A10.6, NECA's "Temporary Electrical Facilities", NEMA, NFPA 70 and 241 and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service.

B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

A. Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate project participant needs for Project meetings. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish as required for personnel and meetings.

1. Provide heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain comfortable temperature.
2. Provide sufficient lighting fixtures to maintaining adequate illumination.

B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment specified to be kept in dry locations.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures. Comply with NFPA 10 and NFPA 241.

B. Self-Contained Toilets: Single occupant units vented and fully enclosed with fiber glass reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.

C. Drinking Water: Provide containerized or bottled water units, including paper cup supply.

D. Electrical Outlets: Provide properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets equipped with ground fault circuit interrupters, reset buttons and pilot lights.

E. Temporary Heating, Cooling and Dehumidification Equipment: Provide portable heating, cooling, ventilation and dehumidification equipment as required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed

installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.

1. Provide portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment to attain and maintain building and material moisture content levels as required by interior finish manufacturers and that will not support the growth of mold and mildew. Operate portable equipment from the time the building is enclosed until substantial completion. Unless authorized by the Owner, d**o not** operate permanent HVAC equipment until the date of substantial completion. If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of [**8**] <**Insert number**> at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction[**.**][ **and clean HVAC system as required in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures"**]

F. Heating Equipment: Provide vented, self-contained, electric, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control that are listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed and marked for intended location and application.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress.

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities. Change from temporary service to permanent service at earliest possible date.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Engage appropriate utility company to install temporary or connect to existing service.

1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction.

B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.

C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.

D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use by construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.

E. Temperature and Humidity Control: Provide temporary heating, cooling, ventilation and dehumidification required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.

F. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.

G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.

H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.

1. Maintain support facilities Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion.

B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations.

C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

D. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and applicable Division 31 Sections. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.

1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
2. Before permanent storm drainage piping system is operational, provide temporary roof drainage piping to storm water control structures.

E. Project Identification Signs: Provide two-sided Project identification signs as indicated. Do not permit installation of unauthorized signs.

1. Temporary Signs: Provide temporary directional signs for visitors.

F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."

G. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.

B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations.

C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements specified in Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing."

D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

F. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.

G. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

H. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.

1. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.

B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:

1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.

C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:

1. Do not store or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
5. Do not install material that is wet.
6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.

D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:

1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
2. Use temporary heating, ventilating, cooling and dehumidification equipment to control humidity.
3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
   a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for **48** hours are considered defective.
   b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for **48** hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.

c. Remove materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within **48** hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

1. Keep temporary services and facilities neat, clean and in good working order.
2. Relocate temporary services and facilities as required by progress of the Work.
3. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
2. Section 01 23 00 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
3. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not new products.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor/Construction Manager is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft or loss.
2. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
3. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor/Construction Manager of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
   1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
   2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
   1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
   2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
   3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
   1. Asbestos containing materials or products **are not** allowed on the Project site and **shall not** be incorporated into the Work.
   2. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
   3. Standard Products: Unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
   4. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
   5. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Owner and Architect will make selection.
   6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
   7. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 for product substitution after bidding.

B. Product Selection Procedures:
   1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's/Construction Manager’s convenience will not be considered.
   2. Restricted List Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements.
   3. Restricted List Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements.
   4. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 for product substitution after bidding.

C. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 60 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
6. Progress cleaning.
7. Starting and adjusting.
8. Protection of installed construction.
9. Correction of the Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located

B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect/Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Owner’s or Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.

1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match that is visually and functionally acceptable to Architect

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Existing Site Conditions: The accuracy of the site information shown in the original survey drawings is not guaranteed. Contractor/Construction Manager must visit the site to verify the accuracy of the existing conditions shown. Contractor/Construction Manager shall review plan dimensions, alignments and elevations to check for compatibility with existing site conditions and shall make all adjustments necessary to fit proposed project including site improvements into the existing conditions.

B. Existing Site Utilities: The existence and location of underground utilities and construction shown as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.

C. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present, for compliance with installation requirements. Record observations.
   1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
   2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
   3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

D. Written Report: Report conditions detrimental to performance of the Work in writing identifying detrimental conditions, unacceptable installation tolerances and recommended corrections.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements and recheck as required to fit the Work properly. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

E. Surface and Substrate Preparation: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for preparation of substrates to receive subsequent work.

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

A. Verification: Verify layout information shown on Drawings. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect/Engineer promptly.

B. General: Engage a land surveyor or professional engineer to lay out the Work.
   1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels to locate each element of Project. Establish limits on use of Project site.
   2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
   3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
   4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
   5. Notify Architect/Engineer when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
   6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.

D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work.

E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Make the log available for reference by Architect/Engineer.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

A. Reference Points: Locate benchmarks, control points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
   1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect/Engineer.
   2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
   1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
   2. Install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of replacement.
   3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products.

C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.

F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.

G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect/Engineer.
2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

K. Incorporation of ACM's (asbestos containing materials) into the Work is **not** allowed.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction.

1. In general, use tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Neatly cut holes to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
3. Cut concrete and masonry using cutting machines designed for that purpose.
4. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.

1. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
2. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
   a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
3. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
4. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.

G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.

B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.

2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.

2. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.

3. Coordinate progress cleaning among all entities working concurrently at project site.

B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.

1. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area as necessary and appropriate for work being installed.

D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in other 01 Sections.

H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. Where specified, coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements."

B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.

D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

**END OF SECTION 01 73 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
2. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data".
3. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents".
4. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor's/Construction Manager’s List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Contractor's/Construction Manager’s List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's/Construction Manager’s punch list).

B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, property surveys, and similar final record information.
3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
6. Advise Owner of changeover in utilities.
7. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site.
8. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
9. Touch up, repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection. Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor/Construction Manager of items that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.5 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 29 00.
2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion punch list, endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection. Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor/Construction Manager of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor/Construction Manager of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections is completed or corrected.

1.6 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Identify each space and area containing items needing correction including areas disturbed by Contractor/Construction Manager that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first.
2. Submit list of incomplete items to the Architect in the following format:
a. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

1.7 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties to Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor/Construction Manager.

C. Organize warranties into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
1. Bind warranties in heavy-duty, three-ring binders.
2. Provide dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation.
3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document. Submit all electronic copies on a minimum 4G flash drive.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials recommended by manufacturer of the surface to be cleaned.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local, state and federal laws and ordinances.

B. Cleaning: Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Complete the following cleaning operations:
a. Clean site of rubbish, waste material and litter.
b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains.
c. Remove tools, equipment, machinery, and surplus material from site.
d. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances.
f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
g. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
j. Remove labels that are not permanent.
k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment.
l. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
n. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
o. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." and Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
   a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

3.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

1. 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA
   a. Operations Manuals
   b. Product Maintenance Manuals
   c. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals
2. 01 78 39 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
   a. Record Drawings
   b. Record Specifications
   c. Miscellaneous Record Submittals
   d. Weekly Reports
3. 02 41 19 SELECTIVE STRUCTURE DEMOLITION
   a. Warranties for Existing Systems
4. 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
   a. Warranty for Polished Concrete
5. 07 41 13 STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS
   a. Maintenance Data
   b. Material and workmanship warranty (2 years)
   c. Panel finish warranty (20 years)
   d. Weather tightness warranty (20 years)
6. 07 42 13.13 FORMED METAL WALL PANELS
   a. Maintenance Data
   b. Material and workmanship warranty (2 years)
   c. Fluoropolymer finish warranty (20 years)
   d. Siliconized polyester finish warranty (10 years)
7. 07 42 13.13 METAL WALL PANELS
   a. Maintenance Data
   b. Material and workmanship warranty (2 years)
   c. Panel finish warranty (20 years)
8. 07 42 17 METAL SOFFIT PANELS
   a. Maintenance Data
   b. Material and workmanship warranty (2 years)
   c. Panel finish warranty (20 years)
9. 07 62 00 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
   a. Maintenance Data
10. 07 71 00 ROOF SPECIALTIES
   a. Warranty (20 years)
11. 07 72 00 ROOF ACCESSORIES
   a. Operations and Maintenance Data
   b. Warranties (20years)
12. 08 14 16 FLUSH WOOD DOORS
   a. Warranty-solid core (life time)
   b. Warranty-hollow core (2 years)
   c. Maintenance materials

13. 08 51 13 ALUMINUM WINDOWS
    a. Window warranty (10 years)
    b. Glazing unit warranty (5 years)
    c. Aluminum finish warranty (10, 20 years)
14. 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Bitting List of Keys
    c. Instruction Sheet for Each Item
    d. Non-Standard Tools for Each Item
    e. Contractor's Certification
    f. Contractor's Final Inspection Report
    g. Manufacturer's Certifications
    h. General warranty (1 year)
    i. Exit device warranty (3 years)
    j. Closer warranty (10 years)
15. 08 80 00 GLAZING
    a. Warranty for coated glass (10 years)
    b. Warranty for laminated glass (10 years)
    c. Warranty for insulating units with tempered glass (10 years)
    d. Warranty for insulating units with laminate glass (5 years)
    e. Warranty for double glazing units with gel fill (10 Years)
16. 09 51 13 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Maintenance Materials
17. 09 65 13 RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES
    a. Maintenance Materials
18. 09 65 66 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Maintenance Materials
19. 09 67 23 RESINOUS FLOORING
    a. Maintenance Data
20. 10 14 23 PANEL SIGNAGE
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Warranty (5 years)
21. 10 28 00 TOILET, BATH AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Warranty for mirrors (15 years)
    c. Warranty for hand dryers (10 years)
22. 10 44 16 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
    b. Warranty (6 years)
23. 10 51 13 LOCKERS
    a. Maintenance Data
    b. Warranty (10 years)
24. 11 31 13 COMMERCIAL APPLIANCES
    a. Operations and Maintenance Data
    b. Warranty dryer (2 years)
    c. Warranty washer (5 years for frame cylinder and shell)
    d. Warranty washer (2 years for micro processing board, main bearing assemblies, and non-wearing parts)
25. 22 05 19 METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
26. 22 11 19 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
27. 22 11 23 DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
28. 22 13 19 SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
29. 22 34 00 FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
    a. Operation and Maintenance Data
30. 22 42 13.13 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

a. Operation and Maintenance Data
31. 22 42 13.16 COMMERCIAL URINALS
a. Operation and Maintenance Data
32. 22 47 16 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS
a. Maintenance Data
33. 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
a. Certified TAB reports
34. 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation
35. 23 11 26 FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING
a. Operation and Maintenance Data
36. 23 33 00 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
a. Operation and Maintenance Data
37. 23 34 23 HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Maintenance materials
38. 23 36 00 AIR TERMINAL UNITS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Maintenance materials
39. 23 41 00 PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION
a. Maintenance Material
40. 23 44 00 AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEMS
a. Warranty (1 year)
41. 23 74 13 PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Maintenance Materials
c. Warranty for compressors (5, 10 years)
d. Warranty for gas furnace heat exchangers (5, 10, 15, 20 years)
e. Warranty for solid state ignition modules (3 years)
f. Warranty for control boards (3 years)
42. 23 74 33 DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR UNITS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Maintenance Materials
c. Warranty for compressors (5 years)
d. Warranty for heat exchangers (5years)
43. 23 81 13 PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR-CONDITIONERS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Warranty for sealed refrigeration system (5 years)
c. Warranty for non sealed parts (5 years)
d. Warranty for heat exchangers (5 years
44. 23 81 19 SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONERS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
b. Warranty for compressor (5 years)
c. Warranty for parts and labor (5 years)
45. 23 82 39.19 WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS
a. Operation & Maintenance Manuals
46. 26 01 00 GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS
a. Warranty (1 year)
47. 26 05 26 GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
a. Operation & Maintenance Data
48. 26 09 23 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
a. Closeout Submittals
b. Operation & Maintenance Data
c. Warranty (5 years)
49. 26 24 16 PANELBOARDS
a. Closeout Submittals
b. Operation & Maintenance Data
c. Warranty (5 years)
50. 26 27 26 WIRING DEVICES
a. Closeout Submittals

b. Operation & Maintenance Data

51. 26 28 13 FUSES
    a. Closeout Submittals
    b. Operation & Maintenance Data
    c. Maintenance Materials
52. 26 28 16 ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
    a. Closeout Submittals
    b. Operation & Maintenance Data
53. 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING
    a. Closeout Submittals
    b. Operation & Maintenance Data
54. 31 20 00 EARTH MOVING
    a. Detention Pond(s) As-built Survey
    b. Outlet Structure(s) Detail
    c. Final Site Topography & As-built Survey
55. 31 31 16 TERMITE CONTROL
    a. Warranty soil treatment (5 years)
    b. Warranty wood treatment (12 years)
56. 32 92 00 TURF AND GRASSES
    a. Maintenance Instructions

1.12 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SCHEDULE

B. The following is a list of maintenance materials to be provided for this project. The contractor shall fill in the quantities and indicate the location where maintenance materials are stored. This completed list should be included with the close out documents submission.

1. 08 14 16 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

a. One quart of each stain used Location_____
b. One quart of each finish used Location_____

2. 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE
a. Non-Standard Tools for Each Item Location_____

3. 09 51 13 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
a. Suspension system components (2%) Quantity_____ Location_____
b. Acoustical ceiling tiles (2%) Quan6ity_____ Location_____

4. 09 65 13 RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES
a. Resilient base (10 lf per 500 lf) Quantity_____ Location_____
b. Resilient stair accessories (10 lf per 500 lf) Quantity_____ Location_____
c. Resilient molding accessories (10 lf per 500 lf)Quantity_____ Location_____

5. 09 65 66 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING
a. Rubber floor tile (1 box per 50) Quantity_____ Location_____
b. Rubber sheet flooring (2%) Quantity_____ Location_____

6. 09 68 13 TILE CARPETING
a. Full size tiles (5% of amount installed) Quantity_____ Location_____

7. 23 33 00 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
a. Additional fusible links (10%) Quantity_____ Location_____
8. 23 34 23 HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
a. Additional belts (one per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
9. 23 36 00 AIR TERMINAL UNITS
a. Unit filters (one per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
10. 23 41 00 PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION
a. Additional filters (2 per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
11. 23 74 13 PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS
a. Additional filters (2 per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
b. Fan Belts (2 sets per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
12. 23 74 33 DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS
a. Additional filters (2 per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
b. Fan Belts (2 sets per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
13. 23 81 19 SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONERS
a. Additional filters (2 per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
14. 23 81 13 PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS
a. Additional filters (2 per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
15. Fan Belts (2 sets per unit) Quantity_____ Location_____
16. 26 28 13 FUSES
a. Spare fuses (3 ea type) Quantity_____ Location_____

**END OF SECTION 01 77 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.

1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.

2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.

B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.

a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked directory.

b. Enable inserted reviewer Comments on draft submittals.

2. Three 1 paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory.

C. Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.

1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Organization: Organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:

1. Title page.

2. Table of contents.

3. Manual contents.

B. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment.

C. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.

1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.

2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel when open.

D. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring binders, of necessary size for holding 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label.

a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.

b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.

2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.

3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
   a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
   b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.2 OPERATION MANUALS

A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
   1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
   2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
   3. Operating standards and procedures.
   4. Operating logs.
   5. Wiring and control diagrams.
   6. Piped system diagrams.
   7. Precautions against improper use.
   8. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:
   1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
   2. Manufacturer's name.
   3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
   4. Equipment function and operating characteristics.
   5. Limiting conditions.
   6. Performance curves.
   7. Engineering data and tests.
   8. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
   1. Startup procedures.
   2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
   3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
   4. Regulation and control procedures.
   5. Instructions on stopping.
   6. Normal shutdown instructions.
   7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
   8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
   9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.3 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
   1. Product name and model number.
   2. Manufacturer's name.
   3. Color, pattern, and texture.
   4. Material and chemical composition.
   5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
   1. Inspection procedures.
   2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
   3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
   4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
   5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
   1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.4 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
   1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
   2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
   3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
   4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
   1. Test and inspection instructions.
   2. Troubleshooting guide.
   3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
   4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
   5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
   6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
   1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
   2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
   1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
   1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
   2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

C. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
   1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

D. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate

these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

1. Do not use original record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents."

E. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 23**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
   1. Record Drawings.
   2. Record Specifications.
   3. As-Built Erosion Control Survey.
   4. Final Site and Topographic Survey.
   5. Record Product Data.
   6. Miscellaneous record submittals.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for final property survey.
   2. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
   3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 SURVEY SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Erosion Control Survey: Immediately after erosion control measures are in place, prepare and submit (4) four certified paper copies and one electronic copy in DWG format, signed by professional land surveyor.

B. Final As-Built Site and Topographic Survey: At project close-out, submit (4) four certified paper copies and one electronic copy in DWG format, signed by professional land surveyor.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings: Submit one set of marked-up record drawings and one copy of annotated PDF electronic files of record drawings.

B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy and one copy of annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

C. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy and one copy of annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

D. Reports: Submit written report **weekly** indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
   1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
      a. Give particular attention to concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
      b. Accurately and neatly record information with dimensions where appropriate.
      c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
      d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
   2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
      b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
      c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
      d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
      e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
      f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
      g. Actual equipment locations.
      h. Duct size and routing.
      i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
      j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
      k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
      l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
      m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
      n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.

3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately.
4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Unless specified otherwise, format as annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
4. Architect will furnish Contractor/Construction Manager one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.

C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Provide the following record drawings in DWG format:
1. As-Built Erosion Control Survey: On completion of all detention ponds, engage a professional land surveyor to provide a ground-run, as-built survey, **not a modified design drawing,** showing the following detention pond and erosion control structure information:
a. Surveyor's certification with stamp and signature.
b. Benchmark(s) and North Arrow.
c. Ground-run topography with two foot contour intervals.
d. Surveyor's certified volume calculation of pond(s). Provide separate final storage, plus undercut sediment storage calculations for each pond.
e. Detailed spot elevations at 10 foot increments along pond dam(s) and overflow spillway.
f. Locations of all permanent structures, installed at that time, including, but not limited to, outlet structures and headwalls, outlet structure tops and inverts with sizes and elevations of all weirs and/or all orifices.
2. Final Site and Topographic Survey: Engage a professional land surveyor to prepare a ground-run, as-built survey, **not a modified design drawing,** showing the following information pertaining to the bid packages or work categories included as a part of the construction documents:
a. Surveyor's certification with stamp and signature.
b. Boundary lines, monuments, streets, all existing and new site improvements and utilities, significant vegetation, adjoining properties and acreage.
c. Benchmark(s) and North Arrow.
d. Ground-run topography with two foot contour intervals referenced to mean sea level.
e. On-site and off-site curb and gutter, pavement with widths, edges of sidewalks, flumes, steps and dumpster pads.
f. Location of domestic and fire water lines and their sizes.
g. Location of overhead and underground electric lines.
h. Location of all gas lines and their sizes.
i. Location of all underground telephone cables.
j. Location of all septic tanks, septic fields, sewer lines and their sizes, structure tops, clean-out locations and inflow & outflow pipes with invert information.
k. Location of all storm drainage elements including downspout piping, storm drainage structures including type, size, inverts and top elevations, all storm lines with size, type, inverts and locations, clean-out locations and inverts.
l. Re-survey all detention ponds following sediment removal and verify final storage volume.
m. Location of existing tree lines and specimen trees in cleared areas.
n. Location of all fences and gates.

D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Format: Unless otherwise specified, format as annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
   1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
   2. Note related Change Orders**,** record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy and as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections (such as tests and inspections, surveys, mix records and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction) for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as paper copy and as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
   1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 39**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for restrictions on the use of the premises.
2. Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for temporary protection of existing trees and plants that are affected by selective demolition.
3. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.
4. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor/Construction Manager.

B. Historic items and similar objects including cornerstones, commemorative plaques and other items of interest or value uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.

1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.

B. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.

C. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

D. Warranties: Documentation indicated that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

B. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

C. Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.

1. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

B. If available, review record documents of existing construction. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.

C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.

D. Notify the Owner and Architect/Engineer when unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered.

E. As Work progresses perform survey of building condition to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency of any portion of structure or adjacent structures.

F. Photograph existing conditions to record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.

B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.

1. Coordinate with Owner and arrange to shut off indicated services/systems.
2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

C. Refrigerant: If mechanical equipment is scheduled for removal, remove refrigerant from equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level.
2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction.
3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
5. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
6. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
7. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
8. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

B. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
   1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
   2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
   3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
   4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Owner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.

B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.

C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.

D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings."

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
   1. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   2. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

**END OF SECTION 02 41 19**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, vapor barriers and accessories, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 03 53 00 "Concrete Topping" for concrete floor toppings.
2. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
3. Section 32 13 13 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Drawings detailing fabrication, bending, and placement prepared according to ACI 315, “Details and Detailing of Concrete reinforcement”. Include material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures.

D. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.

1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
2. Admixtures.
3. Form materials and form-release agents.
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
5. Curing compounds.
6. Floor and slab treatments.
7. Bonding agents.
8. Adhesives.
9. Vapor retarders.
10. Epoxy joint filler.
11. Joint-filler strips.

C. Moisture Test Reports: Slab moisture test reports as required in Quality Assurance Article.

D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Moisture Control: The General Contractor/Construction Manager shall measure and document relative humidity within the floor slabs according to ASTM F2170-09 using a moisture probe inserted to a depth of 40% of the slab thickness and shall utilize portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment, as necessary, to reduce the moisture content of the slab to levels required by the various flooring system manufacturers.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless more stringent provisions are indicated:
1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete".
2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

D. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.

E. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.

F. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

G. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars, assembled with clips.

C. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064, as drawn.

D. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064.

E. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

F. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, flat sheet.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Supplement with the following:
1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

B. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded and as follows:
1. Class: Moderate weathering region, but not less than 4M.
2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) nominal.

D. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.5 ADMIXTURES

A. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.

B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.

2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Under Slab Sheet Vapor Retarder (All Floor Slabs): ASTM E 1745, Class A, with maximum perm rating of 0.01 per ASTM E 96, minimum puncture resistance of 3,200 grams and minimum thickness of 15 mils. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive, mastic and pressure-sensitive tape for thoroughly sealing membrane.
   1. Products: Provide one of the following:
      a. Barrier-Bac: VB-350.
      b. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15.
      c. Insulation Solutions, Inc.; Viper VaporCheck II 15 Mil.
      d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Perminator 15 mil.
      e. Poly-America; Husky Yellow Guard, 15 Mil.
      f. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 15.
      g. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn 15 mil Green.
      h. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil.
      i. Tex-Trude, LP: Xtreme Vapor Barrier, 15 mil.
      j. Option: Tremco, Paraseal LG 40.

2.7 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
D. Water: Potable.
E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B (except where not recommended by floor covering manufacturer).
F. Sealer for Exposed Concrete Slabs: See Division 09 Section “Interior Painting”.

2.8 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1752, Type I (sponge rubber).
B. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
C. Epoxy Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Shore A hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
D. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
E. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
   1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
F. Epoxy Adhesive for Threaded Rod Anchoring and Rebar Doweling: ASTM C 881, installed per manufacturer’s written instructions.
   1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hilti HIT-RE 500 or Hilti HY 150.
      b. Simpson SET Epoxy-Tie.
      c. Redhead Epcon G5 High Strength Epoxy.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301 and ACI 211.1.
   1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
B. Cementitious Materials: For concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements.
C. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
   1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
   2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 25 percent.
   3. Combined Fly Ash and GGBFS: 33 percent of portland cementitious material maximum.
D. Air Content: Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer’s prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content of 3 to 6 percent, except as otherwise indicated (if the concrete is exposed, the requirements of ACI 318-11, Table 4.4.1 will apply):
   1. Do not air-entrain concrete to trowel-finished interior floors and suspended slabs. Do not allow entrapped air content to exceed 3 percent.
E. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

F. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Use water-reducing or high-range water-reducing (superplasticizer) admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
   2. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (The following are minimum properties – if a higher strength is specified on the plans, then the higher strength will control.)

A. Footings and Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
   2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: .55.
   3. Slump Limit: 5 inches (125 mm).

B. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
   2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: .50.
   3. Slump Limit: 5 inches (125 mm).

C. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
   2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: .50.
   3. Slump Limit: 5 inches (125 mm).

D. Building Frame Members: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
   2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: .50.
   3. Slump Limit: 5 inches (125 mm).

2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
   1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
   1. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm).

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
   1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
   2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

1. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.

B. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved **at least 70 percent of** its 28-day design compressive strength.

C. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

D. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Prior to placement of wire reinforcing for concrete slabs, completely cover porous fill with specified sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturers' recommended tape.
2. Seal all penetrations.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

B. Do not puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal before placing concrete.

C. Clean reinforcement of loose rust, scale, earth, ice, and other materials.

D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.

E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

F. Install wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.6 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
2. Form keyed joints from pre-formed galvanized steel, plastic keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
6. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Before placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified or as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depths to not exceed 24 inches (600 mm) and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic, to avoid cold joints.
2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg. F (10 deg. C) and not more than 80 deg. F (27 deg. C) at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
4. Concrete exposed to freezing temperatures shall be protected for a minimum period of curing as recommended by the PCA's Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures.

F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 305R and as follows:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceeding ACI 347R limits for class of surface specified.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed 1/8 inch in height..

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering applied directly to concrete such as waterproofing, dampproofing or paint.

C. Rubbed Finish: Apply to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.

C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
   a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
   b. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.

D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated and where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method or where resinous flooring is to be installed. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.10 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with work in-place. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

3.11 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 and 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.

c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

a. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project. Do not apply curing compound if not recommended by the floor covering manufacturer.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

4. Curing and Sealing Compound for slabs scheduled to be left exposed: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.12 JOINT FILLING

A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least six months. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch (19 mm). Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.

2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.

3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.

4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose

steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.

7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect/Engineer's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.

F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect/Engineer's approval.

3.14 MOISTURE TESTING AND CONTROL

A. General Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for measuring and documenting relative humidity within the floor slabs according to ASTM F2170-09 using a moisture probe inserted to a depth of 40 percent of the slab thickness as soon as the building has been closed in and as soon as the slab temperature is brought to between 65 and 75 deg. F. Copies of all moisture level reports shall be sent to the Owner and Architect. The General Contractor/Construction Manager shall utilize portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment, as necessary, to reduce the moisture content of the slab, as measured with a moisture meter, to 3 lbs./24 hrs./1000 s.f. of floor area or to the level required by the various flooring manufacturers, before installation of floor finishes.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified, independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests and submit test reports during concrete placement according to requirements specified in this Article. Testing and inspecting services will be paid for by the Owner; General Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for coordinating and insuring that the Testing Agency is on site to perform the required tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency shall coordinate activities with the Architect/Engineer’s representative on the scope of Work required to satisfy Chapter 17, IBC 2006, Structural Tests and Special Inspections.

C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
   a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete**;** one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days.
   a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect/Engineer. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect/Engineer. Expenses for additional testing and remedial work shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor/Construction Manager.
11. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

D. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) within 48 hours of finishing.

**END OF SECTION 03 30 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes polished concrete finishing, including staining.

1. Concrete for polished concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, initial finishing, and curing is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete not designated as polished concrete.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with polished concrete to attend, including the following:

a. Contractor's superintendent.

b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.

c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.

d. Cast-in-place concrete subcontractor.

e. Polished concrete finishing Subcontractor.

2. Review cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction joints, concrete repair procedures, concrete finishing, and protection of polished concrete.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Polishing Schedule: Submit plan showing polished concrete surfaces and schedule of polishing operations for each area of polished concrete before start of polishing operations. Include locations of all joints, including construction joints.

C. Samples: For each type of product requiring color selection, provide Manufacturer’s color charts for stain color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Field Sample Panels: After approval of verification sample and before casting concrete, produce field sample panels to demonstrate the approved range of selections made under Sample submittals. Produce a minimum of three sets of full-scale panels, approximately 48 by 48 inches (1200 by 1200 mm) minimum, to demonstrate the expected range of finish, color, and appearance variations.

1. Locate panels as directed by Architect.

2. Maintain field sample panels during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.

3. Demolish and remove field sample panels when polished concrete is complete.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STAIN MATERIALS

A. Reactive Stain: Acidic-based stain with wetting agents and high-grade, UV-stable metallic salts that react with calcium hydroxide in cured concrete to produce permanent, variegated, or translucent color effects.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Artcrete, Inc.
   b. Bomanite Co.
   c. Epmar Corporation; Quaker Chemical company.
   d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
   e. H&C® Decorative Concrete Products; a brand of Sherwin-Williams Co.
   f. Scofield, L. M. Company.
   g. Specialty Concrete Products, Inc.
   h. SureCrete Design Products.

2.2 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ARDEX Americas.
   b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
   c. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
   d. MAPEI Corporation.
   e. PROSOCO, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POLISHING

A. Polish: Level 3: High sheen, 800 grit.

B. Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match accepted mockup.

1. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match approved mockup.
2. Apply reactive stain for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
4. Apply penetrating stain for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Continue polishing with progressively finer-grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level, to match approved mockup.
6. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
7. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.

3.2 STAINING

A. Newly placed concrete shall be cured for at least the number of days required by the stain manufacturer.

B. Prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Clean concrete thoroughly by scraping, applying solvents or stripping agents, sweeping and pressure washing, or scrubbing with a rotary floor machine and detergents recommended by stain manufacturer. Rinse until water is clear and allow surface to dry.
   a. Do not use acidic solutions to clean surfaces.

2. Test surfaces with droplets of water. If water beads and does not penetrate surface, or penetrates only in some areas, profile surfaces by grinding, sanding, or abrasive blasting. Retest and continue profiling surface until water droplets immediately darken and uniformly penetrate concrete surfaces.

C. Allow concrete surface to dry before applying stain. Verify readiness of concrete to receive stain according to ASTM D 4263 by tightly taping 18-by-18-inch (450-by-450-mm), 4-mil-(0.1-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet to a representative area of concrete surface. Apply stain only if no evidence of moisture has accumulated under sheet after 16 hours.

D. Reactive Stain: Apply reactive stain to concrete surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Apply stain by uncolored bristle brush, roller, or high-volume, low-pressure sprayer and immediately scrub into concrete surface with uncolored, acid-resistant nylon-bristle brushes in continuous, circular motion. Do not spread stain after fizzing stops. Allow to dry four hours and repeat application of stain in sufficient quantity to obtain color consistent with approved mockup.
2. Remove stain residue after four hours by wet scrubbing with commercial-grade detergent recommended by stain manufacturer. Rinse until water is clear. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.

END OF SECTION 033543

01-697-027

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Decorative concrete masonry units.
3. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.
4. Face brick [(fired and non-fired)].
5. Mortar and grout.
6. Steel reinforcing bars.
7. Masonry joint reinforcement.
8. Ties and anchors.
9. Embedded flashing.
10. Miscellaneous masonry accessories including cavity drainage material.
11. Masonry Cleaners.
12. Masonry Stains.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 01 41 00 “Structural Tests and Special Inspections”.
2. Section 04 23 00 "Glass Unit Masonry" for glass block.
3. Section 04 72 00 "Cast Stone Masonry" for furnishing cast stone trim.
4. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.
5. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel lintels and shelf angles.
6. Section 07 19 00 "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry.
7. Section 07 21 00 “Thermal Insulation” for cavity insulation.
8. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing.
9. Section 08 95 16 "Wall Vents" for wall vents (brick vents).
10. Section 32 14 00 "Unit Paving" for exterior unit masonry paving.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including imbedded flashing, submit manufacturer’s technical literature, specifications and application instructions.

B. Samples for Initial Selection:
1. Submit actual samples for each type of face brick units, stone trim and decorative concrete masonry units. Provide face brick samples in sufficient quantity to demonstrate full range of color, texture and blend.
2. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Exterior Color Schedule and Interior Color Schedule and Color Board.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For applicator of brick stains and water repellents.

B. Material Certificates: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of the following for each type and size of the following:
1. Brick: Size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
2. Exposed Brick: Test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
3. For masonry units: Data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
4. Mortar complying with property requirements of ASTM C 270.
5. Grout mixes complying with compressive strength requirements of ASTM C 476.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing and Inspections: Testing and inspecting of masonry will be conducted to satisfy the requirements of Chapter 17, IBC 2006, Structural Tests and Special Inspections.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction , qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329. Testing Agency services will be paid for by the Owner, with Contractor/Construction Manager having responsibility for coordinating and insuring that the Testing Agency is on site to perform the required testing and inspections as required by the Owner
1. Duties and responsibilities of the Testing Agency
a. Coordinate with Architect’s representative on the scope of the work required.
b. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from requirements.
c. Conform with the testing, inspecting and reporting requirements in the Schedule of Special Inspections.

C. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

D. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

E. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

F. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.

1. Build sample panels for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) long by 48 inches (1200 mm) high by full thickness.
2. Where masonry is to match existing, erect panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
3. Clean exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store masonry accessories to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: Cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.

C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
   2. Provide bullnose units for all outside corners for the full height of the wall or opening in the wall.

B. Integral Water Repellent: Where units are exposed directly to weather and where indicated, provide units made with integral water repellent.
   1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E 514 as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
      a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
         1) ACM Chemistries; RainBloc.
         2) BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Plus.
         3) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block or Block Plus W-10.

C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
   1. Density Classification: L**ightweight** only**.** Normal weight block **are not** acceptable.
   2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions shown.
   3. Exposed Faces: Provide manufacturer’s standard color and texture.

D. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.
   1. Density Classification: Normal weight.
   2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions shown.
   3. Pattern and Texture:
      a. Standard pattern, ground-face finish.
   4. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   5. Integral Water Repellent: Where units are exposed directly to weather, provide units made with integral water repellent specified above.

E. Pre-faced CMUs: Lightweight hollow and solid (where required) concrete units complying with ASTM C 90, with manufacturer's standard smooth resinous facing complying with ASTM C 744.
   1. Size: Manufactured to dimensions specified in "CMUs" Paragraph but with pre-faced surfaces having 1/16-inch- (1.5-mm) wide returns of facing to create 1/4-inch (6.5-mm) wide mortar joints with modular coursing.
   2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

A. General: Provide one of the following:

B. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than CMUs.

C. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

D. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
   1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
   2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
   3. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.

E. Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216.
   1. Grade: SW.
   2. Type: FBS.
   3. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
   4. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
   5. Surface Coating: When surface-coated brick is specified the colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
   6. Match Existing: Where shown to “match existing” provide face brick matching color range, texture and size of existing adjacent brickwork.

7. Modular Size: (Actual Dimensions): 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) long or 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-5/8 inches (194 mm) long.
8. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**Match existing brick: texture, color, and size – Existing High School Wing A**] for **Type Cherokee, Providencee(51-06-835)** face brick as manufactured pre-approved product by one of the following manufacturers:
   a. Boral Bricks Inc.
   b. Cherokee Brick and Tile Co.
   c. General Shale
   d. Hanson Brick.
   e. Jenkins Brick Co.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91. Use masonry cement for all structures in seismic categories “A”, “B” or “C”. See structural drawings for seismic category.

B. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329. Use mortar cement for all structures in seismic category “D”. See structural drawings for seismic category.

C. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from masonry cement or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
   1. Formulate blend as required to produce color selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
   2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight for mineral oxides nor 1 percent for formulations containing carbon black.

D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
   1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
   2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
   3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
   4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

F. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by masonry mortar manufacturer.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accelguard 80.
      b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
      c. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.

G. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. ACM Chemistries; RainBloc for Mortar.
      b. BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Mortar Admixture.
      c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.

H. Water: Potable.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).

B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
   1. Interior Walls: Mill-galvanized, carbon steel.
   2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
   3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 9 gage; 0.114-inch (2.91-mm)diameter.
   4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 9 gage 0.114-inch (2.91-mm) diameter.
   5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 9 gage 0.114-inch (2.91-mm)diameter.
   6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
   7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m)**,** with prefabricated corner and tee units.

C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

D. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry. Provide one of the following:
   1. Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches (100 mm) wide, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches (100 mm) wide or less.
   2. Tab type, either ladder or truss design, with 1 side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.

3. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm). Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.

2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064 with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating.
   2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold-rolled commercial carbon steel sheet, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dipped Class B coating.

B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches (50 mm) parallel to face of veneer.

C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
   1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- (6.35-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
   2. Tie Section: Triangular wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.

D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
   1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
   2. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a metal anchor section and a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire imbedded in the veneer mortar joint.
      a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
         1) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 213S.
         2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10-X-Seismiclip.
         3) Wire-Bond; RJ-711 with Wire-Bond clip.
   3. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 (4.83-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

A. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.

B. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), galvanized steel sheet.

C. Anchor Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Use for cavity wall flashings, foundation sill flashings, head and sill flashings and through-wall flashings.
   1. Stainless Steel Laminated Fabric Flashing: Type 304 stainless steel with polymeric fabric bonded to one side.
      a. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Multi-Flash SS as manufactured by York Manufacturing, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:
         1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
         2) STS Coatings, Inc.
         3) TK Products, Inc.
   2. Self-Adhering Stainless Steel Laminated Flashing: Type 304 stainless steel core with butyl block co-polymer adhesive on one side.
      a. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide York 304 SS as manufactured by York Manufacturing, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:
         1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
         2) Illinois Products, Inc.
         3) STS Coatings, Inc.
         4) TK Products, Inc.

B. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.

C. Polyether Sealants, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

D. Corners and End Dams: Provide manufacturer's pre-manufactured 26 gauge stainless steel corners and end dams.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color selected by Architect. Use at bottom and top of masonry cavity walls.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #343 Louvered Weep Hole.
   b. Williams Products, Inc.; Williams-Goodco Brick Vent.
   c. Wire-Bond; Louvered Weepholes.

E. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long for use at shelf angles and lintels.

F. Cavity Drainage Material: Strips of free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity and that extend full-depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) high designed to catch mortar droppings and to prevent weep holds from clogging with mortar.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
   b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat MD.
   c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
   d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
   e. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Mortar Web.

G. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
   b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
   c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
   d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.

2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
   b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
   c. ProSoCo, Inc.

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellents or antifreeze compounds unless otherwise indicated.

1. **Do not** use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
2. Use masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.

B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.

1. For all concrete masonry, use natural grey Type S mortar.
2. For all brick masonry, use natural grey or premixed, pigmented Type N.

C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.

1. Use grout of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (203 to 279 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Thickness: Build masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.

B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.

C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

D. Select and arrange units to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.

E. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.

F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

G. **Do not** wet concrete masonry units.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch (12 mm).
3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/8 inch (3.0 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm).
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm). Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
4. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in **bond pattern indicated on Drawings**; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; **do not tooth**. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar before laying fresh masonry.

E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.

1. Lay-up all outside corners using bullnose units for the full height of the wall or opening in the wall.

J. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 07 84 46 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:

1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Lay solid masonry units, including fired and non-fired face brick, with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.

D. Tool exposed joints **slightly concave** when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 CAVITY WALLS

A. Masonry Joint Reinforcement Installed in Horizontal Mortar Joints: Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.

B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. **Do not** attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.

C. Where indicated, coat face of backup wythe to comply with Section 07 11 13 "Bituminous Dampproofing."

D. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Apply spray polyurethane foam insulation to face of backup wythe complying with Section 07 21 00 “Thermal Insulation” and as detailed on the Drawings.

3.7 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in and parapet walls.
3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units. Where walls are intersecting at other than 90 degrees, as an option to prefabricated T-shaped units, provide galvanized steel strap ties, 1/8” x 1.5” wide x 2” lip each end x 16” long. Space ties at 24” on center, vertical.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units. At corners other than 90 degrees, provide galvanized steel strap ties, 1/8” x 1.5 wide x 2” lip each end x 8” long. Space ties at 24” on center, vertical.

3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete to comply with the following:

1. Provide control and expansion joints wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete as indicated on the drawings. Keep expansion joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.

3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry where indicated as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.

C. Form expansion joints in brick, form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry by inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm).

3.10 LINTELS

A. Install lintels of types and sizes indicated and with a minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS

A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, below copings, above counter flashings where roofs die into walls other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated. Install weep vents at both bottom and at top of cavity walls where indicated to equalize pressure.

B. Install flashings as follows:

1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm), and 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into the inner wythe.
3. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches (200 mm); with upper edge tucked under building paper or building wrap, lapping at least 4 inches (100 mm).
4. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.
5. Lap discontinuous flashing sections a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) and seal laps with self-adhering flashing.
6. Where indicated, install metal drip edges beneath flexible thru-wall flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge. Where no drip edge is shown, cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after after masonry wall construction is completed.
7. Where flexible thru-wall flashings transition to counterflashings and base flashings, install metal counterflash beneath thru-wall flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible thru-wall flashing ½ inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal counterflashing.
8. Where thru-wall flashing steps down along a roof slope and transitions to metal counterflashing creating discontinuous sections of flashing, overlap flashing sections at least 6 inches (152 mm) and turn the ends of the flashing up at least 2 inches (50 mm) in head joints to form end dams. Install counterflashings as described above.
9. Under metal coping caps, install thru-wall flashing over wood blocking at top of wall and turn down on both inside and outside face of the wall ½ inch past blocking.
10. End Dams: Fold ends of flashing at ends of openings to form end dams, seal with polyether sealant or use flashing manufacturer’s pre-formed end dams.
11. Inside and Outside Corners: Field form according to accepted industry standards using corner and splice material or use flashing manufacturer’s pre-formed end dams.
12. Cover and protect flashings from damage immediately after installation and until masonry installation is complete. **Do not** allow flashings to become damaged. If damage occurs, contact flashing manufacturer for repair instructions.

C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

D. After installation of spray polyurethane foam insulation, place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

E. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and at top of cavity walls using T-shaped weep/vent products 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. In soldier courses above openings only, use round plastic weep holes; at all other locations use T-shaped vented weep/vents.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Structural Testing and Special Inspections: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform Structural Tests and Special Inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels. **Do not** use metal tools to clean brick.
2. Clean brick using the bucket-and-brush hand cleaning method or the pressurized water cleaning method as described in BIA Technical Notes No. 20, using specified cleaning solution. **Do not** use site-mixed acid solutions, use only specified pre-mixed cleaning solutions. **Do not** use pressurized equipment on sand finish or surfaced brick.
3. Schedule cleaning as soon as possible after masonry hardens, usually 7 days. Longer periods before cleaning could result in more aggressive methods being required.
4. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel. Mix and dilute cleaning compounds according to manufacturer’s written instructions.
5. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner. Cleaning solutions contain acid that could damage adjacent surfaces.
6. Saturate wall surfaces with water **before** applying cleaners; apply cleaners using hand held sprayers with pressures less than 50 psi. **Do not** apply cleaners using higher pressure equipment. Remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water. **Do not** allow cleaning solutions to dry on brick.
7. Clean brick from top of wall to bottom. Use stiff fiber brushes, wooden paddles or other non-metallic tools to clean brick. **Do** not use metal scrapers or other metal tools. If pressurized equipment is used, use equipment with less than 300 psi and with a 35 to 45 degree fan tip.
8. Flush walls with large amounts of clean water from top to bottom.
9. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.14 MOISTURE TESTING

A. After concrete masonry installation is complete and the building is enclosed, measure and document the moisture content of interior concrete block walls at not less than six (6) locations in each building, wing or floor level with a moisture meter.

1. Compare readings with readings taken from identical concrete block that have been stored in the project trailer and away from exposure to moisture.
2. Provide portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment to lower the moisture content of the installed concrete block to match the moisture content of the stored block.
3. Provide the Architect with copies of all reports documenting concrete block moisture levels.

3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

**END OF SECTION 04 20 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes Cast Stone Trim and Components Including:
   1. Window and door sills, lintels, pilasters and surrounds.
   2. Copings and caps.
   3. Belt courses and water tables.
   4. Column base, covers and capitals.
   5. Quoins and Medallions.
   6. Cast stone steps.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 03 45 00 "Precast Architectural Concrete."
   2. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installing cast stone units in unit masonry.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data for Stock Units: For each type of product indicated include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings for Custom Made Units: Show fabrication and installation details including dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages and indication of finished faces.
   1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

C. Samples: For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches (250 mm) square in size.
   1. Colored joint sealant: Manufacturer's standard color chart showing full range of colors.
   2. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Exterior Color Schedule.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute.

B. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through single source from single manufacturer.

C. Mockups: Furnish cast stone for installation in mockups where mockups are specified in Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
   1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
   2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST STONE MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:

B. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

C. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

D. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

E. Admixtures:
   1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
   3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
   4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   5. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   6. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.

F. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420). Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of cast stone material.
   1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.

2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767/A 767M.

G. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts where Required: Fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M, and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

2.2 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advanced Cast Stone, Inc.
2. Architectural Cast Stone Corp. Inc.
3. Architectural Ornamental Castings of Valdosta, Inc.
4. Bamastone Corporation.
5. Bassco Caststone.
6. Castone Corporation.
7. Cast Stone Systems, Inc.
8. Continental Cast Stone Manufacturing.
9. Custom Cast Stone.
10. MarcStone, LLC.
11. Stonco.
12. Stone Legends Div., C.S.C.S., Inc.

B. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using either the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.

C. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fabrication Tolerances:
1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch (3 mm), whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch (6 mm).
3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch (3 mm), whichever is greater.
4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch (10 mm) on unformed surfaces.

E. Cure units as follows:
1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) for 12 hours or 70 deg F (21 deg C) for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C) or above.
b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F (16 deg C) or above.
c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F (10 deg C) or above.
d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C) or above.

F. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

G. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M, and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

B. Dowels: 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) diameter, round bars, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M, and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

C. Joint Sealants: In cast stone column covers, seal joints with one-part, texturized, moisture-curing polyurethane sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25.

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry."

B. Set units accurately where indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.

2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.

C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.

D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints.

E. Provide sealant joints at copings and other horizontal surfaces, at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints, column covers and at other locations indicated.

1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
3. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
4. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.

B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.

1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.

D. Final Cleaning: Clean cast stone as specified in Section 04 20 00 “Unit Masonry”.

**END OF SECTION 04 72 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications, and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
4. Section 05 51 00 "Metal Stairs."
5. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for surface-preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel (AESS): Structural steel that is exposed to view.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360
2. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.

B. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.

C. Construction: Combined system of moment frame, braced frame, and shear walls.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.

E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
2. Direct-tension indicators.
3. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
4. Shear stud connectors.
5. Shop primers.
6. Nonshrink grout.

F. Source quality-control reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD, or a fabricator with a minimum of 10 years of experience in fabricating structural steel similar to that indicated for this project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE, or an installer with a minimum of 10 years of experience in installing structural steel similar to that indicated for this project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement (**P1, P2,** or **P3)** or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.

E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC 303.
2. AISC 360.
3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site**.**

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.

1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M

B. Channels, Angles**,** M, or S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

D. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50 (345).

E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade **B**, structural tubing.

F. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.

G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Weight Class: Standard, or as noted on plans**.**
2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.

H. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.

I. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.

J. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with plain finish.

B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain

C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.

D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36

1. Configuration: Straight.

2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish: Plain

E. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Plain.

F. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: **ASTM F 436** (ASTM F 436M)**,** Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

G. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.

H. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

I. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut**,** or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning

F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.

H. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

I. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, except use Slip critical for moment connections or where shown on the plans.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
   1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
   2. Surfaces to be field welded.
   3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
   4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
   5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
   1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
   1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
   2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

D. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).

2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
   1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
   2. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles, and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls. In addition, galvanize where indicated on drawings.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
   1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
   2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
   3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
   4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
   1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
   2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
   1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.

B. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, except use Slip critical for moment connections or where indicated on the plans.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.

B. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
   a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
   b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
   c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
   d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting "Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

**END OF SECTION 05 12 00**

SECTION 05 31 00 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Roof deck.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
   2. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
   3. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.
   4. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

C. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
   1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

C. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
2. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
   a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Aluminum-Zinc-Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, AZ50 (AZ150) aluminum-zinc-alloy coating.
4. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib.
5. Cellular Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib, with bottom plate.
6. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
7. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated, or 0.0295 inch min. (0.75 mm).
8. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated.
9. Span Condition: As indicated, or Triple span or more where not indicated.
10. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated, but minimum recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.

H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

I. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M or SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

J. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:
   1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm), nominal.
   2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches (305 mm) apart in the field of roof and 6 inches (150 mm) apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28, or as indicated.
B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 36 inches (914 mm), and as follows:
   1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
   3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) long welds.
C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
   1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum.
D. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
   1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
E. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
   1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

2. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

END OF SECTION 05 31 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cold-formed steel trusses for roofs.
2. Cold-formed steel trusses for floors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 40 00 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for cold-formed steel studs, joists, and rafters.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel trusses; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel trusses.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1. Steel sheet.
2. Expansion anchors.
3. Power-actuated anchors.
4. Mechanical fasteners.
5. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed steel trusses from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Aegis Metal Framing

B. Marino/Ware

C. Trus Steel: an ITW Company

D. USA Frametek

E. WESTCO Steel Systems, Inc.

F. Mitek Industries, Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.

B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.
2. Deflection Limits: Design trusses to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
   a. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on

fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).

C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
1. Floor and Roof Systems: Design according to AISI S210.
2. Lateral Design: Design according to AISI S213.
3. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI S214.

D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL TRUSS MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, structural grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
1. Grade: ST33H (ST230H).
2. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90).

2.4 ROOF TRUSSES

A. Roof Truss Members: Manufacturer's standard steel sections.
1. Connecting Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm), minimum at top and bottom chords connecting to sheathing or other directly fastened construction.
2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.84 mm).

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, structural grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for truss members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts headless bolts, with encased end threaded, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and Appendix D in ACI 318, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

D. Power-Actuated Fasteners: Fastener system of type suitable for application, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.

B. Shims: Load bearing, of high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed steel trusses and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
1. Fabricate trusses using jigs or templates.
2. Cut truss members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold-formed steel truss members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator.
a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel trusses by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace trusses to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated trusses to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting cold-formed steel trusses for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed steel trusses without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that is required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install, bridge, and brace cold-formed steel trusses according to AISI S200, AISI S214, AISI's "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing," and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Install cold-formed steel trusses and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Fasten cold-formed steel trusses by welding or mechanical fasteners.
   a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
   b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings; comply with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

C. Install temporary bracing and supports. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

D. Truss Spacing: As indicated on the plans.

E. Do not alter, cut, or remove framing members or connections of trusses.

F. Erect trusses with plane of truss webs plumb and parallel to each other, align, and accurately position at spacings indicated.

G. Erect trusses without damaging framing members or connections.

H. Coordinate with wall framing to align webs of bottom chords and load-bearing studs or continuously reinforce track to transfer loads to structure. Anchor trusses securely at all bearing points.

I. Install continuous bridging and permanently brace trusses as indicated on Shop Drawings and designed according to CFSEI's TechNote 551e, "Design Guide: Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses."

J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Space individual trusses no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Refer to Schedule of Special Inspections, specification section 01 41 00.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal trusses are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 44 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
2. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Shelf angles.

**Edit the following subparagraph as required for the Project. Retain access gates for applications, particularly exterior locations, where Owner wants to restrict access with a lockable gate.**

6. Ladder safety cages [**and access gates**].
7. Metal ships' ladders.
8. Metal floor plate and supports.
9. Structural-steel door frames.
10. Miscellaneous steel trim including loading-dock edge angles.
11. Metal bollards.
12. Cast or abrasive metal nosings treads and thresholds.
13. Metal downspout boots.
14. Loose bearing and leveling plates if not specified in other Sections.
15. Strut system channel framing.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Related Sections:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing items cast in concrete.
2. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installing items built into unit masonry.
3. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing."
4. Section 05 51 00 "Metal Stairs."
5. Section 05 52 13 "Pipe and Tube Railings."
6. Section 05 53 00 "Metal Gratings."
7. Section 05 73 00 "Decorative Metal Railings."
8. Section 07 72 00 “Roof Accessories.”
9. Section 10 22 13 "Wire Mesh Partitions."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal nosings and treads.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication, erection and installation details for metal fabrications.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
2. Provide templates for anchors and bolts installed under other Sections.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code – Steel Sheet."
3. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces. Where exposed to view, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, pitting or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.

D. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.

E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.

F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

G. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.

1. Properties for spans up to 8 feet: 3 ¼" depth, Ix=0.93in.$^4$, Rx=0.915 in., Iy=0.472 in.$^4$, Ry=0.651 in.
2. Properties for spans from 8 feet to 14 feet: 4 7/8" depth, Ix=2.811 in.$^4$, Rx=1.391 in., Iy=0.669 in.$^4$, Ry=0.679 in.
3. Bridging: 1 5/8" depth, Ix=0.185 in.$^4$, Rx=0.577 in., Iy=0.236 in.$^4$, Ry=0.651 in.
4. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), with G90 (Z275) coating; with flanges returned toward web..

H. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48 Class 30/A 48M Class 200 or malleable iron, ASTM A 47 Grade 32510/A 47M Grade 22010, unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1).

D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).

F. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.

H. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).

I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).

J. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

K. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.

L. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

M. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

N. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, tumble-wing type, class and style as needed.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting," Section 09 91 23 Interior Painting,"and Section 09 96 00 "High-Performance Coatings."

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
E. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
F. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. Finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
I. Allow for thermal movement by preventing buckling, opening up of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects/
J. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
   1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

**Retain steel fabrications described in the following thirteen articles that are required for the Project. Delete all those not required.**

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
   1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
   2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated or as recommended by partition manufacturer with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated or as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in 09 Sections.

2.7 SHELF ANGLES

A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to masonry or concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
   1. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches (50 mm) larger than expansion or control joint.
B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
C. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with primer specified in 09 Sections.
D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

2.8 METAL FLOOR PLATE AND TRENCH FRAMES

A. Fabricate from rolled-aluminum-alloy tread, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) thick with 1/8 inch recess to receive matching floor finish.
B. Provide aluminum angle supports to flush with surrounding floor finish.
C. Include aluminum angle stiffeners, and fixed and removable sections as indicated.
D. Provide plates with vinyl gaskets around perimeter of panels and flush aluminum bar drop handles for lifting removable sections, one at each end of each section.
E. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.
2. Balco Inc.
3. McKinley Iron Works, Inc.
4. MM Systems.

2.9 STRUCTURAL-STEEL COIL-UP DOOR FRAMES
A. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes and sizes indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints.
B. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM
A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
C. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction spaced not more than 6 inches from each end, 6 inches from corners, and 24 inches o c. unless otherwise indicated.

2.11 METAL BOLLARDS
A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
B. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage, where indicated, from steel pipe with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard.

2.12 ABRASIVE METAL NOSINGS TREADS AND THRESHOLDS
A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast aluminum, with an integral-abrasive finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. American Abrasive Metals.
b. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
c. Balco Inc.
d. Barry Pattern & Foundry Co., Inc.
e. Granite State Casting Co.
f. Safe-T-Metal Company, Inc.
g. Wooster Products Inc.
2. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 4 inches (100 mm) wide with 1-inch (25-mm) lip, for casting into concrete steps.
3. Treads: Cross-hatched units, full depth of tread with 3/4-by-3/4-inch (19-by-19-mm) nosing, for application over bent plate treads or existing stairs.
4. Thresholds: Fluted-saddle-type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 1/2 inch (12 mm) high, with tapered edges.
B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
C. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.

2.13 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES
A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

2.14 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS
A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

2.15 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES
A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.16 FINISHES, GENERAL
A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.17 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Shop prime iron and steel items unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.18 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

B. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10, mill finish (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.

C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.

1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

A. Anchor bollards to existing construction with anchor bolts. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches (100 mm) in concrete.

B. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward bollard.

C. Option: Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.

D. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.

E. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch (19-mm) machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner will furnish padlocks.

F. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

G. Option: Fill bollards solidly with concrete and install pre-cast concrete bollard caps.

3.4 INSTALLING NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS

A. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.

B. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.

C. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

3.5 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.

1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.

2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**END OF SECTION 05 50 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 05 73 00 "Decorative Metal Railings" for ornamental railings fabricated from pipes and tubes.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design for Railings Attached to Fabricated Metal Stairs: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:

1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
2. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.

C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
   a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
   b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
   c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
2. Infill of Guards:
   a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
   b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

D. Thermal Movements (exterior): Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal for Railings Attached to Fabricated Metal Stairs: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.

B. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL AND IRON

A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.

B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
   1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
E. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type II (expanded and flattened), Class 1 (uncoated).
   1. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13.
F. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
G. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide the following:
   1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
   2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
   3. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
   1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
   1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
   1. For aluminum railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
D. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
E. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer for Use Where High-Performance Coatings are Required: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
H. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. At exterior locations provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage**,** but not less than that required to support structural loads.
B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.

E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
G. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
H. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
I. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
J. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
K. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
L. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL
A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES
A. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
B. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
C. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
E. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
F. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).

3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).

C. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch buildup, sloped away from post .

C. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:

1. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
2. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

D. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.

B. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets**,** except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.

C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
3. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean aluminum by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 52 13**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 05 73 00 "Decorative Metal Railings" for ornamental railings fabricated from pipes and tubes.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design for Railings Attached to Fabricated Metal Stairs: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:

1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
2. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.

C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
   a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
   b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
   c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
2. Infill of Guards:
   a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
   b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

D. Thermal Movements (exterior): Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal for Railings Attached to Fabricated Metal Stairs: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.

B. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL AND IRON

A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.

B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
   1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
E. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type II (expanded and flattened), Class 1 (uncoated).
   1. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13.
F. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
G. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide the following:
   1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
   2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
   3. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
   1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
   1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
   1. For aluminum railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
D. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
E. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer for Use Where High-Performance Coatings are Required: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
H. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. At exterior locations provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.

E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
G. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
H. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
I. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
J. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
K. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
L. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL
A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES
A. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
B. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
C. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
E. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
F. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).

3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).

C. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch buildup, sloped away from post .

C. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:

1. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
2. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

D. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.

B. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets**,** except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.

C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
3. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean aluminum by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 52 13**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
3. Wood blocking, cants and nailers.
4. Wood furring and grounds.
5. Wood sleepers.
6. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing."
2. Section 06 17 53 "Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses."
3. Section 06 20 13 "Exterior Finish Carpentry" for exposed, nonstructural carpentry items.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.

B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Fire-retardant-treated wood.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664, and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.

C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Application: Treat framing for raised platforms, electrical and telephone backing panels and other items indicated on Drawings.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

A. Framing: Standard or No. 3 grade and the following species:
1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
2. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
3. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including blocking, nailers, equipment bases and support curbs, cants, furring and grounds.

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Standard or No. 3 grade lumber and the following species:
1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
2. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
3. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

C. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

D. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal thickness.

2.7 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C 1002 for non-load bearing framing and ASTM C 954 for cold formed metal framing, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to

4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Material for interior locations: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material for exterior locations: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

B. Flexible Flashing for Separating Treated Wood from Metal Decking: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds**,** and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

C. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view. Coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.

E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

F. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

G. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

H. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.

3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER**,** BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 06 10 53**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall and soffit sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 53 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Section 07 25 00 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For following products, from ICC-ES:

1. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies indicated to have fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

2.2 WALL SHEATHING

A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
   b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
   c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond e(2)XP.
   d. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
   e. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock Glass-Mat Sheathing.
2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Type and Thickness for Fire Rated Conditions: Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

1. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

F. Screws for Fastening Glass Mat Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

1. For non-load bearing steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For cold-formed steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

G. Screws for Fastening Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

2.4 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.

1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch (390 by 390 or 390 by 780 threads/m), of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."

D. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GLASS MAT GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.

C. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Glass Mat Wall Sheathing: Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
2. Glass Mat Soffit Sheathing: Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and set in joint compound recommended by sheathing manufacturer. Apply skim coat of joint compound over entire panel surface to obtain a Level 3 finish.

**END OF SECTION 06 16 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Architectural wood cabinets.
2. Shop finishing of architectural wood cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking and shims.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product**,** including panel products, cabinet hardware and accessories and finishing materials and processes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
1. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for electrical switches and outlets and other items installed in architectural wood cabinets.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures and patterns available.
1. Shop-applied transparent and/or opaque finishes.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork, construction, finishes and other requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If cabinets must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period through Substantial Completion. If necessary, provide portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment to meet required temperature and relative humidity conditions.

B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wood-veneer-faced architectural cabinets can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. Hardware Coordination: When cabinets are scheduled to receive door hardware, distribute copies of approved hardware schedule to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD CABINETS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Grade: [Custom].

B. Type of Construction: **Face frame**.

C. Cabinet and Door and Drawer Front Interface Style: **Reveal overlay**]

D. Reveal Dimension: [**1/2 inch** (13 mm)].

E. Wood for Exposed Surfaces:
1. Species and Cut: **Red oak, rift cut/rift sawn**.
2. Grain Direction: **Vertically for doors and fixed panels, horizontally for drawer fronts**.
3. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Slip match.

F. Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:
1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Same species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
2. Drawer Subfronts, Backs, and Sides: Solid-hardwood lumber.
3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.

G. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
   1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.

B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
   2. Exterior Grade Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, A-C, Group 1.
   3. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.

2.3 SOLID-SURFACE-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ANSI SS1.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Avonite Surfaces.
      b. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.
      c. Formica Corporation.
      d. LG Chemical, Ltd.
      e. Meganite Inc.
      f. Samsung Chemical USA, Inc.
      g. Swan Corporation (The).
      h. Transolid, Inc.
      i. Wilsonart International.
   2. Type: Provide Standard Type unless Special Purpose Type is indicated.

B. Configuration: Provide countertops with the following front and backsplash style:
   1. Front Edge: **Straight, slightly eased at top**.
   2. Backsplash: **Straight, slightly eased at corner**.
   3. Endsplash: **Matching backsplash**.

C. Countertops: **1/2-inch-** (12.7-mm-) thick, solid surface material.

D. Backsplashes: **1/2-inch-** (12.7-mm-) thick, solid surface material.

E. Fabrication: Fabricate tops in one piece with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surface-material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing. Sand and buff to the sheen level indicated below.
   1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.

F. Sheen: **Matte**.

2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. Hinges for Face Frame Construction: Fully adjustable, concealed steel hinges complying with BHMA A156.9 with either press-in or screw-in attachment to door, **110** degrees of opening and of the following type:
   1. Overlay Doors: Concealed wrap around face frame mounted with hinge overlay dimension required to achieve specified reveal requirements.
   2. Rabbeted/Overlay Doors: Concealed 3/8 inch inset hinges.
   3. Flush Inset Doors: Concealed full inset hinges.

B. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.

C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches (100 mm) long, 5/16 inch (8 mm) in diameter.

D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.

E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.

F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.

G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
   1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel with polymer rollers.
   2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
   3. For drawers not more than 3 inches (75 mm) high and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) wide, provide Grade 2, 30 lb. capacity.
   4. For drawers more than 3 inches (75 mm) high but not more than 6 inches (150 mm) high and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) wide, provide Grade 1, 50 lb. capacity.
   5. For drawers more than 6 inches (150 mm) high or more than 24 inches (600 mm) wide, provide Grade 1HD-100, 100 lb. capacity.
   6. For computer keyboard shelves, provide Grade 1, 50 lb. capacity.

7. For trash bins not more than 20 inches (500 mm) high and 16 inches (400 mm) wide, provide Grade 1HD-200,200 lb. capacity.

H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.

I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

J. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.

K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.

1. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 626 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 652 for steel base.

L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

B. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: **1-1/4-inch** (32-mm) OD, b**lack**, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contractor’s option and as required for project conditions and laminates specified.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

B. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges at cabinet corners to radius of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

D. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

E. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" and in GANA's "Glazing Manual." For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

A. General: Finish architectural wood cabinets at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural wood cabinets, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of cabinets.

C. Transparent Finish:

1. Grade: Same as item to be finished.
2. Finish: System - 12, water-based polyurethane.
3. Wash Coat for Closed-Grain Woods: Apply wash-coat sealer to cabinets made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
4. Staining: Match approved sample for color.
5. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining, apply wash-coat sealer and allow to dry**.** Apply paste wood filler and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
6. Sheen: [**Flat, 15-30**] gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition cabinets to prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.

B. Before installing cabinets, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.

B. Install cabinets level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

C. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish.

D. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.

E. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
   1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
   2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c
F. Plastic Laminate Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
   1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow or other variation from a straight line.
   2. Where backsplashes are shown, scribe and remove material to match profile of wall surface. Where loose backsplashes are shown, secure to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
   3. Caulk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section “Joint Sealants”.
G. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are applied in shop.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

**END OF SECTION 06 41 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass-fiber blanket insulation including sound attenuation blankets.
2. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
3. Self-adhering sheet air barrier.
4. Spray polyurethane foam insulation.
5. 15 minute thermal barrier.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 84 46 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for insulation installed as part of a perimeter fire-resistive joint system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. CertainTeed Corporation.
2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
3. Johns Manville.
4. Knauf Insulation.
5. Owens Corning.

B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.2 SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM INSULATION

A. Closed-Cell Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Bayer Materialscience, LLC.
   b. BASF Corporation.
   c. Burton Polymer Laboratories.
   d. Demilec USA, LLC.
   e. Dow Chemical Company (The).
   f. ERSystems, Inc.
   g. Henry Company.
   h. Icynene Inc.
   i. Johns Manville.
   j. SWD Urethane Company.
   k. Volatile Free, Inc.
2. Contractor Option: Demilec USA: Heatlok Soy 200 Plus.
3. Minimum density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 6.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (43 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
4. Minimum R-Value: 6.2 per inch.

B. Thermal Barrier: Brush, spray or roller applied thermal insulation that has been tested and approved to provide a 15 minute thermal barrier over spray polyurethane foam insulation as required by the IBC.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
   a. International Cellulose Corp.; Ure-k Spray Coating.
   b. International Fireproof Technology Inc.; DC315.
   c. J & R Products; Fireshell TB-015.

2.3 SELF-ADHERING SHEET AIR BARRIER

A. Modified Bituminous Sheet: 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 36 mils (0.9 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick, cross-laminated polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.; CCW-705.
      b. Grace, W. R. & Co. - Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Membrane.
      c. Henry Company; Blueskin SA or Blueskin SA LT.
      d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; SealTight Air-Shield.
      e. Tremco Incorporated, an RPM company; ExoAir 110/110LT.
   2. Physical and Performance Properties:
      a. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. (0.02 L/s x sq. m of surface area at 75-Pa) pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
      b. Tensile Strength: Minimum 250 psi (1.7 MPa); ASTM D 412, Die C.
      c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum 200 percent; ASTM D 412, Die C.
      d. Puncture Resistance: Minimum 40 lbf (180 N); ASTM E 154.
      e. Water Absorption: Maximum 0.15 percent weight gain after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F (21 deg C); ASTM D 570.
      f. Vapor Permeance: Maximum 0.05 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96/E 96M, Water Method.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation or that interfere with insulation attachment.
B. Remove mortar fins from concrete block joints where self-adhered sheet air barriers are shown to be installed.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.
E. Water Line Location: Where water piping is located on inside of insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and that insulation encapsulates piping.
F. Tape and seal all joints in foam board insulation installations.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Air Barrier: Prior to installation of spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation, install self-adhering sheet air barrier over column faces, control joints, expansion joints, at junction of concrete block and steel beams, at roof edges and at other locations shown on the Drawings. Prime surfaces as required by manufacturer and comply with manufacturer’s written installation instruction.
B. Spray-Applied Polyurethane Foam Insulation: Apply spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply in one or more passes to achieve uniform thickness indicated on the Drawings. Coat entire surface indicated to receive foam insulation to seal all cracks and openings that could allow passage of air. Seal around masonry ties leaving hooks exposed for attachment of brick reinforcement.
   1. Do not expose polyurethane foam insulation to exposed flame such as welding and cutting torches.
   2. Whether or not specifically shown, do not allow spray foam insulation to be exposed to the finished interior of the building. Provide a fifteen minute thermal barrier between foam insulation and building interior.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Seal joints between units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

C. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
   1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
   2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
   3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
   4.
   5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

D. Spray-Applied Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

E. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
   1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).
   2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

A. Where glass-fiber blankets are indicated for sound attenuation above ceilings, install blanket insulation over entire ceiling area in thicknesses indicated. Extend insulation 48 inches (1219 mm) up either side of partitions.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

**END OF SECTION 07 21 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 42 17 "Metal Soffit Panels" for horizontal soffits.
2. Section 07 72 53 "Snow Guards" for prefabricated snow holding devices.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include product specifications, construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.

1. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit color charts or chips showing Manufacturer’s full range of standard colors, except metallic, for each type of panel, accessory and trim indicated.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Exterior Color Schedule.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Inspection Reports: From certified third party inspector.

C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Third Party Inspections: Employ a manufacturer approved and certified independent third party inspection firm to inspect the installation as required by the roofing manufacturer but not less than at start-up, at mid-point of installation and at completion of installation and to provide a Certificate of Compliance for each inspection. For installations exceeding 50,000 sq. ft. of roof area per building, the third party inspector shall provide an additional inspection for every 25,000 sq. ft. over the minimum 50,000 sq. ft. requirement. The inspection firm shall also certify that the roof system is approved to receive a manufacturer’s 20 year, no dollar limit warranty with no exclusions. All third party inspection reports shall be distributed to the Owner, Architect and General Contractor/Construction Manager.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by the manufacturer, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: **Two** years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Panel Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty form, signed by the manufacturer, in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.

b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.

c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by the manufacturer, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels that are listed on the EPA/DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Product List" for low and/or steep-slope roof products as indicated on the Drawings.

B. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels with an aged Solar Reflectance Index of not less than 0.64 when tested according to CRRC-1.

C. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:

1. Live Loads: Provide roof panel assemblies that can safely support 20 psf of live load for the spans indicated on the Drawings. Where panels are subjected to snow drifting of sliding snow from adjacent buildings, panels must be able to safely support these loads.

2. Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings for corner, perimeter and field zones per IBC and ASCE 7.

3. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

D. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 1680 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

E. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.

1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.

B. Vertical-Rib, Seamed-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: For sloped or curved installations, provide panels formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AEP Span; a BlueScope Steel company.

b. Architectural Metal Systems; a Nucor company.

c. ATAS International, Inc.

d. Berridge Manufacturing Company.

e. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.

f. Dimensional Metals, Inc.

g. Englert, Inc.

h. Fabral.

i. Firestone Metal Products, LLC.

j. Garland Company, Inc. (The)

k. IMETCO.

l. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.

m. McElroy Metal, Inc.
n. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
o. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
p. PMRS Inc.

2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm).
   b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
   c. Color: Match existing roof: texture, color, and size – Existing High School Wing A .
3. Clips: Manufacturer's standard one-piece fixed or two-piece floating to accommodate thermal movement.
   a. Material: 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
4. Joint Type: Manufacturer's standard single or double folded joint.
5. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
   2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
   3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
      b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Grace Ice and Water Shield HT.
      c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
      d. Kirsch Building Products, LLC; Sharkskin Ultra SA.
      e. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
      f. Mid-States Asphalt; Quik-Stick HT.
      g. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

B. Slip Sheet: If recommended by roofing or underlayment manufacturer, provide recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized) coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, gutters, downspout,s sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
   2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
   3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match roof fascia and rake trim.

E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate 4 inch by 6 inch downspouts in 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.

F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, 0.048-inch (1.2-mm) nominal thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of 0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.

1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.

G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.

H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Steel Sheet Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
   a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:

1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
   a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment for Roof Areas Over Unconditioned Spaces: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

1. Apply over the roof area indicated below:
   a. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 36 inches (914 mm) beyond interior wall line.
   b. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches (460 mm). Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches (152 mm).
   c. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches (460 mm).
   d. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches (305 mm).
   e. Roof-to-wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches (460 mm).
   f. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches (460 mm).

B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated below, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

1. Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap over edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm), in shingle fashion to shed water.

C. Slip Sheet: Where recommended by roofing or underlayment manufacturer, apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.

D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
2. Stainless-Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.

C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.

F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1524 mm) o.c. in between.

1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.

J. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.

K. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Third Party Inspection Service: Engage a certified third party inspector to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 41 13.16**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 42 13.53 "Metal Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Penetrations: Include elevations, drawn to scale, with all panel penetrations and wall-mounted items shown and located. Show panels and attachments; girts and stud framing; all wall penetrations and wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, light fixtures, pipe penetrations, conduit penetrations and vents.
3. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes, provide manufacturer’s color samples showing full range of colors available.

1. Include Samples of trim, sealants and accessories involving color selection.
2. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Exterior Finish Schedule.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Mockups: When requested by Owner or Architect, build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly, including corner, supports, attachments, and accessories.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
   b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.

b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.

c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period for Fluoropolymer Coatings: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than **1/240** of the span.

4. <Insert serviceability requirements>.

B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

A. General: Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

B. Reveal-Joint, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with narrow reveal joint between panels.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ATAS International, Inc.

b. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.

c. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.

d. Morin; a Kingspan Group company.

e. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.

2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

a. Nominal Thickness: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)**.

b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.

c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

3. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).

4. Panel Height: **1.5 inches (38 mm)**.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized) coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.

E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
   a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
   1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
      a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
   2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
   3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
   4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
   5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
   6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
   7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
   8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:
   1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
   4. Stainless-Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
   2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
   3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
   4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
   5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.

E. Watertight Installation:
   1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
   2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
   3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch (152-mm) end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Metal Liner Panels: Install panels on interior side of structural supports with flush appearance on the inside.

G. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

H. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
   1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.
   2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect’s representative for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.

C. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.

C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13.13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes metal soffit panels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 41 13 "Formed Metal Roof Panels" for lap-seam metal roof panels.
2. Section 07 42 13 "Formed Metal Wall Panels" for lap-seam metal wall panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit color charts or chips showing Manufacturer's full range of colors for each type of panel, accessory and trim indicated.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Exterior Color Schedule.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
   b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period: **Two** years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
   a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
   b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
   c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings for corner, perimeter and field zones per IBC and ASCE 7.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

A. General: Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

B. Material and Finish: **[Match material, finish and color of metal roof panels**.

1. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

C. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: **Solid** panels formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AEP Span; a BlueScope Steel company.
   b. Architectural Building Components.
   c. ATAS International, Inc.
   d. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
   e. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
   f. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
   g. Englert, Inc.
   h. Fabral.
   i. Firestone Metal Products, LLC.
   j. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
   k. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
   l. McElroy Metal, Inc.
   m. Merchant & Evans Inc.
   n. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
   o. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
   p. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
   q. Ultra Seam, Inc.
2. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal **roof** panels.
3. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Nominal Thickness: **0.028 inch** (0.71 mm).
   b. Exterior Finish: **Two-coat fluoropolymer**.
   c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Panel Coverage: **12 inches** (305 mm).
5. Panel Height: **1.0 inch** (25 mm).

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized) coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.

E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
   1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
   2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
   3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
   1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
   3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
   4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
   5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
   6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
      a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
   1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

D. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:

1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
   1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
   2. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
      a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
   1. Soffit Framing: Wire tie furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
   2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
   3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
   4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
   5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
   6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
   7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:
   1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
   2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
   3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
   4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.

E. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

F. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.

C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 42 13.53**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Formed roof penetration sheet metal fabrications.
2. Thru-wall flashing for cavity and rain screen walls.
3. Formed equipment support flashing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
3. Section 07 95 00 "Expansion Control" for manufactured sheet metal expansion-joint covers.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.

B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, profiles, shapes, seams, dimensions attachment details and connections to adjoining work. Include details of all roof-penetration flashing.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes provide metal manufacturer’s charts showing complete range of colors available.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.

1. As-Milled Finish: Mill.
2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
   a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.

B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
   b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.-Conn.; Grace Ice and Water Shield HT or Ultra.
   c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
   d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
   e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Specialty Tile & Metal Underlayment.
   f. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Deck Guard HT.
   g. Protecto Wrap Company; Protecto Jiffy Seal Ice & Water Guard HT.
2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C) or higher.
3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) or lower.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners[**, solder**], protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
   a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
   b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.

C. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, with maximum lead content of 0.2 percent.

D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.

E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.

H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.

B. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.

C. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.

D. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.

E. Copper Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

F. Coated Aluminum and Steel Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength**.**

G. Uncoated Aluminum Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength**.**

H. To prevent galvanic corrosion between graphite and aluminum, do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 CAVITY WALL AND RAIN SCREEN WALL FLASHING

A. Flexible Flashing: Use for cavity wall flashings, foundation sill flashings, head and sill flashings and through-wall flashings with masonry or sheathing over studs back-up.

1. Stainless Steel Laminated Fabric Flashing: Type 304 stainless steel with polymeric fabric bonded to one side.

a. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Multi-Flash SS as manufactured by Your Manufacturing, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:

1) STS Coatings, Inc.

2) TK Products, Inc.

2. Self-Adhering Stainless Steel Laminated Flashing: Type 304 stainless steel core with butyl block co-polymer adhesive on one side.

a. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide York 304 SS as manufactured by Your Manufacturing, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:

1) Illinois Products, Inc.

2) STS Coatings, Inc.

3) TK Products, Inc.

B. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.

C. Polyether Sealants, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

D. Corners and End Dams: Provide manufacturer’s pre-manufactured 26 gauge stainless steel corners and end dams.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm)thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

2. Where shown, verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.

C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners**,** solder where required, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.

1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.

2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
3. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
4. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
5. To prevent galvanic corrosion between graphite and aluminum, do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.

B. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.

C. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric or butyl sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 CAVITY WALL AND RAIN SCREEN WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Prepare masonry or sheathing surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing.

B. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

C. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm), and 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into the inner wythe.

D. At masonry-veneer walls and rainscreen walls with stud and sheathing backup, extend flashing through veneer or rainscreen material, across air space, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches (200 mm); with upper edge tucked under building wrap, lapping at least 4 inches (100 mm).

E. At rainscreen walls with masonry backup, extend through rainscreen material, turned up a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm), and 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into the inner wythe.

F. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry or rainscreen material at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.

G. Lap discontinuous flashing sections a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) and seal laps with self-adhering flashing.

H. Where indicated, install metal drip edges beneath flexible thru-wall flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal

drip edge. Where no drip edge is shown, cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after wall construction is completed.

I. Where flexible thru-wall flashings transition to counterflashings and base flashings, install metal counterflash beneath thru-wall flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible thru-wall flashing ½ inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal counterflashing.

J. Where thru-wall flashing steps down along a roof slope and transitions to metal counterflashing creating discontinuous sections of flashing, overlap flashing sections at least 6 inches (152 mm) and turn the ends of the flashing up at least 2 inches (50 mm) in head joints in masonry or at end of panel sections to form end dams. Install counterflashings as described above.

K. Under metal coping caps, install thru-wall flashing over wood blocking at top of wall and turn down on both inside and outside face of the wall ½ inch past blocking.

L. End Dams: Fold ends of flashing at ends of openings to form end dams, seal with polyether sealant or use flashing manufacturer's pre-formed end dams.

M. Inside and Outside Corners: Field form according to accepted industry standards using corner and splice material or use flashing manufacturer's pre-formed end dams.

N. Cover and protect flashings from damage immediately after installation and until masonry or rainscreen installation is complete. **Do not** allow flashings to become damaged. If damage occurs, contact flashing manufacturer for repair instructions.

3.6 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean off excess sealants.

C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 62 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Copings.
2. Roof-edge flashings.
3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
4. Reglets and counterflashings.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Section 07 71 29 "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for manufactured roof expansion-joint cover assemblies.
4. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
5. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.
6. Section 07 95 00 "Expansion Control" for manufactured sheet metal expansion-joint covers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

B. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
1. Design Wind Velocity: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes provide manufacturer’s standard color charts
1. Sample submittals are required before completion of Architect’s exterior color selections.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPOSED METALS

A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.

1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

2.2 CONCEALED METALS

A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.

B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.

C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

D. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW WIP 300HT.
   b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
   c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
   d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
   e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

2.4 ROOF-EDGE FLASHINGS

1. Fascia Accessories: [**Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats**].

B. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching corner units.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Hickman Company, W. P.
   b. Johns Manville.
   c. Metal-Era, Inc.
   d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
   e. Metal Roofing Systems, Inc.
   f. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
   g. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
2. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
   a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Thickness as required to meet performance requirements but not less than nominal 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
5. Fascia Accessories: [**Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats**][**Soffit trim**].
6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Architectural Products Company.
2. ATAS International, Inc.
3. Berger Building Products, Inc.
4. Castle Metal Products.
5. Cheney Flashing Company.
6. Hickman Company, W. P.
7. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
8. Metal-Era, Inc.
9. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
10. Metal Roofing Systems, Inc.
11. MM Systems Corporation.

12. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
13. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.

B. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch (25 mm) above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) thickness.
2. Gutter Profile: As indicated on the Drawings**.**
3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
4. Gutter Supports: Manufacturer's standard supports as selected by Architect with finish matching the gutters.
5. Gutter Accessories: **Flat ends**.

C. Downspouts: Plain rectangular complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness.
2. Size: 4-inch (101.6-mm) by 6-inch (152.4-mm).

D. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: **Two-coat fluoropolymer** .
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Castle Metal Products.
2. Cheney Flashing Company.
3. Fry Reglet Corporation.
4. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
5. Hickman Company, W. P.
6. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
7. Metal-Era, Inc.
8. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
9. Metal Roofing Systems, Inc.
10. MM Systems Corporation.
11. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
12. Color: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.

C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water. Overlap edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

C. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
   1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
   2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
   3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
   4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
   5. To prevent galvanic corrosion between graphite and aluminum, do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
   2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment as required by metal flashing manufacturer.
   3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.

C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
   1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet (3.6 m) with no joints within 18 inches (450 mm) of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
   2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).

3.4 ROOF-EDGE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.

B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.5 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.

B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 30 inches (762 mm) apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant or solder copper gutters to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
   1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet (15.2 m) apart. Install expansion joint caps.
   2. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
   3. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated. Provide tight connections between downspout and drainage system.

3.6 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

A. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.

B. Embedded Reglets: See Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and/or Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installation of reglets.

C. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches (100 mm) over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with elastomeric or butyl sealant as recommended by flashing manufacturer. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.

B. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 71 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Roof curbs.
2. Equipment supports.
3. Preformed flashing sleeves.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 05 50 00 “Metal Fabrications” for access ladder fall protection systems and safety posts.
2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
3. Section 07 71 00 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, gravel stops, gutters and downspouts, and counterflashing.
4. Section 07 71 29 "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for manufactured roof expansion-joint covers.
5. Section 07 72 53 "Snow Guards" for snow guards.
6. Section 08 62 00 "Unit Skylights" for single- and double-glazed domed plastic skylights with curb frame.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

Retain the following paragraph for roof mounted fall protection systems.

A. Installer Qualifications for Fall Protection Safety Rail or Cable System: Safety rail or cable manufacturer’s certificate stating that installer is certified and authorized by manufacturer for installation.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

C. Coordinate size, location and structural load requirements of roof curbs, adapter frames and equipment supports with General Contractor/Construction Manager and mechanical subcontractor to insure that all components are designed and sized for units provided and structural conditions indicated.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL MATERIALS

A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.
1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 (AZM150) coated.
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

b. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

b. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used, otherwise mill finished.

E. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.

B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, thickness as indicated.

C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

1. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if any, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

3. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer; selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats under prolonged exposure.

D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

E. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.

4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.

G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.

H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.

I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.3 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches (300 mm) high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar for dryer vents or perforated metal collar for exhaust vents.

1. Metal: Aluminum sheet, **0.063 inch** (1.60 mm) thick.

2. Diameter: As indicated or as required by units specified. Coordinate with mechanical.

3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.

.

1. Metal: Aluminum sheet, **0.063 inch** (1.60 mm) thick.

2. Height: Minimum 8 inches (175 mm) above finish roof material.

3. Diameter: As required for indicated vent stack(s).

4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
5. Install fall protection (restraint) systems as shown on approved shop drawings and to comply with OSHA and ANSI requirements. Install under the direct supervision of manufacturer’s authorized and trained personnel.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.

C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.

D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.

E. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.

B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Clean off excess sealants.

E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 72 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 84 46 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Firewall: A fire-resistance-rated wall having protected openings, which restricts which restricts the spread of fire and extends continuously from fouondation to or through the roof, with sufficient structural stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collaple of the wall.

B. Fire Barrier Wall: A fire-resistance-rated wall assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

C. Smoke Barrier Wall: A continuous wall that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke.

D. Fire Partition: A vertical assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which openings are protected.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product selected by installer and listed on product schedule include U: design designation along with required fire-resistance (F), thermal-resistance(T) and air-leakage (L) ratings.

B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system selected by installer, include product identification, location and UL design designation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements" and that is experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following:

1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article.
3. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturers or when substrates are wet.

B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
2. Grabber Construction Products.
3. Grace Construction Products.

4. Hilti, Inc.
5. Johns Manville.
6. Nelson Firestop Products.
7. RectorSeal Corporation.
8. Specified Technologies Inc.
9. 3M Fire Protection Products.
10. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Qualified Installer shall select and provide necessary and appropriate penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Select and provide necessary and appropriate penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
   1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include **fire-barrier walls**. Locations of each are indicated on the drawings.
   2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Select and provide necessary and appropriate penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
   1. Horizontal assemblies include **floors, floor/ceiling assemblies** and **ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies**. Locations of each are indicated on the drawings.
   2. F-Rating (resistance to flame spread): At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
   3. T-Rating (resistance to excessive thermal transmission): At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.

D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Select and provide necessary and appropriate penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479. Locations are indicated on the drawings.
   1. L-Rating (resistance to air leakage): Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.025 cu. m/s per sq. m) of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.

2.3 MIXING

A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates/conditions for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
   1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
   2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Where required by products selected, prime substrates as recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Where products selected would permanently stain or damage adjoining materials, use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting those surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.

1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.

C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner reserves the right to engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 07 84 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
   2. Joints in smoke barriers.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers.
   2. Section 07 95 00 "Expansion Control" for fire-resistive architectural joint systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product selected by installer and listed on product schedule include UL design designations, fire-resistance rating, L-Rating and movement class.

B. Product Schedule: For each fire-resistive joint system, identify location and UL design designation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating fire-resistive joint systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fire-resistive joint systems.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Fire-resistive joint systems shall comply with the following requirements:
   1. Fire-resistive joint system tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
      a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing agency.
      b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by reference to UL “Fire Resistance Directory.”

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Install and cure fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.

C. Do not cover fire-resistive joint systems until each installation has been inspected by authority having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

A. Where required, Qualified Installer shall select and provide necessary and appropriate fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.

B. Head-of-Wall and Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079:
   1. Joints include those installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls and floor assemblies, walls and roof assemblies and wall to wall assemblies.
   2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of construction they will join.
   3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
      b. Grace Construction Products.
      c. Hilti, Inc.

d. Johns Manville.
e. Nelson Firestop Products.
f. NUCO Inc.
g. RectorSeal Corporation.
h. Specified Technologies Inc.
i. 3M Fire Protection Products.
j. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.

4. Head-of-Wall, Wall to Wall and Floor to Wall Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
   a. Assembly Rating: As indicated on Drawings.
   b. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
   c. Movement Capabilities: [**Class II**].

C. L-Rating at Ambient: Less than 5.0 cfm/ft. (cu. m/s x m) of joint at 0.30 inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

D. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per UL 2079.

E. Exposed Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

F. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for systems indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
   1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
   2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
   1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.

C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
   1. Fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
   2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
   3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Owner reserves the right to engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Where deficiencies are found or fire-resistive joint systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace fire-resistive joint systems so they comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

**END OF SECTION 07 84 46**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.
3. Latex joint sealants.
4. Acoustical joint sealants.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers.
2. Section 07 95 00 "Expansion Control" for building expansion joints.
3. Section 07 84 46 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
5. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints.
6. Section 09 51 13 "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters with acoustical sealant.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
1. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.

D. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.

E. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.
1. Joint Sealant Applications: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
b. Joints between plant-pre-cast concrete units.
c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
d. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
e. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
f. Joints between metal panels.

g. Joints between different materials listed above.
h. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
i. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.

2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 290.
d. Pecora Corporation; 890 or 890FTS.
e. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C990.
f. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1 or Spectrem 800.

B. Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use T.
1. Joint Sealant Application: Interior or exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces:
a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
b. Control and expansion joints in stone, brick and tile flooring.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 728 NS.
c. Pecora Corporation; 301 NS or 311 NS.
d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 800.

C. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
1. Joint Sealant Application: Mildew resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors and counters.
b. Tile control and expansion joints.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.
d. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 100 WF.
e. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Immersible, Single-Component or Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
1. Joint Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces subject to water immersion:
a. Joints in pedestrian plazas.
b. Joints in swimming pool decks.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP1.
b. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1a.
c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 116.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
1. Joint Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings.
c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior masonry or concrete walls.
d. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
e. Other joints as indicated.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 600.
c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex 600 or Bondaflex Sil-A 700.
d. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.
f. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

2.5 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

A. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
   1. Joint Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
   2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR or AIS-919.
      b. Tremco; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
      c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

2.6 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

A. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), Type O (open-cell material) or Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance. Do not use Type O (open-cell material) for horizontal surfaces.

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
   1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer.
   2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
   4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

**END OF SECTION 07 92 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes hollow-metal work.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 34 73 "Sound Control Door Assemblies" for packaged, acoustical hollow-metal door and frame assemblies with STC ratings of 35 or more.
2. Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
3. Section 13 49 00 "Radiation Protection" for lead-lined, hollow-metal doors and frames.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal **without** coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of door and frame specified, include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, hardware preparation requirements, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, sound ratings and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
7. Details of accessories.
8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's Certification: Written certification, signed by an officer of the company, stating that all hollow metal doors and frames shipped to the Project site were manufactured in the company's own facilities, that the gages of all steel doors, frames and reinforcements match the specified gages and that all other requirements of this specification have been met.

B. Contractor's/Construction Manager's Certification: Written certification by the Contractor/Construction Manager stating that the gage of all steel doors, steel frames and reinforcements match the specified gages ant that all other requirements of this specification have been met.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer must be a current member of either the Steel Door Institute or the Hollow Metal Manufacturer's Association.

B. Reference Standards: Comply with requirements of ANSI 250.8 or HMMA 861.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide adequate protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
2. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.

3. Door Components, Inc.
4. Fleming-Baron Door Products.
5. HMF Express.
6. Hollow Metal Inc.
7. Hollow Metal Xpress.
8. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames.
9. Megamet Industries, Inc.
10. Mesker Door Inc.
11. MPI Group,LLC
12. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
13. Republic Doors and Frames.
14. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on the Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
   1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.

C. Louvers for Fire-Rated Doors: Where louvers are indicated for fire-rated doors, provide fire labeled louvers per SDI 118.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames according to SDI A250.8, Level 3 **or** Commercial Laminate Doors and Frames according to NAAMM-HMMA 867 at all locations indicated.
   1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
   2. Doors:
      a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
      b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
      c. Face Sheets for Doors at all Toilet Rooms, Kitchens and Janitor Rooms: Metallic-coated (galvanized or galvannealed), cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), 16 gage.
      d. Face Sheets for Doors at All Other Locations: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), 16 gage.
      e. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless per SDI A250.8 **or** continuously welded or interlocked with no visible seams per NAAMM-HMMA 867.
      f. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
   3. Frames:
      a. Materials for Frames at all Toilet Rooms, Kitchens and Janitor Rooms: Metallic-coated (galvanized or galvannealed), steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) 16 gage.
      b. Materials for Frames at all other locations: Uncoated, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), 16 gage.
      c. Construction: Continuous face welded corners, ground smooth.
   4. Exposed Finish: Primed for field application of finish coats.

2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames according to SDI A250.8, Level 3 **or** Commercial Laminated Doors and Frames according to NAAMM-HMMA 867 at all locations indicated.
   1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
   2. Doors:
      a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
      b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm.)
      c. Face: Metallic-coated (galvanized or galvannealed) steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), 16 gage, with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.

d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless per SDI A250.8 **or** continuously welded or interlocked with no visible seams per NAAMM-HMMA 867.

e. Core: Polyurethane or polyisocyanurate.

1) Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.370 K x sq. m/W) when tested according to ASTM C 1363.

3. Frames:

a. Materials: Metallic-coated (galvanized or galvannealed) steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), 16 gage, with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.

b. Construction: Full profile welded.

4. Exposed Finish: Prime for field application of finish coats.

2.5 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

A. Where indicated, provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.

2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide by 10 inches (254 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.

2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.

3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.

4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (51-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.7 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet (Galvanized or Galvannealed): ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.

1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

G. Grout for Frames in Masonry Construction: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches (102 mm), as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

H. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."

I. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

B. Hollow-Metal Doors:

1. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.

2. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Provide beveled or square edges at manufacturer's discretion.

3. Top and Bottom Edge Closures: Close top and bottom edges of doors with minimum 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), 18 gage, galvanized steel closures channels. Install top closure flush and bottom closure inverted.

4. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
5. Cut-Out Reinforcing: Reinforce full cut-outs with minimum 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), 18 gage, vertical channels on both sides of openings **or** minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm), 20 gage, channel full perimeter reinforcing and spot weld in place.
6. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.

C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
1. Sidelight and/or Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
3. Grout Guards: In all frames to be grouted, weld guards to frame at back of all hardware cutouts and mortises and along the full length of the attachment side of frames where continuous hinges will be mounted where grout could interfere with the attachment or operation of hardware..
4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
   a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches (406 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
      1) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
      2) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches (2286 to 3048 mm) high.
      3) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
   b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
      1) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
      2) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) high.
      3) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
   c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each frame.
   d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) o.c.
6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
   a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
   b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

D. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping as required for each piece of hardware scheduled for each opening on the Door Hardware Schedule, according to the hardware templates, and according to SDI A250.6.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware as follows:
   a. Butt Hinges: Minimum 8 gage steel plate **or** minimum 12 gage steel channel **or** minimum 10 gage steel plate with integral formed angle.
   b. Locks, Bolts and Panic Devices: Minimum 14 gage steel plate.
   c. Push and Pull Plates: Minimum 16 gage steel plate.
2. Comply with the hollow-metal preparation requirements for each piece of scheduled hardware and with requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.

E. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

2.9 S TEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.

B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Welded Frames: Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
   a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
   b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
   c. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
   d. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
   e. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
   f. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout.
2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors or power actuated fasteners.
3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with mineral-fiber insulation.
6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
7. In-Place Metal or Wood-Stud Partitions: Secure slip-on drywall frames in place according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
   a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
   b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
   c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
   d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.

C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors:
   a. Between Door and Frame Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
   b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) to 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
   c. At Bottom of Door: 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
   d. Between Door Face and Stop: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
2. Fire-Rated Doors: Where indicated, install fire-rated doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.

3. Smoke-Control Doors: Where indicated, install smoke-control doors and gaskets according to NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c. and not more than 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.

C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

**END OF SECTION 08 11 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. **Factory finished** Solid-core doors and transom panels with wood-veneer faces.
2. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 34 73 "Sound Control Door Assemblies" for acoustic flush wood doors.
2. Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
3. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and Section 09 93 00 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.
4. Section 13 49 00 "Radiation Protection" for lead-lined flush wood doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications if applicable.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Dimensions and locations of hardware blocking.
2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
4. Undercuts.
5. Requirements for veneer matching.
6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
7. WDMA I.S.1-A performance grade for each door.
8. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
9. STC ratings for sound control doors.

C. Samples: For factory-finished doors, provide 8 inch by 10 inch samples of the actual door material with factory finishes applied showing typical range of color and grain.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Finish Materials: Provide Owner with one quart of each stain and finish coat material used.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.

C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period. Use portable equipment until permanent HVAC systems become operable at the date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Manufacturer’s Warranty: Manufacturer standard form signed by manufacturer and installer (including Contractor or Construction Manager) in which the signers agree to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, delamination, warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section and telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.
2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Masonite Architectural, Aspiro Series
2. Eggers Industries.
3. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group company.

4. Lambton Doors.
5. Mohawk Doors; a Masonite company.
6. Oshkosh Door Company.
7. Vancouver Door Company.
8. VT Industries, Inc.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
   1. Provide WI Certified Compliance Labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.

B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
   1. Extra Heavy Duty: Provide Extra Heavy Duty doors for all classrooms, public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exits and at other locations indicated.
   2. Heavy Duty: Provide Heavy Duty doors at all locations not specifically identified above.

C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Where indicated, provide Category A doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 UBC-7-2 and UL 10C. **Only** Category A doors with intumescent seal built into the door edge are acceptable. **No** surface applied seals are allowed..
   1. Temperature-Rise Limit: At exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure per IBC 2006.
   2. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
   3. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
   4. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

D. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where indicated, provide door assemblies that are Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.

E. Particleboard-Core Doors:
   1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2.
   2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
      a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
      b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
   3. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.

F. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
   1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
      a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf (3100 N).
      b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf (1780 N).

G. Mineral-Core Doors:
   1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
   2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as follows:
      a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking.
      b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
      c. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
      d. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
   3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
      a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf475 lbf 2110 N ((2440 N) for Extra Heavy Duty doors and) for Heavy Duty doors per WDMA T.M.-10.

2.3 LIGHT FRAMES

A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
   2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
   3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
   1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

B. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
   1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
   2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors with wood trimmed light frames that are indicated to be factory finished. Comply with requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
   3. Louvers: Factory **or** field install louvers in prepared openings.
   4. Flash top of outswing doors with manufacturer's standard metal flashing.

2.5 FACTORY FINISHING

A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
   1. Stain and finish faces and vertical edges. Clear finish **only** on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

B. Factory finish all doors.

C. Transparent Finish:
   1. Grade: Premium.
   2. Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 11, catalyzed polyurethane.
   3. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
   4. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   5. Sheen: [**Satin**].

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
   1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
   2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
   1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
   2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.

C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting.
   1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
   2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
   3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements, shows no evidence of repair or refinishing and is approved by the Owner and Architect.

C. Protection: Protect doors as recommended by the door manufacturer to ensure that, at Substantial Completion, wood doors are not marred or damaged in any way.

**END OF SECTION 08 14 16**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. [**Insulated**] service doors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats and finishes.

1. For power-operated doors, include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
2. For fire-rated doors, include description of automatic closing device and testing and resetting instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: For each installation, include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.

1. Include details of equipment assemblies, and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
3. For exterior components, include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for excluding and draining moisture to the exterior.
4. For fire-rated doors, show locations of controls, locking devices, detectors or replaceable fusible links, and other accessories.
5. Where assemblies include wiring, include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of standard **and** optional colors and textures available for units and accessories with factory-applied finishes.

1. Samples are required before preparation of Architect’s Color Schedule.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals. Include name and contact information for nearest service representative.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

1. Temperature-Rise Limit: At exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
2. Smoke Control: In corridors and smoke barriers, provide doors that are listed and labeled with the letter "S" on the fire-rating label by a qualified testing agency for smoke- and draft-control based on testing according to UL 1784; with maximum air-leakage rate of 3.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.01524 cu. m/s x sq. m) of door opening at 0.10-inch wg (24.9 Pa) for both ambient and elevated temperature tests.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1 and the Georgia Accessibility Code, 120-3-20A.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. C.H.I. Overhead Doors.
2. Clopay Building Products.
3. Cornell Iron Works, Inc.
4. Janus International
5. McKeon Rolling Steel Door Company, Inc.
6. Overhead Door Corporation.
7. Raynor.
8. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
9. Windsor Door.

2.2 PERFORMANCE AND OPERATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance for Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads indicated on the Structural Drawings as tested according to ASTM E 330.

1. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidence of deformation or disengagement of door components.
2. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under design wind load, acting inward and outward.

B. Seismic Performance: Overhead coiling doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 and the seismic design requirements shown on the Structural Drawings.
   1. Seismic Component Importance Factor: 1.25.

C. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than [**20,000**] cycles. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

D. Electric Door Operator Usage Classification: Medium duty, up to 12 cycles per hour and up to 50 cycles per day.

E. Safety: Listed according to UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use; moving parts of operator enclosed or guarded if exposed and mounted at 8 feet (2.44 m) or lower.

2.3 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:
   1. Slat Profile: Flat slats of between 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) and 2-5/8 inches (67 mm) center to center height.
   2. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural steel sheet; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90 (Z275) zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of 0.028 inch (0.71 mm); and as required.

B. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain.

2.5 HOODS

A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.
   1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
   2. Exterior-Mounted Doors: Fabricate hood to act as weather protection and with a perimeter sealant-joint-bead profile for applying joint sealant.

2.6 LOCKING DEVICES

A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.
   1. Lock Cylinders: Cylinders and keys as specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" and keyed to building keying system.

B. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.7 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

A. Weatherseals for Exterior Doors: Equip each exterior door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted to entire exterior perimeter of door for a weather-resistant installation unless otherwise indicated.
   1. At door head, use 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, replaceable, continuous-sheet baffle secured to inside of hood or field- installed on the header.
   2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene.

B. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.

C. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.

D. Pull-Down Strap: Provide pull-down straps for doors more than 84 inches (2130 mm) high.

2.8 COUNTERBALANCING MECHANISM

A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.

B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, seamless or welded carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain

without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 in./ft. (2.5 mm/m) of span under full load.

C. Counterbalance Spring: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.
   1. Fire-Rated Doors: Equip with auxiliary counterbalance spring and prevent tension release from main counterbalance spring when automatic closing device operates.

D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

2.9 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and operation-cycles requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
   1. Comply with NFPA 70.
   2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, with NFPA 70 Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.

B. Usage Classification: Medium duty electric operator and components.

C. Door Operator Location(s): Operator location indicated for each door.
   1. Front-of-Hood Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on coil side of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Front clearance is required for this type of mounting.
   2. Wall Mounted: Operator is mounted to the inside front wall on the left or right side of door and connected to door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting. Wall mounted operator can also be mounted above or below shaft; if above shaft, headroom is required.

D. Motors: Provide high-starting torque, continuous-duty, Class A insulated, reversible-type motor with controller (disconnect switch) for [**interior**] motor exposure.
   1. Electrical Characteristics:
      a. Phase: [**Single phase, medium-induction type**].
      b. Volts: [**115 V**].
      c. Hertz: 60.
   2. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
   3. Operating Controls, Controllers, Disconnect Switches, Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.

E. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.

F. Obstruction Detection Devices: External entrapment protection consisting of indicated automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. For non-fire-rated doors, activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel. For fire-rated doors, activation delays closing.
   1. Electric Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor activates device. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.
      a. Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire configured device designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor edge.

G. Control Station: Three-button control station in fixed location with momentary-contact push-button controls labeled "Open" and "Stop" and sustained- or constant-pressure push-button control labeled "Close."
   1. Where Interior-Mounted Units are Indicated: Full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
   2. Where Exterior-Mounted Units are Indicated: Full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.

H. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip each electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).

I. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor

level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.

J. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.

2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.11 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

A. Powder-Coat Finish: Baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer’s full range of standard and optional colors and glosses.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine locations of electrical connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.

B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, controls, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.

C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

D. Power-Operated Doors: Install according to UL 325.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.

1. Adjust exterior doors and components to be weather-resistant.

B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

**END OF SECTION 08 33 23**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes factory-fabricated, factory-glazed aluminum windows for exterior locations.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for coordinating finishes.
2. Section 08 44 13 “Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls” for coordinating finishes

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, include construction details, material descriptions, glazing and fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, and finishes for aluminum windows.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.

1. Include aluminum window schedule using same designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For window units, hardware and accessories, provide manufacturer’s standard color chart showing full range of available colors for specified finish.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Exterior Color Schedule.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating aluminum windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by test reports, and calculations.

B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify aluminum window openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. If field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Project, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating aluminum windows without field measurements. Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for coordinating wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, failure to meet performance requirements, structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, condensation, and air infiltration, faulty operation of movable sash and hardware, deterioration of materials and finishes beyond normal weathering and failure of insulating glass.
2. Warranty Period:
   a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
   b. Glazing Units: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
   c. Aluminum Finish: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Boyd Aluminum Manufacturing.
2. Custom Window Company.
3. DeSCo Architectural Inc.
4. EFCO Corporation; a Pella company.
5. Graham Architectural Products Corp.
6. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
7. Peerless Products Inc.
8. TRACO.
9. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
10. Winco.
11. YKK AP America Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Performance Class and Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 as follows:
   1. Minimum Performance Class: **AW**.
   2. Minimum Performance Grade for Fixed Windows: **100**.
   3. Minimum Performance Grade for Operable Windows: **80**.

C. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.60 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.43 W/sq. m x K).

D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of **0.27**.

E. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of **45**.

F. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C) material surfaces.

G. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Rated for not less than 30 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.

H. Outside-Inside Transmission Class (OITC): Rated for not less than 30 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.

2.3 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

A. Operating Types: Provide the following operating types in locations indicated on Drawings:
   1. Fixed.

B. Frames and Sashes: Aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
   1. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate frames, sashes, and muntins with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.

C. Glass and Glazing Materials: Refer to Section 08 80 00 “Glazing” for materials and requirements.

D. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock windows, and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
   1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: Match color and finish of window units to existing high school wing A.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.

B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.

C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.

D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.

E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged sashes and similar lines of natural water penetration.

F. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design wind loads of window units.

G. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

B. Powder Coat Finish: Thermosetting primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603, except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
C. High-Performance Organic Finish (Two-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2605 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances.
C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure weathertight window installation.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing receptor/subframe system, windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E 2112.
B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
   1. Limit joint width between framing system and adjacent construction to 3/8 inch (9 mm).
C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

A. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
   1. Keep protective films and coverings in place until final cleaning.
C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
D. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 08 51 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
   1. Mechanical door hardware including the following:
      a. Hinges/pivots.
      b. Flush Bolts.
      c. Exit devices.
      d. Locksets and cylinders.
      e. Push plates and pulls.
      f. Coordinators.
      g. Closers.
      h. Kick, mop and protection plates.
      i. Stops, wall bumpers and overhead controls.
      j. Silencers.
      k. Miscellaneous trim and accessories.
   2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 08 11 13 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
   2. Section 08 14 16 "Flush Wood Doors".
   3. Division 28 Section for fire alarm system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Samples for Initial Selection: Provide manufacturer’s standard color samples for all units requiring color selection.

B. Other Action Submittals:

C. Door Hardware Schedule: Within two (2) weeks from the date the purchase order is received, submit 7 copies of Hardware Schedule to the Contractor or Construction Manager detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as installation procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
   1. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings if required. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
   2. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule" and use same door numbers as in the Contract Documents. Double space entries, number and date each page.
   3. Content: Include the following information:
      a. Identification number, location, handing of each opening, fire rating, door sizes, material of each door and frame, degree of opening and any lite and louver openings.
      b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
      c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of hardware product for each door.
      d. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
      e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
      f. Mounting locations for door hardware.
      g. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For electrified door hardware, from the manufacturer.
   1. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.

B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

C. Sample Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

D.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware included in final hardware schedule.

B. Hardware and Keys: At Project completion, provide Owner with the following:

1. Instructions sheets for each item furnished
2. One set of any non-standard tools for installation of each item.

C. Contractor's Certification.

D. Contractor's Final Inspection Report.

E. Manufacturer's Certifications.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated door assemblies are indicated, provide door hardware rated for use in assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meet requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

D. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

E. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines, ICC/ANSI A117.1 and Georgia Accessibility Guidelines..

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).
2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
   a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.
   b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.
   c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

F. Contractor/Construction Manager's Hardware Certification: General Contractor/Construction Manager shall provide written certification that all hardware supplied for the project meets all requirements of the Door Hardware Specification.

G. Contractor/Construction Manager's Final Inspection Report: Upon Completion of hardware installation, Contractor/Construction Manager shall deliver a written report to the Owner and Architect stating that the Contractor/Construction Manager has inspected all door hardware, that all recommended adjustments have been completed and that all door hardware furnished has been installed as specified and is in optimum working condition.

H. Manufacturers' Certifications: Each hardware manufacturer's representative for Locks, Exit Devices and Door Closers shall inspect the completed hardware installation and shall provide written certification that all hardware supplied by the manufacturer has been installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and that each unit is operating as designed.

I. ACCESS CONTROL Pre-installation Conference: Contractor/Construction Manager shall conduct conference at Project site with the Owner's representative, the successful hardware supplier, the Owner's access control systems supplier, the door hardware installer and the electrical subcontractor to:

1. Coordinate the door hardware installation and access control installation for the Project.
2. To obtain from the Owner's representative the operational statements for each access control opening and to review the sequence and operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
3. Within two weeks after the conference, hardware supplier shall furnish wiring riser diagrams of all electrified hardware sites to all attendees as well as "point to point" drawings and operational statements for each opening.
4. The Owner's access control systems supplier shall provide all necessary wiring and connections between the electrified hardware products specified and the operational systems for which they are intended.

J. ACCESS CONTROL Post-Installation Conference: Contractor/Construction Manager shall conduct a post installation conference with all parties listed above to review installation and verify that all electrified hardware was installed properly and is operating as intended.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. General: Hardware supplier shall stockpile all items sufficiently in advance to ensure availability and shall make all necessary deliveries in a timely manner to guarantee hardware installation as scheduled. Drop shipments from the manufacturer to the jobsite will not be allowed.

B. Deliver all hardware to project site in original unbroken packaging clearly marked or numbered according to the approved Hardware Schedule. Deliver each piece of hardware packaged with all necessary parts and fasteners.

C. Inventory, tag and check condition of each piece of hardware on receipt and provide secure, dry storage area sufficient is size to allow organizing of hardware for each opening and easy identification when needed for installation.

D. Ship all hardware items to Project site in biodegradable packaging with minimal plastic and styrofoam content.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Installation Templates: Distribute hardware templates and instructions for doors, frames, and other work specified for factory preparation to appropriate manufacturer in a timely manner to avoid delays in construction schedule. Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

B. Contractor/Construction Manager shall coordinate the work of all parties associated with electrified door hardware to ensure the proper integration of electric exit devices, electric strikes, proximity readers, power suppliers, key switches, door contacts and other items with the fire alarm systems, as required for proper operation.

C. Existing Openings: Where hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.9 WARRANTY

1. Warranty Period: One (1) years from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Exit Devices: 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.
   b. Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HINGES

A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.

1. Description: Five-knuckle, heavy-duty, button tip, full mortise, template produced hinges with non-rising loose pins and with sufficient throw to clear all trim.
2. Quantity. Provide three (3) hinges for doors up to ninety inches high and one additional hinge for each additional 30 inches.
3. Size:
   a. Provide 4-1/2 inch by 4-1/2 inch hinges for doors up to 36 inches in width.
   b. Provide 5 inch by 4-1/2 inch hinges for doors over 36 inches in width.
   c. Provide 3-1/2 inch by 3-1/2 inch hinges for 1-3/8 inch thick storage cabinet doors.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a.

| Bommer Industries, Inc. | Hager Companies. | Stanley |
|---|---|---|
| LB5000 | CB1279 | CB179 |
| LB5001 | CB1191 | CB191 |
| LB5004 | CB1168 | CB168 |
| LB5005 | CB1199 | CB199 |

2.2 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Continuous Hinges: BHMA A156.26, Grade 1; Aluminum alloy 6063-T6; Anodized after machining.

B. Fire Rated Doors: Continuous hinges shall not require special pins for fire ratings up to 90 minutes.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. National Guard Products HD2400A
2. Bommer FMHD1
3. Assa McKinney MCK25HD

2.3 MECHANICAL LOCKS, LATCHES AND TRIM

A. Provide all locksets, latchsets, trim and keying from a single manufacturer.

B. Provide wroughtbox strikes and curved lip ASA strikes with proper lip length to protect trim of the frame but not to project more than 1/8 inch beyond frame trim. **Exception:** If existing frames are being re-used, provide strike to match existing.

C. Lock Trim: All trim to be cast or forged and all cylindrical lock trim to be free-wheeling type. Rigid lock trim is not acceptable for cylinder locks.

D. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Dormakaba Best: 45H Series – 15H Design; 9K3 Series – 15D Design (Lost-motion trim).
   b. Assa Sargent: 18-8200 Series – LNL Design; 10 Line – LL Design.
   c. Allegion Schlage: L9000 Series – 06A Design; ND Series – Rhodes Design (Vandlgard).

2.4 MANUAL FLUSH BOLTS

A. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum 3/4-inch throw; designed for mortising into door edge.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc.
   b. Allegion Ives
   c. Assa Rockwood Mfg.

2.5 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3, UL listed for Life Safety.

B. Exit Devices for Labeled Doors: Provide exit devices that have UL label for "Fire Exit Hardware".

C. Installation: Install exit devices on labeled wood doors according to manufacturer's listing requirements.

D. Attachment: All trim shall be through-bolted to the lock stile case.

E. All lockable lever trim shall be free-wheeling or clutch type. Rigid lockable lever trim is not acceptable.

F. Removable mullions shall be key-removable type

G. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Assa Sargent Mfg. Co.8800 series
2. Allegion Von Duprin 98 series
3. Dormakaba Precision 2100 series

2.6 KEYING

A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.

1. All locks and cylinders shall have temporary construction cores; type as specified.
2. All permanent small format interchangeable cores shall be provided and installed by the Owner.
3. Quantity: Provide the following:
   a. Construction Control Keys: Two (2).
   b. Construction Master Keys: Six (6).
      1) During construction, Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for issuing construction master keys and cores to authorized personnel and the return of same.
      2) After construction, Contractor/Construction Manager shall be responsible for returning construction master keys and cores to hardware supplier.

2.7 PUSH PLATES, DOOR PULLS AND KICKPLATES

A. All kickplates shall be 16 gage (0.050) thick stainless steel, 6 inches high by 2 inches less door width with four beveled edges (B4E) and shall have stainless sheet metal screws.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc.
   b. Allegion Ives
   c. Assa Rockwood Mfg.

2.8 SURFACE CLOSERS

A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; heavy duty, rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with a high strength cast case. Provide heavy duty SPA type arms at outswing/parallel arm applications. All door closers shall be through-bolted with sex nuts and bolts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Dormakaba 8916 series
   b. Allegion LCN 4041XP series
   c. Assa Norton 7500BF series

2.9 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Locate door stops to permit maximum door swing without creating a hazard or obstruction.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc.
   b. Allegion Ives
   c. Assa Rockwood Mfg.

2.10 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc. 3320 series 2. Assa Rixson 9 series 3. Allegion Glynn Johnson 90 series

2.11 DOOR GASKETING AND THRESHOLDS

A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; air leakage not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m) of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

B. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a.

| National Guard. | Assa Pemko Mfg.. | Reese Enterprises, Inc. |
|---|---|---|
| 425E | 171A | S425A |
| 653 | 158A | S514 |
| 160S | 303AS | 815A |
| 420NA | 4301CNBL | 521C |
| 137NA | 319CN | 403C |
| C699A | N/A | N/A |
| 5100 | 5110 | N/A |

2.12 FABRICATION
A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Fire-Rated Applications:
a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; use threaded-to-the-head wood screws.
2) Strike plates to frames.
3) Closers to doors and frames.
b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
1) Surface hinges to doors.
2) Closers to doors and frames.
3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
2. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.
2.13 FINISHES
A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule and as follows:
1. Exterior Butt Hinges: 630
2. Interior Butt Hinges: 626, 630 or 652
3. Continuous Geared Hinges: 628
4. Locksets, Exit Devices, Door Trim and Stops: 626 or 630.
5. Door Closers: 689
6. OH Holders & Stops: 630
2.14 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE
A. Provide door hardware for each door as scheduled in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article to comply with requirements in this Section.
1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products.
2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations from approved manufacturers. Manufacturer and their product designation are listed for each door hardware type required.
1. Proprietary Products: References to specific proprietary products are used to establish minimum standards of utility and quality. There is no intent to exclude equivalent products. Refer to Section 01 25 00 “Substitution Procedures” for prior approval requirements.
2.15 FASTERNERS
A. General: Provide all necessary screws, bolts and other fasteners of suitable size and type to anchor the hardware in position for a long life under hard use. Utilize fasteners that match material and finish of hardware.
B. Closers, Overhead Holders and Stops: Door closers, overhead holders and stops shall be through-bolted with sex nuts and bolts.
C. Exit Devices: Exit devices on labeled wood doors shall be through-bolted as required by door manufacturer.
D. Thresholds: Fasten thresholds with machine screws and anchors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. All door hardware shall be installed by experienced finish carpenters only.

B. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.

C. Install each door hardware item to strictly comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, perform all cutting and fitting required and remove the hardware before the final coat of finish is installed.

D. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.

E. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.

F. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

G. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.

H. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.

I. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

J. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: During installation, adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

B. Follow-up Adjustment: After all hardware items have been installed and initially adjusted, revisit each opening to recheck hardware adjustment.

1. Door Closers: Adjust closer valve settings for latch, sweep and backcheck per manufacturer’s written recommendations. Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. For exterior high-traffic doors that have wall or post-mounted bumpers listed in the Door Schedule, install closers at 90 degree templating location.

3.5 INSPECTION, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Contractor/Construction Manager Inspection report: Upon completion of hardware installation, Contractor/Construction Manager shall deliver a written report to the Owner and Architect stating that the Contractor/Construction Manager has inspected all door hardware, that all recommended adjustments have been completed and that all door hardware furnished has been installed as specified and is in optimum working condition.

B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

## 3.6 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

HW-1
PAIRS OF DOORS : 103A, 111A

EACH PAIR TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A x PT (RHR) |
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. EXIT DEVICE | CD9300*T x PRT03T (RHR) |
| 1 EA. EXIT DEVICE | CD9300*T x PRT02 |
| 1 EA. REM. MULLION | 1340KR*T |
| 4 EA. PERM. CORES | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. POWER TRANSFER | ES105 |
| 1 EA. MORTAR BOX | BY FRAME SUPPLIER |
| 2 EA. CLOSERS | 8916 S-DST x SNB |
| 2 EA. KP'S | 90 |
| 1 EA. THRESHOLD | 653 |
| 2 EA. SWEEPS | C699A |
| 1 SET WS | 160S |
| 1 PC. MULLION SEAL | 5110 |
| 1 EA. RAIN DRIP | 16A |

MLR EXIT DEVICE, POWER SUPPLY AND OWNER PROVIDED ACCESS CONTROLS: ALL FUTURE.

HW-2
SGL. DOORS : 103B, 111B

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A x PT |
| 1 EA. EXIT DEVICE | CD9300*T x PRT03T |
| 2 EA. PERM. CORES | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. POWER TRANSFER | ES105 |
| 1 EA. MORTAR BOX | BY FRAME SUPPLIER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 S-DST x SNB |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. THRESHOLD | 653 |
| 1 EA. SWEEP | C699A |
| 1 SET WS | 160S |
| 1 EA. RAIN DRIP | 16A |

MLR EXIT DEVICE, POWER SUPPLY AND OWNER PROVIDED ACCESS CONTROLS: ALL FUTURE.

HW-3
SGL DOORS : 110A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. EXIT DEVICE | F9300*T x YR08T |
| 2 EA. PERM. CORES | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 SPA x SNB (180 degree swing and templating) |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-4
SGL. DOORS : 108A, 109A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | C870T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 AF89 x SNB |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

KEYSIDE IS ROOM 110.

HW-5
SGL. DOORS : 107A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | C853T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 AF89 x SNB |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-6
SGL. DOORS : 106A, 114A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD4100A (swing clear) |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | C870T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 SPA x SNB (template for swing clear hinge) |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-7
SGL. DOORS : 107B

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 3 EA. HINGES | LB5004 (hvy wt) |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | C853T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

KEYSIDE IS ROOM 109.

HW-8
SGL. DOORS : 105A, 113A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD4100A (swing clear) |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | C880T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 AF89 x SNB (template for swing clear hinge) |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-9
SGL. DOORS : 102A, 104A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 3 EA. HINGES | LB5006 w/SS PIN |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | M9070T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 AF89 x SNB |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-10
SGL. DOORS : 101A, 109B, 115A

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | M9980T |
| 1 EA. PERM. CORE | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 S-DST x SNB |
| 1 EA. THRESHOLD | 653 |
| 1 EA. SWEEP | C699A |
| 1 SET WS | 160S |
| 1 EA. RAIN DRIP | 16A |

HW-11
SGL. DOORS : 110B

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. LOCKSET | M9966T |
| 2 EA. PERM. CORES | BY OWNER |
| 1 EA. CLOSER | 8916 SPA x SNB |
| 1 EA. KP | 90 |
| 1 EA. HD WALL STOP | 1411 x TORX |
| 1 EA. THRESHOLD | 513 |
| 1 EA. SWEEP | 697A |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

HW-12
OH ROLL-UP DOORS : 115B

ALL HARDWARE BY DOOR SUPPLIER.

HW-13
TOILET STALL DOORS : 102B, 104B, 112B, 112C, 112D

EACH TO HAVE :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 EA. CONT. HINGE | HD2400A |
| 1 EA. PRIVACY LOCK | C840 |
| 1 EA. WALL STOP | 1407 |
| 3 EA. SILENCERS | 1608 |

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
   1. Windows.
   2. Doors.
   3. Interior borrowed lites.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 08 83 00 "Mirrors."

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
   1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product listed below; 12 inches (300 mm) square.
   1. Tinted glass.
   2. Patterned glass.
   3. Coated glass.
   4. Laminated glass with colored interlayer.

C. Glazing Accessory Samples: Provide 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of each sealant color installed between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark safety glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

C. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, whether glazing is for use in fire doors or other openings, whether or not glazing passes hose-stream test, whether or not glazing has a temperature rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C), and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.

D. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
   1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form in which coated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
   1. Warranty Period: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which laminated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
   1. Warranty Period: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Double Glazing Units with Gel Fill: Manufacturer agrees to replace units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of double glazing units with gel fill is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the leakage of gel fill from units, air bubbles within units, or obstruction of vision by contamination or deterioration of gel.
   1. Warranty Period: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.

B. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass. Where heat-strengthened glass is indicated, provide Kind HS heat-treated float glass. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.

C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Provide exterior glazing that passes basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 1 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.
   1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
   2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.

D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
   1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
   2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
   3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
   4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
   5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
   6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) for inteior locations and Class 2 (tinted) for exterior locations.

B. Ultraclear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear), with visible light transmission not less than 91 percent.

C. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
   1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed.
   2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
   3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).

D. Film-Faced Polished Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 1 (wired, polished both sides), Quality-Q6 and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Anemostat Door Products.
      b. Nippon Sheet Glass Co., Ltd.
      c. Pilkington North America.
   2. Mesh: M1 (diamond).

E. Schedule of Monolithic Glass Types

2.3 INSULATING GLASS

A. Fabricators for Standard Insulating Glass Units: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products fabricated by one of the following:
   1. AGC Flat Glass North America, Inc.
   2. Oldcastle Building Envelope.

3. Viracon.

B. Fabricators for Electrochromatic Insulating Glass Units: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products fabricated by one of the following:
1. Glass Apps. LLC.
2. Sage Electrochromics, Inc.
3. View, Inc.

C. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with polyisobutylene primary seal and silicone secondary seal.
2. Spacer: Bent or welded aluminum.
3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.

D. Schedule of Insulating-Glass Types
1. Glass Type GL-1: Low-e-coated, insulating float glass.
a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted clear float glass.
d. Interspace Content: Argon.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass.
f. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second or third surface.
g. U-Factor for Window Glazing: 0.55 maximum.
h. U-Factor for Entrance Doors: 0.85 maximum.
i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.25 maximum at all locations.
2. Glass Type GL-2: Low-e-coated, insulating fully tempered glass.
a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted clearfully tempered float glass.
d. Interspace Content: Argon.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
f. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second or third surface.
g. U-Factor for Window Glazing: 0.55 maximum.
h. U-Factor for Entrance Doors: 0.85 maximum.
i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.25 maximum at all locations.
j. Provide safety glazing labeling.

2.4 FIRE-PROTECTION-RATED GLAZING

A. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on positive-pressure testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose-stream test, and shall comply with NFPA 80.
1. Fire-protection-rated glazing required to have a fire-protection rating of 20 minutes shall be exempt from the hose-stream test.

B. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name; test standard; whether glazing is permitted to be used in doors or openings; if permitted in openings, whether or not glazing has passed the hose-stream test; whether or not glazing meets 450 deg F (250 deg C) temperature-rise limitation; and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.

C. Fire-Protection-Rated Tempered Glass: 6-mm thickness, fire-protection-rated tempered glass; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. InterEdge; PyroEdge-20.
b. Safti First; SuperLite I.
c. Technical Glass Products; Fireglass20.
d. Vetrotech Saint-Gobain; SSG Pyroswiss US.

2.5 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:
1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide the following] [provide one of the following] [available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
      a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
      b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
      c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 290.
      d. Pecora Corporation; 890.
      e. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C990.
      f. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1.

C. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Rated Glazing Products: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT. Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Dow Corning Corporation; 795.
      b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilGlaze II SCS2800.
      c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2.
   2. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
   1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
   2. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
   1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
   2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

2.8 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

B. For Butt-glazed monolithic lites, clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish any exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
   1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
   2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
   3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
   4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
   5. Verify that secondary seal of insulated glass units is compatible with sealants.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that will leave visible marks in the completed work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.

E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.

2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.

B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.

D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.

E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.

F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

3.5 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 08 80 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
2. Non-load-bearing steel Z-furring systems for exterior weather resistant wall systems.
3. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 05 40 00 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; roof rafters and ceiling joists; and roof trusses.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal.
2. Protective Coating for Interior Locations: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 (Z120), hot-dip galvanized.
3. Protective Coating for Exterior Wall and Soffit Locations: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hop dip galvanized.

B. Smooth Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Uncoated Base-Metal Thickness:
a. All interior locations for regular and abuse resistant gypsum board: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
b. Exterior soffit framing: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
c. Exterior non-load bearing framing: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 18 gage.
d. Cement fiber wall panel locations: 0.068 inch (1.68 mm), 14 gage.
2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings except the following minimum depths shall apply where spans are as follows:
a. Length = 14’-7” or less: min. 3-5/8 inch studs.
b. Length = 14’-8” to 21’-9”: min. 6 inch studs.
c. Length + 21’-10” to 27’-6”: min. 8 inch studs.
3. Spacing: 16 inches on center.

C. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645, may be used in lieu of smooth studs and runners as follows:
1. Minimum Uncoated Base-Metal Thickness:
a. All interior locations for regular and abuse resistant gypsum board: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).
b. Exterior soffit framing: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
c. Exterior non-load bearing framing: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 18 gage.
2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings except the following minimum depths shall apply where spans are as follows:
a. Length = 14’-7” or less: min 3-5/8 inch studs.
b. Length = 14’-8” to 21’-9”: min. 6 inch studs.
c. Length = 21’-10” to 27’-6”: min. 8 inch studs.

D. Z-Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Uncoated Base-Metal Thickness:
a. All interior locations: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
b. Exterior non-load bearing framing on exterior face of concrete masonry: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 18 gage.
2. Depth: As indicated on the drawings.
3. Leg Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).

E. Steel Joists for Smoke Resistive Ceilings Over Corridors:
1. For corridors 8’ to 10’ wide: 8” deep, 2” wide flange, 0.053 inch (1.34 mm), 16 gage, Fy=33 ksi.
2. For corridors 12’ to 14’ wide: 8” deep , 2” wide flange, 0.068 inch (1.68 mm) 14 gage, Fy=33 ksi.

F. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
      b. Grace Construction Products; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.
      c. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.

G. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width required.
   1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness for Interior Locations: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
   2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness for Exterior Locations: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 18 gage.

H. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch (1.34-mm), 16 gage, minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
   1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), 0.068-inch- (1.72-mm-) 14 gage, thick, galvanized steel.
   3. Spacing: 48 inches on center.

I. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
   1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
   2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

J. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
   1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

K. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm), 16 gage, uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
   1. Depth: [As indicated on Drawings] [**3/4 inch (19 mm)**].
   2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch (0.8 mm), 20 gage.
   3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.

B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch (4.12 mm) in diameter.

C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized coating, 1 by 3/16 inch (25 by 5 mm) by length required.

D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized coating, with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch (1.34 mm), 16 gage, and minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
   1. Depth: [As indicated on Drawings] [**2-1/2 inches** (64 mm)] [**2 inches** (51 mm)] [**1-1/2 inches** (38 mm)].

E. Furring Channels (Furring Members): Commercial-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized coating.
   1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm), 16 gage, uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges, 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.
   2. Smooth Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
      a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
      b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
   3. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
      a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).
      b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
   4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645**,** 7/8 inch (22 mm) deep.
      a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch (0.84 mm), 20 gage.
   5. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
      a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
      b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
      c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.

B. Fasteners for Metal Framing to Substrates: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
C. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing or paneling, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
D. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.
E. Shims for Aligning Studs at Exterior Face of Concrete Masonry: Strips of resilient plastic or vulcanized neoprene, Type A Shore durometer hardness of 50 to 70, of thickness needed to maintain required alignment of outside face of non-load-bearing studs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION
A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION
A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754 and the applicable provisions in the following:
1. ASTM C 840 for gypsum board assemblies.
2. ASTM C 841 for gypsum plaster assemblies.
3. ASTM C 844 for gypsum veneer plaster assemblies.
4. ASTM C 1063 for portland cement plaster assemblies.
B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
C. Install specified bridging at a minimum of 48” on center. Bridging for interior non-load-bearing studs may be omitted only when studs are sheathed on both sides.
D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES
A. Install framing system components at 16 inches (406 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
B. Where studs or Z-furring are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
1. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
a. Install two studs at each jamb.
b. Where control joints are indicated at heads of doors, install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
2. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
3. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.

a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

4. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
5. Curved Partitions:
   a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
   b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

E. Direct Furring:
1. Screw to wood framing.
2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.

F. Z-Furring Members:
1. At interior locations, erect insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
2. At interior locations, except at exterior corners, securely attach flanges of furring members to wall with screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
3. At exterior corners of interior locations, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corner and cut insulation to fit.
4. At exterior face of concrete masonry, shim Z-furring with resilient plastic or vulcanized rubber shims to provide fastening surfaces that are within specified tolerances. Securely attach inner flanges of furring members to wall with power-driven fasteners spaces at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Cut and install solid blocking at 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. vertically at each end of the wall, adjacent to wall openings and at 8 feet o.c. maximum horizontally. Install flat strap bracing to face flange at top and bottom of Z-furring and at each solid blocking point.
5. Configure exterior and interior corners of furring on exterior face of concrete masonry as shown in the Architectural drawings.

G. Installation Tolerance for Interior Studs: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

H. Installation Tolerance for Z-Furring on Exterior Masonry: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
1. Hangers: 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.

B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
   a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
2. Where width of ducts and other construction within plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems.
F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

**END OF SECTION 09 22 16**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
2. Section 09 22 16 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
3. Section 09 21 16.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for metal shaft-wall framing, gypsum shaft liners, and other components of shaft-wall assemblies.
4. Section 09 26 13 "Gypsum Veneer Plastering" for gypsum base for veneer plaster and for other components of gypsum-veneer-plaster finishes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Moisture Control Testing: After panels have been taped and finished, measure and document the moisture content of panels at **two** locations on **each** wall (at bottom edge and halfway between floor and ceiling). Finishes shall not be applied until moisture content of the board is below 0.4% as measured on a gypsum moisture meter. Provide Owner and Architect with copies of all reports documenting gypsum board moisture levels.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, or damaged by moisture and/or mold.

D. Moisture Control: Provide portable HVAC and dehumidification equipment as required to bring moisture content of the board below 0.4% as measured on a gypsum moisture meter.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Gypsum.
2. CertainTeed Corp.
3. Continental Building Products
4. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
5. National Gypsum Company.
6. PABCO Gypsum.
7. Temple-Inland.
8. USG Corporation.

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.
   a. Level 5 Finish Option: Installer may use panels with a factory applied skim coat to achieve Level 5 finish.

C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

D. Gypsum Board, Type C: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to have increased fire-resistive capability.
1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) as required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

E. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

F. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

G. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
1. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type or 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X for fire-rated assemblies.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.
3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Sheathing.
b. Continental Building Products; Weather Defense Platinum.
c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Dens-Glass Gold.
d. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond, e(2)XP.
e. USG Corporation; Securock Glass Mat Sheathing.
2. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type or 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X for fire-rated assemblies.

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
a. Cornerbead.
b. Bullnose bead.
c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
e. Expansion (control) joint.
f. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
a. Cornerbead.
b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

C. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Fry Reglet Corp.
b. Gordon, Inc.
c. Pittcon Industries.
2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.
3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
   a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
1. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
   b. Grabber Construction Products; Acoustical Sealant GSC.
   c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
   d. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
   e. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."

G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C 840.

B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

D. Locate edge and end joints over supports. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.

G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
   a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
   b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

B. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

C. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

D. Curved Surfaces: Refer to the Drawings for radii and stud spacing.

1. Install panels vertically (parallel to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch- (300-mm-) long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. Install panels as double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.

3.4 APPLYING EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.

1. Install with LC-Bead and caulk joint where panels abut other construction to ensure airtight installation.
2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and where shown on the drawings.

C. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:

1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated on the Drawings.
2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile and where indicated on Drawings.
3. Level 3: Surfaces exposed to view and scheduled to receive medium or heavy textured finishes.
4. Level 4: Surfaces exposed to view and scheduled to receive wallcoverings and flat paint finishes and where indicated on the Drawings.
5. Level 5: Surfaces exposed to view and scheduled to receive gloss or semi-gloss finishes and where indicated on Drawings.
   a. Installer may use panels with a factory applied skim coat to achieve Level 5 finish.

E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Apply fiberglass tape to joints and set in joint compound recommended by panel manufaacturer. Apply skim coat of joint compound to entire panel surface to obtain uniform, smooth surface.

F. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.

B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION 09 29 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 51 23 "Acoustical Tile Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of mineral-base acoustical tiles used with concealed suspension systems, stapling, or adhesive bonding.
2. Section 09 51 33 "Acoustical Metal Pan Ceilings."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.

1. Acoustical Panel: Provide complete set of actual acoustical panel sections demonstrating each type, color, pattern, and texture available.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to **2** percent of quantity installed.
2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to **2** percent of quantity installed.
3. Hold-Down Clips for Fire-Rated Asemblies: Equal to **2** percent of quantity installed.
4. Impact Clips for Abuse Resistant Assemblies: Equal to **2** percent of quantity installed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Acoustical ceiling shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7. Refer to the Structural Drawings for seismic design requirements.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Source Limitations:

1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches (400 mm) away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.

D. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

A. LAP #1: Standard Acoustical Panels:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
   a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Fine Fissured.
   b. CertainTeed Corp.; Baroque.
   c. Rockfon; Pacific.
   d. USG Interiors, Inc.; Radar.

2. Classification: Provide [**fire-resistance rated**] panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Type III, Form 2, Pattern CD (perforated, small holes and fissured).
3. Color: White.
4. LR: Not less than 0.80.
5. NRC: Not less than 0.55.
6. CAC: Not less than 35.
7. Flame Spread Classification: Class A per ASTM E84.
8. Edge/Joint Detail: [Square, trim edge] [Reveal edge] .
9. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15 mm).
10. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).

B. LAP #2: Moisture Resistant Acoustical Panels:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Ceramguard.
b. CertainTeed Corp.; VinylShield A.
c. Rockfon; Hygienic Plus.
d. USG Interiors, Inc.; Clean Room ClimaPlus.
2. Classification: Provide fire-resistant rated panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Type X, Pattern G (smooth, non-perforated), USDA approved for food processing areas.
3. Color: White.
4. LR: Not less than 0.80.
5. NRC: Not less than 0.15.
6. CAC: Not less than 40.
7. Clean Room Class per FS 209E: 100.
8. Flame Spread Classification: Class A per ASTM E84.
9. Edge/Joint Detail: Square, trim edge.
10. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15 mm).
11. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).
12. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity, moisture resistant, finishes are indicated.

B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

Verify safety factor in paragraph below with Structural Engineer.

1. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to **10** times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm) diameter wire.

D. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.

E. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed and spaced to secure acoustical panels in place.

G. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. on all cross tees.

H. Impact Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard impact-clip system designed to absorb impact forces against acoustical panels.

2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corp.

3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
4. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.

B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide metal caps on flanges.
1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
2. Fire Rated Systems: Provide fire-rated steel suspension systems as described by UL assembly indicated for panels in locations scheduled to receive fire rated panels.
3. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
4. Face Design: Flat, flush.
5. Cap Material: Steel cold-rolled sheet.
6. Cap Material for Moisture Resistant Locations: Aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
7. Cap Finish: Painted white.

C. Open-Cell, Extruded-Aluminum Lay-In Grid System: Main and cross runners formed from extruded aluminum to produce structural members that are 9/16-inch- (15-mm-) wide and 1-1/2 inches (38.1 mm) deep.
1. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm)
2. Open-Cell, Lay-In Grid: Extruded aluminum lay-in panel system with 4 inch (101.6 mm) by 4 inch (101.6 mm) grid.
3. Face Finish: Painted white.
4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corp.
3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
4. Fry Reglet Corporation.
5. Gordon, Inc.
6. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.

B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
a. Provide 2-inch wide perimeter edge moldings in Seismic Design Categories D, E & F.
2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
3. At outside corners, provide prefabricated corner caps, formed to a 90 degree andle, hemmed edges, of size and finish to match wall molding.
4. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Henkel Corporation.
2. Pecora Corporation.
3. Tremco, Inc.
4. USG Corporation.

B. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
2. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage

and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."

1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Where fire-rated systems are indicated, install systems according to tested fire-rated design.
2. Seismic Restraint Requirements: Comply with ASTM E 580 and the following:
   a. For buildings assigned to Seismic Design Categories A, B or C: Comply with “CISCA’s “Recommendations for Direct-Hung Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Ceilings – Seismic Zones 0 – 2”.
   b. For buildings assigned to Seismic Design Categories D, E or F: Comply with CISCA’s “Recommendations for Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies – Seismic Zones 3 & 4”.
   c. Refer to the Structural Drawings for the Seismic Design Categories.

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings (where indicated), to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.

C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.

1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

E. Where room size and ceiling layout, as shown on the drawings, would result in edge tiles 4 inches or less in width, layout and install suspension system runners such that edge tiles must be cut from 2 foot by 4 foot panels.

F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.

1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels in a basket-weave pattern.

2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
4. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
5. Install hold-down or impact clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
6. Where fire-rated assemblies are indicated, protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for assembly.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 09 51 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Resilient base.
2. Resilient molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, provide section of actual material specified not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long.
1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).

C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products, Division of Burke Industries Inc.
2. Flexco.
3. Roppe Corporation, USA.

B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous), 100% virgin synthetic rubber per ASTM D 1566.
1. Style and Location:
a. Style A, Straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient flooring.

C. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).

D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).

E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.

F. Outside Corners: Job formed.

G. Inside Corners: Job formed.

H. Colors: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.2 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products, Division of Burke Industries Inc.
2. Flexco.
3. Musson Rubber Company.
4. Roppe Corporation, USA.
5. VPI, LLC, Floor Products Division.

B. Description: Rubber carpet edge for glue-down applications, nosing for resilient flooring, reducer strip for resilient flooring, joiner for tile and carpet and transition strips.
1. Type: TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), 100% virgin synthetic rubber per ASTM D 1566.

C. Profile and Dimensions: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Locations: [Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated] <Insert requirements>.
E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS
A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
D. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION
A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION
A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
a. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum **75** percent relative humidity level.
C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION
A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
G. Job-Formed Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length.
1. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
H. Job-Formed Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length.
1. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION
A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 13**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Luxury vinyl floor tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color samples showing the full range of colors and patterns available.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Moisture and pH test results.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every **50** boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C). Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).

C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.

D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.

E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient tile flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 LUXURY VINYL FLOOR TILE AND PLANKS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. Mannington Commerical
3. Tandus Centiva

B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.

1. Class: Class II, surface-decorated vinyl tile.
2. Type: A, smooth surface.

C. Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.60 but not less than 0.80 where slip resistant tile is indicated.

D. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).

E. Wear Layer: 30 mil

F. Plank Size: Manufacturer's standard plank width and lengths.

G. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of manufacturer's colors, patterns and textures.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Stair Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient tread manufacturer for filling nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.

C. Resilient edge strips: Glue down carpet edging composed of 100% virgin synthetic rubber complying with FS RR-T-650C Composition A, Type 1, 2 and 4.

1. Dimensions: 3/8 inch high by 2 1/4 inch wide with 1/4 inch butting gauge undercut.
2. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of manufacturer's colors.

D. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

1. Provide adhesive that is warranted to resist a minimum moisture vapor emission rate of 5 lbs. per 1,000 sf per 24 hours as measured using anhydrous calcium chloride test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
   a. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum **75** percent relative humidity level.

C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

D. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.

B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.

1. Lay tiles square with room axis.

C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.

1. Lay tiles with grain direction alternating in adjacent tiles (basket-weave pattern) unless otherwise indicated.

D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.

E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.

F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.

G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.

H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and use manufacturer's recommended products for cleaning and protecting floor tile.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
3. Do not wash floor tile until after time period recommended by flooring manufacturer.
4. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or methods recommended in writing by flooring manufacturer.

1. Cover floor surfaces with undyed, untreated kraft paper until Substantial Completion.
2. When moving heavy or sharp objects over floor surfaces, place plywood or hardboard panels over flooring and under objects. Move objects by sliding or rolling them over the panels without moving panels.

3.5 SEALING AND FINISHING

A. Instruct Owner in proper care and maintenance of each type of floor tile specified as outlined in manufacturer's written instructions included in the maintenance manuals.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 19**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Decorative resinous flooring systems.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed at joints in resinous flooring.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required provide manufacturer’s color charts showing full range of colors, textures and patterns available.

1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Moisture and pH test results.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of flooring systems required for this Project.

1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

C. Mockups: Apply mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Apply full-thickness mockups on 48-inch- (1200-mm-) square floor area selected by Architect. Include 48-inch (1200-mm) length of integral cove base with inside corner.
2. Simulate finished lighting conditions for Architect's review of mockups.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.

B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.

C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.2 DECORATIVE RESINOUS FLOORING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. BASF Construction Chemicals, Inc.; BASF Building Systems.
2. ChemMasters.
3. Crawford Laboratories Inc.; Florock.
4. Crossfield Products Corp.; Dex-O-Tex.
5. DUDICK Inc.
6. Dur-A-Flex, Inc.
7. Key Resin Company.
8. Palma, Inc.
9. Plexi-Chemi, Inc.
10. Polymerica, Incorporated.
11. RBC Industries, Inc.

12. Sherwin-Williams Company; General Polymers.
13. Stonhard, Inc.
14. Tamms Industries, Inc.; a division of The Euclid Chemical Company.

B. Resinous Flooring: Abrasion-, impact- and chemical-resistant, decorative-aggregate-filled, epoxy-resin-based, monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor and integral cove base where indicated.

C. System Characteristics:
1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Wearing Surface: Textured for slip resistance.
3. Overall System Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

D. Body Coats:
1. Resin: Epoxy.
2. Formulation Description: High solids.
3. Application Method: Self-leveling slurry with broadcast aggregates.
   a. Thickness of Coats: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
   b. Number of Coats: One.
4. Aggregates: Vinyl flakes.

E. Topcoat: Sealing or finish coats.
1. Resin: Urethane.
2. Type: Clear.
3. Finish: Matte.
4. Number of Coats: One.

F. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:
1. Compressive Strength: 5000 psi per ASTM C 579.
2. Tensile Strength: 750 psi per ASTM C 307.
3. Water Absorption: 0.1% per ASTM C 413.
4. Indentation: One percent maximum per MIL-D-3134.
5. Impact Resistance: No chipping, cracking, or delamination and not more than 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) permanent indentation per MIL-D-3134.
6. Resistance to Elevated Temperature: No slip or flow of more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) per MIL-D-3134.
7. Flammability: Self-extinguishing per ASTM D 635.
8. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 W/sq. cm or greater per NFPA 253.
9. Hardness: 72, Shore D per ASTM D 2240.
10. Bond Strength: 200 psi, 100 percent concrete failure per ACI 503R.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Primer: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and body coats indicated.

B. Waterproofing Membrane: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and primer and body coats indicated.

C. Reinforcing Membrane at Cracks: Flexible resin formulation that is recommended by manufacturer for substrate and primer and body coats indicated and that prevents substrate cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring.
1. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
   a. Provide fiberglass scrim embedded in reinforcing membrane.

D. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

2.4 MARBLE THRESHOLDS

A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less above adjacent floor surface.

B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of **12** according to ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.
1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry substrate for resinous flooring application.

B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
1. Roughen concrete substrates to comply with ASTM C 811 requirements unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.

2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement or as required by the manufacturer.
4. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.

C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
   1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
   2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
   3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

B. If required by flooring system manufacturer, apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.

C. If required by flooring system manufacturer, apply waterproofing membrane, where indicated, in manufacturer's recommended thickness. Apply waterproofing membrane to integral cove base substrates.

D. Apply reinforcing membrane to substrate cracks.

E. Integral Cove Base: Where indicated, apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and topcoating of cove base. Round internal and external corners.
   1. Integral Cove Base: 4 inches (100 mm) high.

F. Apply self-leveling slurry body coats in thickness indicated for flooring system.
   1. Broadcast aggregates at rate recommended by manufacturer and, after resin is cured, remove excess aggregates to provide surface texture indicated.

G. Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Core Sampling: At the direction of Owner and at locations designated by Owner, take one core sample per 1000 sq. ft. (92.9 sq. m) of resinous flooring, or portion of, to verify thickness. For each sample that fails to comply with requirements, take two additional samples. Repair damage caused by coring and correct deficiencies.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect resinous flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 09 67 23**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
   1. Steel.
   2. Galvanized metal.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
   2. Section 09 96 00 "High-Performance Coatings" for special-use coatings.
   3. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
   4. Section 09 93 00 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on exterior wood substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

B. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

C. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

D. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

E. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

F. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
   1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Color Schedule.

C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
   1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
   2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
   3. VOC content.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
   1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
   2. Coronado Paint.
   3. Duron, Inc.
   4. ICI Paints.
   5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
   6. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."

B. Material Compatibility:
   1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
   2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
1. 10 percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Wood: 15 percent.
4. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers. Prime **all surfaces** of all substrates as indicated in the following paragraphs with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer**.** Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
1. If galvanized metal substrates are chromate passivated, consult manufacturers for appropriate surface preparation and primers
I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.
J. Wood Substrates:
1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood (**all surfaces)**.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Exterior Painting Schedule.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and MPI recommendations
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.

4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
5. Use primers specified in painting schedules to prime or re-prime **all surfaces** unless topcoat manufacturer, in writing, specifically allows priming to be omitted on items that are factory primed.

B. If substrate shows through block filler or if undercoats show through topcoat, apply additional coats of block filler or topcoat until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

D. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work: Paint exposed equipment, tanks, piping, conduit, hangers and supports **only** where indicated. Consult with Architect/Engineer prior to painting any exposed items when direction is unclear.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Steel Substrates:
1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive for metal, MPI #79.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #9.

B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates (not chromate passivated):
1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3B.
a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #9.

**END OF SECTION 09 91 13**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
   1. Concrete.
   2. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
   3. Steel.
   4. Cast iron.
   5. Galvanized metal.
   6. Wood.
   7. Gypsum board.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 09 96 00 "High-Performance Coatings" for high-performance and special-use coatings.
   2. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
   3. Section 09 93 00 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on interior wood substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

B. Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

C. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

D. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

E. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

F. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

G. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
   1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect’s Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
   1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
   2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified with the proposed product highlighted.
   3. VOC content.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
   1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
   2. Coronado Paint.
   3. Duron, Inc.
   4. ICI Paints.
   5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
   6. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
1. 10 percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Wood: 15 percent.
4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
5. Plaster: 12 percent.

C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.

D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.

E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers. Prime **all surfaces** of all substrates as indicated in the following paragraphs with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer**.** Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates (not chromate passivated: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation. Apply prime coat to **all surfaces** as specified in Interior Painting Schedule.

J. Wood Substrates:
1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood (**all surfaces**).
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.

2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
5. Use primers specified in painting schedules to prime or re-prime **all surfaces** unless topcoat manufacturer, in writing, specifically allows priming to be omitted on items that are factory primed.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If substrate show through block filler or if undercoats show through topcoat, apply additional coats of block filler or topcoat until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC and Electrical Work: Paint exposed mechanical equipment and tanks where indicated on the Drawings. Consult with Architect/Engineer prior to painting any exposed items when direction is unclear.
1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces:
a. Uninsulated metal and plastic piping hangers and supports.
1) NOTE: All above ground gas piping shall be painted international yellow or a color selected by the Architect with pipe markers designating the pipe as gas.
b. Tanks that do not have factory applied finished.
c. Exposed, uninsulated ductwork.
1) Paint visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
d. Metal and Plastic conduit.
e. Other items as directed by Architect.

F. Horizontal and Vertical Fire and/or Smoke Barriers: Permanently and effectively identify all fire and/or smoke barriers or walls with signs or stenciling above ceilings and in concealed spaces as follows:
1. Height: 2 inch high letters on a contrasting background.
2. Spacing: 12’-0” on center with minimum of one warning sign per barrier.
3. Wording: “(*) HOUR FIRE AND SMOKE BARRIER – PROTECT ALL OPENINGS” *Insert hourly rating of barrier of wall.
4. Horizontal shaft wall assemblies shall be identified on the top side in the same manner as above with the following working:
a. “WARNING: RATED CEILING ASSEMBLY – DO NOT WALK ON”

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
1. Water-Based Clear Sealer System: MPI INT 3.2G.
a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
2. Solvent-Based Clear Sealer System: MPI INT 3.2F.
a. First Coat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.
b. Topcoat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.

B. CMU Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 4.2D.
   a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #141.
2. Epoxy System for Wet Environments: MPI INT 4.2.G.
   a. Prime Coat: Block Filler, Epoxy, MPI #116.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Two component epoxy, MPI #77.
   c. Topcoat: Two component epoxy, MPI #77.

C. Steel Substrates:
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.1R.
   a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anti-corrosive, for metal**,** MPI #79 or primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal**,** MPI #76.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5)**,** MPI #141.

D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: (not chromate passivated, do not field apply primers to chromate passivated galvanized metal)
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.3M.
   a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #141.
2. Epoxy Coating System: MPI INT 5.3D.
   a. Prime Coat: Two Component epoxy primer, MPI #101.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Two Component epoxy, MPI #77.

E. Wood Substrates: Including wood trim, architectural woodwork, doors, windows, wood-based panel products, glued-laminated construction, exposed joists and exposed beams.
1. Polyurethane Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.1J, MPI INT 6.2J, MPI INT 6.3E, MPI INT 6.4E.
   a. Stain Coat: Interior wood stain, MPI #90.
   b. Prime Coat: Polyurethane, interior oil modified, MPI #56 (gloss), MPI #57 (satin).
   c. Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, interior oil modified, matching topcoat.
   d. Topcoat: Polyurethane, interior oil modified (Satin), MPI #57.

F. Gypsum Board or Plaster Substrates:
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System:
   a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, (Gloss Level 3), MPI #139.

**END OF SECTION 09 91 23**
**01-697-027**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Panel signs.
2. Room-identification signs.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 10 13 00 "Directories" for building directories.
2. Section 10 14 26 "Post and Panel/Pylon Signage" for freestanding signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
2. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish provide manufacturer's standard color charts showing full range of available colors.
1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Interior Color Schedule and Color Boards.

D. Sign Schedule: Use same designations specified or indicated on Drawings or in a sign schedule.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for signs.

2.2 EXTERIOR PANEL SIGNS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allen Industries, Inc.
2. APCO Graphics, Inc.
3. Architectural Graphics, Inc.
4. Bayuk Graphics Systems, Inc.
5. Gemini, Inc.
6. InPro Corporation.
7. Kroy Sign Systems.
8. Mohawk Sign Systems.
9. Multi-Graphics.
10. REI Signs.
11. Sign International Inc.
12. Stanley Signature Signs.
13. Vomar Products, Inc.

B. Sign Type E – Exterior Room Signs: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Aluminum-Sheet Sign: One-piece solid aluminum sheet plaque with room name and number. Room numbers for signs will be assigned by the Owner and Architect. **Do not use room numbers from construction documents.**
a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.18 mm).
b. Size: 6 inches high by length required.

c. Graphics: 1/16-inch raised letters and symbols routered from solid aluminum sheet to produce precisely formed characters with square cut edges free from burrs and cut marks.
d. Background Texture: Sand.
e. Background Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
b. Corner Condition in Elevation: 3/4-inch radius.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR PANEL SIGNS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allen Industries, Inc.
2. APCO Graphics, Inc.
3. Architectural Graphics, Inc.
4. Bayuk Graphics Systems, Inc.
5. Gemini, Inc.
6. InPro Corporation.
7. Kroy Sign Systems.
8. Mohawk Sign Systems.
9. Multi-Graphics.
10. REI Signs.
11. Sign International Inc.
12. Stanley Signature Signs.
13. Vomar Products, Inc.

B. Sign Type A – Classroom Signs: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Two-ply acrylic, screen printed window plaque sign with classroom number and teacher's name. Room numbers for signs will be assigned by the Owner and Architect. **Do not use room numbers from construction documents.**
a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.188 inch (4.76 mm).
b. Size: 6 inches by 9 inches with 1 inch window positioned at center of sign.
c. Graphics: Accessible raised uppeercase letters complying with ADA and ADAAG, 1/2 –inch high for classroom and 5/8-inch high for teacher's name with Grade 2 Braille.
d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
b. Corner Condition in Elevation: 3/4- inch radius.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with silicone adhesive.

C. Sign Type B – Room Signs: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Two-ply acrylic, plaque sign with classroom name and number. Room numbers for signs will be assigned by the Owner and Architect. **Do not use room numbers from construction documents.**
a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.188 inch (4.76 mm).
b. Size: 6 inches by length required.
c. Graphics: Accessible raised uppeercase letters complying with ADA and ADAAG, 1 –inch high for room number and 5/8-inch high for teacher's name with Grade 2 Braille.
d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
b. Corner Condition in Elevation: 3/4- inch radius.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with silicone adhesive.

D. Sign Type C – Handicapped Toilet Room Signs: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Two-ply acrylic, plaque sign with room name, gender symbol and international handicapped symbol**.**
a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.188 inch (4.76 mm).
b. Size: 7 inches by 7 inches.
c. Graphics: Accessible raised uppeercase letters and symbols complying with ADA and ADAAG, 1 –inch high for room name with Grade 2 Braille.
d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.

a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
b. Corner Condition in Elevation: 3/4- inch radius.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with silicone adhesive.

2.4 FIELD-APPLIED, VINYL-CHARACTER SIGNS

A. Field-Applied, Vinyl-Character Sign: Prespaced characters die cut from 3- to 3.5-mil (0.076- to 0.089-mm) thick, weather-resistant vinyl film with release liner on the back and carrier film on the front for on-site alignment and application.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Allen Markings International.
b. APCO Graphics, Inc.
c. Architectural Graphics, Inc.
d. Bayuk Graphics Systems, Inc.
e. Gemini, Inc.
f. In-Pro Corporation.
g. Kroy Sign Systems.
h. Mohawk Sign Systems.
i. Milti-Graphics.
j. REI Signs.
k. Sign International Inc.
l. Stanley Signature Signs.
m. Vomar Products, Inc
2. Size: As indicated.
3. Substrate: As indicated.
4. Text and Font: As indicated.

2.5 PANEL-SIGN MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
C. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
D. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film of nominal thickness indicated, with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive on back; die cut to form characters or images as indicated and suitable for exterior applications.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signage, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless-steel or hot-dip galvanized devices unless otherwise indicated.
B. Adhesives: As recommended by sign manufacturer and with a VOC content of 70 g/L or less for adhesives used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
B. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
1. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner>.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
C. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
B. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
C. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.

B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.

2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.

3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

4. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Room-Identification Signs and Other Accessible Signage: Install in locations on walls as indicated and according to accessibility standard.

C. Mounting Methods:

1. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

D. Field-Applied, Vinyl-Character Signs: Clean and dry substrate. Align sign characters in final position before removing release liner. Remove release liner in stages, and apply and firmly press characters into final position. Press from the middle outward to obtain good bond without blisters or fishmouths. Remove carrier film without disturbing applied vinyl film.

E. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide opaque sheet matching sign material and finish onto opposite side of glass to conceal back of sign.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.

C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 10 14 23

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Public-use shower room accessories.
3. Custodial accessories.

B. Owner-Furnished Material: <paper towel holders>.

C. Related Sections:
1. Section 08 83 00 "Mirrors" for frameless mirrors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
1. Construction details and dimensions.
2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
3. Material and finish descriptions.
4. Features that will be included for Project.
5. Manufacturer's warranty.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Hand Dryer Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace hand dryers that fail due to defective materials or workmanship (except motor brushes) within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.

C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.

D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.

E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.

G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).

H. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
2. American Specialties, Inc.
3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
4. Bradley Corporation.
5. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

6. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 0030
   **a. Bobrick; B-2888.**
   **b. Bradley; 5402**
   **c. GAMCO; TTD-5**
   **d. A & J; U840**
   **e. Tubular; 310**
2. Description: Roll-in-reserve dispenser with hinged front secured with tumbler lockset.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
4. Operation: Noncontrol delivery with theft-resistant spindle.
5. Capacity: Designed for 5 1/4-inch- (133-mm-) diameter tissue rolls.
6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

C. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 0345
   **a. Bobrick; B-2112.**
   **b. Bradley; 6543**
   **c. GAMCO; G-58AP**
   **d. A & J; U124**
2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid form.
3. Mounting: Horizontally oriented, surface mounted.
4. Capacity: 40 oz. (1183 mL).
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
6. Lockset: Tumbler type.
7. Refill Indicator: Window type.

D. Grab Bar:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 3800 Series
   **a. Bobrick; B-6806 Series.**
   **b. Bradley; 812 Series**
   **c. GAMCO; 150C Series**
   **d. A & J; UG3 Series**
   **e. Tubular; H/CS-1**
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
   a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin).
4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
5. Length:
   a. Back Wall of Toilet Stall: Straight, 36 inches (914 mm) long.
   b. Side Wall of Toilet Stall: Straight, 42 inches (1066.8 mm) long.
   c. Back Wall of Combination Tub/Shower: Straight, 24 inches (609.6 mm) long (2 required).
   d. Control Wall of Combination Tub/Shower: Straight, 24 inches (609.6 mm) long.
   e. Side Wall of Combination Tub/Shower: Straight, 12 inches (304.8 mm) long.
   f. 36 inch by 36 inch Transfer Shower Stall w/ Seat: L-shaped bar, 15.875 inches by 30.875 inches (403.22 mm by 784.22 mm).
   g. 30 inch by 60 inch Roll-In Shower Stall w/ Seat: L-shaped, 24 inches by 36 inches (609.6 mm by 914 mm).
   h. 30 inch by 60 inch Roll-In Shower w/o Seat: back wall, 48 inches (1219 mm) long; side wall, 24 inches (609.6 mm) long; control wall, 24 inches (609.6 mm) long.

E. Mirror Unit:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 0620-2448
   **a. Bobrick; B-156 2448.**
   **b. Bradley; 781 Series**
   **c. GAMCO; C-Series**
   **d. A & J; U711**
   **e. Tubular; M-021 Series**
2. Frame: Stainless-steel channel, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick with bright polish finish.
   a. Corners: Mitered.
3. Mirror: No. 1 quality, 1/4-inch (6 mm) select float glass.
4. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
   a. Wall bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.

5. Size: 24 inch by 48 inch (609.6 mm by 609.6 mm).

2.3 PUBLIC-USE SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
2. American Specialties, Inc.
3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
4. Bradley Corporation.
5. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
6. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

B. Shower Curtain Rod ( Provide 1 at each shower):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 1214 Series
   **a. Bobrick; B-6107 .**
   **b. Bradley; 953.**
   **c. GAMCO; SR-100 Series**
   **d. A & J; UX1**
   **e. Tubular; SH-1 Series**
2. Description: 1-inch (25.4-mm) OD; fabricated from nominal 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm) thick stainless steel.
3. Mounting Flanges: Stainless-steel flanges designed for exposed fasteners.
4. Finish: No. 4 (satin).

C. Shower Curtain (Provide 1 at each shower):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 1200-V42 for shower stalls; 1200-v72 for tub/shower.
   **a. Bobrick; 204-2 for shower stalls; Bobrick 204-3 for tub/shower.**
   **b. Bradley; 9533**
   **c. GAMCO; 100SC 42x 72 for shower stalls; 100SC 72x 72 for tub/shower.**
   **d. A & J; UX250 Series.**
   **e. Tubular; SCV Series**
2. Material: 0.008-inch- (0.2-mm-) thick vinyl, with integral antibacterial and flame retardant agents.
3. Color: White.
4. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches (152 mm) o.c. through top hem.
5. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless-steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.

D. Folding Shower Seat:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 8206-L/R
   **a. Bobrick; B-5181.**
   **b. Bradley; 9569**
   **c. GAMCO; 5181**
2. Configuration: L-shaped folding seat, designed for wheelchair access.
3. Seat: 1/2- inch thick solid phenolic one-piece construction.
4. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
5. Dimensions: 33 inches by 20.875 inches (838.2 mm by 530.22 mm).

E. Soap Dish(Provide 1 at each shower):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 0401
   **a. Bobrick; B-4380 (for stud walls).**
   **b. Bradley; 9401**
   **c. GAMCO; 211**
   **d. Tubular; 828**
2. Description: Without washcloth bar.
3. Mounting: Recessed.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, matt polished finish (satin).

F. Towel Bar(Provide 1 at each shower):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: American Specialties; 3000 Series
   **a. Bobrick; B-530.**
   **b. Bradley; 852**
2. Description: 1-inch (25.4-mm) OD; fabricated from nominal 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm) thick stainless steel.
3. Mounting: Concealed with snap flange covers.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
2. American Specialties, Inc.

3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
4. Bradley Corporation.
5. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
6. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

**B.** Utility Shelf with Mop and Broom Holder (Provide one at each Janitors closet):

**1.** Basis-of-Design Product: **American Specialties; 1315-4**

**a. Bobrick; B-224.**

2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
3. Length: 36 inches (914 mm).
4. Hooks: Three.
5. Mop/Broom Holders: Four, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
   a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
   b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter stainless steel.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.

B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.

B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
1. Portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers.
2. Cabinets for fire extinguishers.
3. Mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

B. Owner-Furnished Material: Hand-carried fire extinguishers.

C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 23 38 13 "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods" for fire-extinguishing systems provided as part of commercial-kitchen exhaust hoods.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher, cabinets and mounting brackets. For cabinets, include roughing-in dimensions elevations, sections and details of mounting methods and attachment to other work.

B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Schedule and coordinate fire-extinguishers with fire extinguisher cabinets to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Rated Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with size of fire extinguisher cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
1. Amerex Corporation.
2. Ansul Incorporated.
3. Badger Fire Protection.
4. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
5. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
6. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
7. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division; Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
8. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
9. Nystrom Building Products.
10. Potter Roemer LLC.

B. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.

C. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

E. Wet-Chemical Type for Use in Commercial Kitchens with Class K Hazards: UL-rated 2-A:1-B:C:K, 2.5-gal. (9.5-L) nominal capacity, with potassium acetate, potassium citrate or potassium carbonate-based chemical in stainless-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

F. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.3 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for portable hand-carried fire extinguisher.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
      b. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division, Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
      c. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
      d. Potter Roemer LLC.

B. Cabinet Construction: Manufacturer’s standard box construction for installation in nonrated, 1-hour fire rated or 2-hour fire rated wall construction as indicated on the Drawings.
   1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick, fire-barrier material to comply with requirements of ASTM E 814 for the fire-resistance of wall where it is installed. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

D. Semi-recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
   1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 4-inch (102-mm) backbend depth.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes.

F. Door Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes, ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).

G. Door Style: Center glazed panel with frame.

H. Door Glazing: Clear transparent acrylic sheet, ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), 3 mm thick with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated. Provide projecting door pull and friction latch and continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

K. Finishes:
   1. Aluminum: Clear anodic.
   2. Steel: Baked enamel or powder coat.

L. FABRICATION
   1. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
      a. Weld joints and grind smooth.
      b. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
      c. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
      d. Install door locks at factory.
   2. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
      a. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      b. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
      c. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
   3. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

M. FINISHES - GENERAL
   1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
   2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
   3. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.
   4. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

N. ALUMINUM FINISHES

1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, [AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm] [AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm] or thicker.

O. STEEL FINISHES

1. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning" or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling". After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
3. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 MOUNTING BRACKETS FOR WALL MOUNTED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Amerex Corporation.
   b. Ansul Incorporated.
   c. Badger Fire Protection.
   d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
   e. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
   f. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
   g. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
   h. Nystrom Building Products.
   i. Potter Roemer LLC.

B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied horizontally to mounting surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semi-recessed cabinets are to be installed.

B. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer’s written instructions and install fire extinguishers, cabinets and mounting brackets in locations and at heights indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Prepare recesses for cabinets as required for type and size of cabinet and trim style.
2. Fasten mounting brackets and cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Adjust cabinet doors to swing and operate freely.

B. Refinish of replace cabinets and cabinet doors that are damaged during installation.

C. Provide protection and maintain conditions to ensure that cabinets and cabinet doors remain free from damage until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10 44 16

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Welded athletic lockers.
2. Welded, open-front athletic lockers.
3. HDPE, open-front athletic lockers.
4. Locker stools.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of metal locker.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of locker.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Show locker trim and accessories.
2. Include locker identification system and numbering sequence.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of locker or bench specified, provide manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of recessed openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete or concrete masonry bases for lockers.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, structural failures and faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
3. Warranty Period for Lockers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain lockers, locker benches, and accessories from single source from single locker manufacturer.

1. Obtain locks from single lock manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Requirements: For lockers indicated to be accessible, comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.

2.3 WELDED ATHLETIC LOCKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Art Metal Products.
2. ASI Storage Solutions.
3. DeBourgh Mfg. Co.
4. List Industries Inc.
5. Olympus Lockers & Storage Products, Inc.
6. Penco Products, Inc.
7. Republic Storage Systems Company.
8. WEC Manufacturing.

B. Configuration: As shown on the Drawings and as follows:

1. Height: 72 inches.
2. Width: **15** inches.

3. Depth: **15** inches.
4. Number of tiers: **2**.

C. Expanded-Metal Doors: Fabricated from 0.090-inch (2.28-mm) nominal-thickness expanded metal; welded to 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel angle frame; with 0.090-inch (2.28-mm) nominal-thickness, steel sheet lock panel backed by 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness, steel sheet retainer welded to door frame.

D. Body: Assembled by welding body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
1. Tops and Bottoms: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness, with single bend at edges.
2. Backs: 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Shelves: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.

E. Perforated Sides: Fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet with manufacturer's standard diamond perforations.

F. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet or 0.097-inch (2.45-mm) nominal-thickness steel angles; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.

G. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
1. Knuckle Hinges: Steel, full loop, five or seven knuckles, tight pin; minimum 2 inches (51 mm) high. Provide no fewer than three hinges for each door more than 42 inches (1067 mm) high.
2. Continuous Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, steel; side or top mounted as required by locker configuration.

H. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Stainless-steel cup with integral door pull, recessed so locking device does not protrude beyond door face; pry and vandal resistant.
1. Multipoint Latching: Finger-lift latch control designed for use with built-in combination locks, built-in cylinder locks, or padlocks; positive automatic latching and prelocking.
a. Latch Hooks: Equip doors 48 inches (1219 mm) and higher with three latch hooks and doors less than 48 inches (1219 mm) high with two latch hooks; fabricated from 0.120-inch (3.04-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to full-height door strikes; with resilient silencer on each latch hook.
b. Latching Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard, rattle-free latching mechanism and moving components isolated to prevent metal-to-metal contact, and incorporating a prelocking device that allows locker door to be locked while door is open and then closed without unlocking or damaging lock or latching mechanism.

I. Locks: **Combination padlocks**.

J. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch (9 mm) high.

K. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.

L. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees and **vertical** ends.

M. Materials:
1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
2. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type II (flattened), Class I, 3/4-inch (19-mm) steel mesh, with at least 70 percent open area.

N. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
1. Color: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**.

2.4 WELDED, OPEN-FRONT ATHLETIC LOCKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Art Metal Products.
2. ASI Storage Solutions.
3. DeBourgh Mfg. Co.
4. List Industries Inc.
5. Penco Products, Inc.
6. Republic Storage Systems Company.
7. WEC Manufacturing.

B. Locker Arrangement: As shown on the Drawings and as follows:
1. Open front, with **seat/footlocker and full-width security compartment**.
2. Height: 72 inches.
3. Width: **24** inches.

4. Depth: **24** inches.

C. Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

D. Body: Assembled by welding body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
1. Tops and Bottoms: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness, with single bend at edges.
2. Backs: 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Shelves: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.

E. Expanded-Metal Sides: Fabricated from 0.090-inch (2.28-mm) nominal-thickness expanded metal; welded to 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel angles or 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel channel frames.

F. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet or 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel angles; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames.

G. Seats/Shelves: Full width of metal locker; channel formed; fabricated from 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; with stiffeners for reinforcement.

H. Seats/Footlockers: Enclosure full width of bottom of metal locker; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet.
1. Seat/Lid: 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; channel formed and reinforced with stiffeners; with manufacturer's standard, steel continuous hinge that is completely concealed and tamper resistant when seat/lid is closed; with padlock hasp.
2. Front Panel: 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; channel formed at top edge; with minilouvers for ventilation; recessed for padlock loop.
3. Sides: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet inside expanded-metal sides.

I. Security Boxes: Consisting of partition extending from upper shelf to top of metal locker, fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; with channel-formed, 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness, steel sheet door frame, and door fabricated from 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet with right-angle single bend at edges; with manufacturer's standard, steel continuous hinge that is completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
1. Single-Point Latching: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull with steel, nonmoving latch hook **with steel padlock loop that projects through door and is finished to match metal locker body**.

J. Security Compartments: Full width of metal locker, with door fabricated from 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
1. Single-Point Latching: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull with steel, nonmoving latch hook **with steel padlock loop that projects through door and is finished to match metal locker body**.

K. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch (9 mm) high.

L. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.

M. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees and **vertical** ends.

N. Materials:
1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
2. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type II (flattened), Class I, 3/4-inch (19-mm) steel mesh, with at least 70 percent open area.

O. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 HDPE OPEN-FRONT ATHLETIC LOCKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Art Metal Products.
2. ASI Storage Solutions.
3. Bradley Corporation.
4. Global Industries.
5. List Industries Inc.
6. Scranton Products.

B. Locker Arrangement: As shown on the Drawings and as follows:
1. Open front, with **seat/footlocker and full-width security compartment**.
2. Height: 72 inches.
3. Width: **24** inches.
4. Depth: **24** inches.

C. Material: High Density Polyethylene formed into solid plastic components with homogeneous color throughout and with smooth orange peel finish.

D. Tops, Bottoms, Backs, Filler Panels,, Shelves, Seats Lockers and Compartments: Fabricated from 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) HDPE. Provide sides with full mesh venting.

E. Seats/Shelves: Full width of HDPE locker; fabricated from 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet; with stiffeners for reinforcement.

F. Seats/Footlockers: Enclosure full width of bottom of HDPE locker; fabricated from 0.5-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet.

1. Seat/Lid: 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet and reinforced with stiffeners; with manufacturer's standard, extruded aluminum hinge that is completely concealed and tamper resistant when seat/lid is closed; with padlock hasp.
2. Front Panel: 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet with louvers for ventilation; recessed for padlock loop.
3. Sides: 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet mesh vented sides.

G. Security Boxes: Consisting of partition extending from upper shelf to top of metal locker, fabricated from 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet; with 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet door door with manufacturer's standard, estruded aluminum continuous hinge that is completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.

1. Single-Point Latching: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull with steel, nonmoving latch hook **with steel padlock loop that projects through door and is finished to match metal locker body**.

H. Security Compartments: Full width of metal locker, with door fabricated from 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) thick HDPE sheet.

1. Single-Point Latching: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull with steel, nonmoving latch hook **with steel padlock loop that projects through door and is finished to match metal locker body**.

I. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch (9 mm) high.

J. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.

K. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.50-inch (12.7-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees and **vertical** ends.

L. Locker Base: Fabricated from 1-inch thick HDPE sheet, 4-inches in height.

M. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 LOCKS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Locker Company; A Division of Master Lock Company, LLC.
2. Master Lock Company, LLC.
3. Zephyr Lock LLC.

B. Combination Padlocks: **Master No. 1525**. Provide one pad lock for each open face locker

C. Built-in Combination Locks: Key-controlled, three-number dialing combination locks; capable of at least five combination changes made automatically with a control key.

1. Bolt Operation: automatically locking spring bolt.
2. Basis-of-Design for Corridor Lockers: Master No. 1630MD for lockers with hinges on the right and No. 1631MD for lockers with hinges on the left.
3. Basis-of-Design for Athletic Lockers: Master No. 1654MD for lockers with hinges on the right and No. 1655MD for lockers with hinges on the left.

2.7 LOCKER STOOLS

A. Provide steel framed locker stools with a height of **24 inches (609.6 mm)** and a 13 inches (330.2 mm) in diameter seat.

1. Finish: Powder coat.
2. Cushion: 1 inch thick cushioned vinyl with a **2** color logo.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.

1. Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet or HDPE unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.

B. Fabricate each locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments. Factory weld metal frame members of each metal locker together to form a rigid, one-piece assembly. Fabricate HDPE locker components for snap together assembly or slide together dovetail connections.

C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:

1. Single-Tier Units: Shelf, one double-prong ceiling hook, and two single-prong wall hooks.
2. Double-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook and two single-prong wall hooks.
3. Open-Front Athletic Lockers: Two single-prong wall hooks bolted to locker back and coat rod.

D. Welded Construction: Factory preassemble metal lockers by welding all joints, seams, and connections; with no bolts, nuts, screws, or rivets used in assembly of main locker groups. Factory weld main locker groups into one-piece structures. Grind exposed welds flush.

E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:

1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.
2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.

F. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.

1. Sloping-top corner fillers, mitered.

G. Recess Trim: Fabricated with minimum 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) face width and in lengths as long as practical; finished to match lockers.

H. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.

I. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide edge dimension, and designed for concealing fasteners and holes at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.

1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.

B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.

1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls for corrosion resistance.
2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine walls, floors, and support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.

1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches (910 mm) o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top of lockers and to floor or concrete base.
3. Anchor back-to-back metal lockers to floor.

B. Lockers: Connect groups together with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.

C. Equipment:

1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
   a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two stainless steel rivets.
   b. Attach plates to upper shelf of each open-front metal locker, centered, with a least two stainless steel rivets.

D. Trim: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.

1. Attach recess trim to recessed lockers with concealed clips.
2. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.
3. Attach sloping-top units to lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
4. Attach boxed end panels using concealed fasteners to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed lockers.

E. Fixed Locker Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) apart. Securely fasten tops of pedestals to undersides of bench tops, and anchor bases to floor.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.

B. Touch up marred finishes, or replace lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10 51 13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes loading dock bumpers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of loading dock bumper.

B. Shop Drawings: For dock bumpers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DOCK BUMPERS

A. General: Surface-mounted bumpers; of type, size, and construction indicated; designed to absorb kinetic energy and minimize damage to loading dock structure.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Floor Products Company, Inc.

b. Beacon Industries, Inc.

c. Chalfant Sewing Fabricators, Inc.

d. Durable Corporation.

e. Hugger Dock Equipment Company.

f. Kelley; 4Front Engineered Solutions, Inc.

g. Pioneer Dock Equipment.

h. Rite-Hite Holding Corporation.

i. Rotary Products Inc.

j. Serco; 4Front Engineered Solutions, Inc.

k. Super Seal Mfg. Ltd.

l. Vestil Manufacturing Corp.

B. Molded-Rubber Dock Bumpers for Door Bollards: Fabricated from molded-rubber compound reinforced with nylon, rayon, or polyester cord; with Type A Shore durometer hardness of 80, plus or minus 5, when tested according to ASTM D 2240; of size and configuration indicated. Fabricate units with not less than two predrilled anchor holes and provided.

1. Configuration: Rectangular, 2 1/2 inches by 7 7/8 inches.

2. Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm).

C. Anchorage Devices: Galvanized-steel anchor bolts, nuts, washers, bolts, sleeves, cast-in-place plates, and other anchorage devices as required to fasten bumpers securely in place and to suit installation type indicated. Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

D. Materials: ASTM 36/A 36M for steel plates, shapes, and bars. Hot-dip galvanize according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Post Mounted Door Bumpers: 1/2 inch steel bolts with nuts and washers inside bumper.

B. Wall Mounted Door Bumpers: 5/8 inch by 4 1/2 inch one-piece steel expansion bolt with nut and washer to fit 5/8 inch by 2 7/8 inch minimum hole depth

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished dock bumpers, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 11 13 13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial clothes washer/extractors.
2. Commercial clothes dryers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, dimensions, furnished accessories and finishes for each appliance.

B. Product Schedule: List all commercial appliances using designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For installer and manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranties: Sample of special warranties for each type of equipment indicated.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each commercial appliance to include in operations and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that maintains a service center within 100 miles of Project site and that is capable of providing training, parts and emergence maintenance repairs.

B. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Provide commercial appliances that are listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 by a qualified testing agency and that are marked for intended location and application.

D. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct pre-installation conference at Project site with Installer, Owner's representative mechanical subcontractor and electrical subcontractor to schedule and coordinate installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard warranty form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace commercial appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Washer Warranty Period: Five (5) years from the date of Substantial Completion on frame, cylinder and shell; two (2) years from the date of Substantial Completion on microprocessor boards, main bearing assemblies and non-wearing parts.
2. Dryer Warranty Period: Two (2) years from the date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOTHES WASHER/EXTRACTOR

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pellerin Milnor Model 36021 V5J or equal product by one of the following manufacturers that has been approved by the Architect prior to bidding.

1. Cissell.
2. Continental Girbau, Inc.
3. Huebsch.
4. IPSO.
5. Primus.

B. Type: Freestanding front-loading.

C. Capacity: Minimum 80lb (36 kg).

D. Speeds: Multiple wash speeds, with reverse, for regular and delicate items.

E. Extraction Speeds: Multiple extraction speeds from 380 RPM to 540 RPM.

F. Drum: Perforated stainless steel.

G. Controls: Programmable microprocessor with push-button or touch pad controls.

H. Electrical Characteristics: As indicated on the Drawings.

I. Motor Size: 7.5 HP (350 kW).

J. Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 CLOTHES DRYER

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ADC Model AD-758V or equal product by one of the following manufacturers that has been approved by the Architect prior to bidding.

1. Cissell.
2. Continental Girbau, Inc.
3. Huebsch.
4. IPSO.
5. Pellerin Milnor Corp.
6. Primus.

B. Type Freestanding, frontloading.
C. Capacity: minimum 75 lbs (34 kg).
D. Controls: Programmable microprocessor with touch-pad controls and LED display.
E. Electrical Characteristics: As indicated on the Drawings.
F. Tumbler Motor: 1 HP (0.75 kW).
G. Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine designated location and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, piping rough-ins, exhaust rough-ins and other conditions affecting installation and performance of commercial appliances.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with equipment manufacturer's written instructions for installation, set-up and start-up.
B. Place freestanding appliances in locations indicated or as directed by the Owner, only after all interior finishes have been completed.
C. Verify that clearances with adjacent construction or equipment are adequate for proper operation of appliances.
D. Utility Connections: Make plumbing and electrical connections to comply with plumbing and electrical codes and requirements.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Representative: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, appliance installations, utility connections and to assist in field testing installed appliances.
B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Perform visual, mechanical and electrical tests and inspections for each appliance according to manufacturer's written instructions. Certify compliance with each of the manufacturer's appliance performance parameters.
   2. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair and retest until no leaks exist.
   3. Operational Test: After installation, start each appliance to confirm proper operation through all cycles.
   4. Controls: Test and adjust controls and safeties; replace damaged or malfunctioning components.
   5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate and maintain the appliances.

END OF SECTION 11 31 13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Structural-steel framing.
2. Metal roof panels.
3. Metal wall panels.
4. Metal soffit panels.
5. Thermal insulation.
6. Accessories and trim.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Terminology Standard: See MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's product data for all thermal insulation and underlayment materials demonstrating compliance with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following metal building system components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Delegated Design: For components indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data with shop drawings signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Anchor-Bolt Plans: Submit anchor-bolt plans and templates **before** foundation work begins. Include location, diameter, and projection of anchor bolts required to attach metal building to foundation. Indicate column reactions at each location.
3. Structural-Framing Drawings: Show complete fabrication of **primary and** secondary framing; include provisions for openings. Indicate welds and bolted connections, distinguishing between shop and field applications. Include transverse cross-sections. Indicate whether bolted connections are required to be tightened to snug-tight or slip critical condition.
   a. Show provisions for supporting and attaching roof mounted equipment including roof curbs, platforms and pipe racks.
4. Metal **Roof and Wall** Panel Layout Drawings: Show layouts of panels including methods of support. Include details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, custom profiles, corners, supports, anchorages, trim, flashings, ridge vents, closures, sealant locations, and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
5. Show roof-mounted items including roof hatches, equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, lighting fixtures, and items mounted on roof curbs.
6. Show wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
7. Accessory Drawings: Include details of flashing and trim, gutters, downspouts, ventilators, louvers, and roof curbs at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For all components with factory-applied color finish, provide manufacturer's standard color charts showing the full range of colors available.
1. Sample submittals are required before preparation of Architect's Exterior Color Schedule.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Metal Building System Certificates: Letter of Design Certification from the Manufacturer, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Include the following:
1. Name and location of Project.
2. Order number.
3. Name of manufacturer.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Building dimensions including width, length, height, and roof slope.
6. Indicate compliance IAS standards.
7. Governing building code and year of edition.
8. Design Loads: Include dead load, roof live load, collateral loads, roof snow load, deflection, wind loads/speeds and exposure, seismic design category or effective peak velocity-related acceleration/peak acceleration, and auxiliary loads (cranes).
9. Load Combinations: Indicate that loads were applied acting simultaneously with concentrated loads, according to governing building code.
10. Building-Use Category: Indicate category of building use and its effect on load importance factors.

11. IAS Certification: Include statement that metal building system and components were designed and produced in an IAS-Certified Facility by an IAS-Certified Manufacturer.

B. Erector Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that erector is qualified to install the building and roofing systems.

C. Third Party Inspection Reports: Certified third party inspection reports as required by the Quality Assurance provisions of this Section.

D. Third Party Roof Certification: Independent third party inspector firm's certification that roof system is approved to receive the specified watertightness warranty.

E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panel finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Member of MBMA with IAS Certification for Metal Building Systems.

1. IAS Certification: An IAS Certified manufacturer that maintains IAS Certification for Parts A, B & C for complete metal building systems or Parts B & C for metal roofing and wall panel systems.

B. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

C. Manufacturer shall maintain a certified erector/installer program for its products and shall maintain an up-to-date certified erectors/installers. Erector/Installer shall provide proof of certification and shall be on site at all times during erection and installation.

D. Third Party Inspection Firm: Manufacturer shall employ an approved and certified independent third party inspection firm for periodic roof inspections. Third party inspector shall inspect the roof installation, or each segment of the roof installation, at start-up, at mid-point and at completion of roof installation, or as required by the manufacturer, and shall provide a Certificate of Compliance for each inspection. For projects exceeding 50,000 s.f. of roof area, the third party inspector shall provide an additional series of inspections for each 25,000 s.f. of roof area over the minimum 50,000 s.f. requirement. The third party inspector shall also certify that the roof system is approved to receive a manufacturer's 20 year, no dollar limit warranty with no exclusions. All third party inspection reports shall be sent to the Contractor/Construction Manager and to the Architect.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice structural engineering in jurisdiction where Project is located.

F. Erector/Installer Qualifications: An experienced erector/installer, certified by the manufacturer, who specializes in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

G. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

H. Source Limitations: Obtain metal building system components, including primary and secondary framing and metal panel assemblies, from single source from single manufacturer.

I. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

J. Structural Steel: Comply with AISC 360, "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings," for design requirements and allowable stresses.

K. Cold-Formed Steel: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" for design requirements and allowable stresses.

L. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where assemblies are indicated as fire-rated, provide metal panel assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, sheets, panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when weather conditions permit metal panels to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Established Dimensions for Foundations: Comply with established dimensions on approved anchor-bolt plans, establishing foundation dimensions and proceeding with fabricating structural framing without field measurements. Coordinate anchor-bolt installation to ensure that actual anchorage dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-bolt inserts into foundation walls and footings. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Furnish and coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, ventilators and roof penetrations, which are specified in this or other Sections.

C. Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Metal Roof and Wall Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof or wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes for a warranty period of **20** years from Substantial Completion.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.

b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.

c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

B. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard, **no dollar limit**, form with **no exclusions,** signed by the manufacturer and manufacturer's certified installer, agreeing to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that leak or otherwise fail to remain weathertight for a warranty period or **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

1. Materials and assemblies include, but are not limited to, sub-framing, clips panels, fasteners, rakes, eaves, hips, roof and wall flashings, ridge vents, roof curbs, equipment supports and penetration flashings.

2. Weathertightness Warranty shall be issued only after the roofing system installation has been approved and certified by the independent third party inspection firm.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. A&S Building Systems, Inc.; Division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
2. ACI Building Systems, Inc.
3. American Buildings Company; Division of Magnatrax Corp.
4. AIM Metals, LLC.
5. Bigbee Steel Buildings, Inc.
6. Butler Manufacturing Company; a BlueScope Steel company.
7. Ceco Building Systems; Division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
8. Chief Buildings; Division of Chief Industries, Inc.
9. Gulf States Manufacturers, Inc.; Division of Magnatrax Corp.
10. Inland Buildings; Subsidiary of Behlen Mfg. Co.
11. Kirby Building Systems; Division of Magnatrax Corp.
12. Mesco Building Solutions; Division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
13. Metallic Building Company; Division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
14. Nucor Building Systems.
15. Rigid Building Systems.
16. Star Building Systems; an NCI company.
17. Steelox Systems Inc.
18. USA, Inc.
19. VP Buildings; a United Dominion company.
20. Vulcan Steel Structures, Inc.
21. Whirlwind Building Systems.

2.2 METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

A. Description: Provide a complete, integrated set of mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior.

1. Provide metal building system of size and with bay spacings, roof slopes, and spans indicated.

B. Primary-Frame Type:

1. Rigid Clear Span: Solid-member, structural-framing system without interior columns. Columns are to be straight leg columns, limited to a depth of 24" up to a height acceptable to the architect.

C. End-Wall Framing for Buildings Not Required to be Expandable: Where drawings indicate that end-wall need not be expandable, provide primary frame, capable of supporting one-half of a bay design load, and end-wall columns.

D. Secondary-Frame Type: Manufacturer's standard purlin, joist and girt support framing, as shown on the drawings, that has been analyzed and certified by a registered structural engineer.
E. Eave Height: As indicated on the Drawings.
F. Bay Spacing: As indicated on the Drawings.
G. Roof Slope: As indicated on the Drawings.
H. Roof System: Manufacturer's standard **vertical-rib, standing-seam** metal roof panels with field-installed insulation and with specially pigmented fluoropolymer coating system that will provide reflectance and emittance values that are EnergyStar and LEED 2.1 compliant.
I. Exterior Wall System: Manufacturer's standard concealed-fastener metal wall panels with field-installed insulation.

2.3 METAL BUILDING SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Delegated Design: Design metal building system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
B. Structural Performance: Metal building systems shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Structural Steel Members: Comply with AISC 360-10, “Specification for Structural Steel Buildings”.
2. Cold-Formed Steel Members: Comply with AISC SG-671, “Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members”.
3. Code Compliance: Design primary and secondary members and coverings for applicable loads and combination of loads according to latest edition of the International Building Code.
4. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1, “Structural Welding Code-Steel” and AWS D1.3, “Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel”.
5. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
6. Live Loads: Include vertical loads induced by the building occupancy indicated. Include loads induced by maintenance workers, materials, and equipment for roof live loads.
7. Live Loads: 20 lbs. per s.f. Tributary area live load reduction is permitted in accordance with the International Building Code.
8. Dead Loads: Weight of all building components furnished by the metal building systems manufacturer.
9. Wind, Snow and Seismic Loads: Comply with the latest edition of the International Building Code for appropriate zones and load factors.
10. Collateral Loads: Unless indicated otherwise on the Structural Drawings, include a minimum of 8 lbs. per s.f. for additional dead loads including, but not limited to, water piping, mechanical systems, electrical systems, sprinkler systems and ceilings.
11. Special Conditions: Manufacturer shall examine the plans for any special conditions including, but not limited to, mechanical unit loads, hanging loads from metal stud and gypsum board bulkheads and ceilings, wind loads and special deflection criteria for girts and purlins, and support of architectural items such as basketball goals.
12. Load Combinations: Design metal building and roof systems to withstand the most critical effects of load factors and load combinations.
13. Deflection Limits: Design and engineer metal building system assemblies to withstand design loads with deflections no greater than the following:
a. Purlins and Rafters: Vertical deflection of **l/240** of the span.
b. Girts: Horizontal deflection of **l/240** of the span.
c. Roof Panels: Vertical deflection of **l/240** of the span.
d. Wall Panels: Horizontal deflection of **l/240** of the span.
e. Rigid Frame: Horizontal deflection of **H/200**.
f. Design secondary-framing system to accommodate deflection of primary framing and construction tolerances, and to maintain clearances at openings.
14. Drift Limits: Engineer building structure to withstand design loads with lateral drift limits no greater than **1/200** of the building height.
15. Metal panel assemblies shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASTM E 1592.
C. Seismic Performance: Metal building systems shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7-10.
D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Air Infiltration for Metal Roof Panels: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of roof area when tested according to ASTM E 2178 at static test-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).

F. Air Infiltration for Metal Wall Panels: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 2178 at static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).

G. Water Penetration for Metal Roof Panels: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at test-pressure difference of 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).

H. Water Penetration for Metal Wall Panels: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a wind-load design pressure of not less than 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).

I. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of resisting the appropriate wind loads prescribed by the current edition of the International Building Code. Spacing of the panel clip to the substrate shall be determined according to ASTM E 1592. Roof panel assemblies must also comply with UL 580 for Class 90. Should conflicts arise between IBC and UL 580, comply with the most stringent requirements.

J. Design Wind Pressures: Refer to structural drawings for design wind pressures for corner, perimeter and field zones for roof components and cladding per IBC and ASCE 7.

K. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal panel assemblies with the following maximum U-factors and minimum R-values for opaque elements when tested according to ASTM C 1363 or ASTM C 518:

1. Metal Roof Panel Assemblies:
   a. R-Value: R-20
2. Metal Wall Panel Assemblies:
   a. R-Value: R-13

L. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 for roofs with slopes of 2:12 or less and not less than 29 for roofs with slopes greater than 2:12 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

M. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels, with specially formulated pigments, that are listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR Roof Products Qualified Product List for low-slope (slopes of 2:12 of less) or steep-slope (slopes steeper that 2:12) roof products. Refer to Drawings for roof slopes.

2.4 STRUCTURAL-STEEL FRAMING

A. Primary Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary-framing system, designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Primary framing includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafter, rake and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing.

1. General: Provide frames with attachment plates, bearing plates, and splice members. Factory drill for field-bolted assembly. Provide frame span and spacing indicated.
2. Rigid Clear-Span Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
3. Frame Configuration: As indicated on the Drawings.
4. Exterior Column Type: As indicated on the Drawings.
5. Rafter Type: As indicated on the Drawings.

B. End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary end-wall framing fabricated for field-bolted assembly to comply with the following:

1. End-Wall and Corner Columns: I-shaped sections fabricated from structural-steel shapes; shop-welded, built-up steel plates.
2. End-Wall Rafters: C-shaped, cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; or I-shaped sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes.

C. Secondary Framing: Manufacturer's standard secondary framing, including purlins, girts, eave struts, flange bracing, base members, gable angles, clips, headers, jambs, and other miscellaneous structural members. Fabricate framing from either cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or roll-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, prepainted with coil coating, to comply with the following:

1. Purlins: C- or Z-shaped sections; minimum 0.0598-inch thick steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; minimum 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) wide flanges.
2. Girts: C- or Z-shaped sections; minimum 0.0598-inch thick steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes. Form ends of Z-sections with stiffening lips angled 40 to 50 degrees from flange, with minimum 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) wide flanges.
3. Eave Struts: Unequal-flange, C-shaped sections; minimum 0.0598-inch thick steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; to provide adequate backup for metal panels.
4. Flange Bracing: Minimum 2-by-2-by-1/8-inch (51-by-51-by-3-mm) structural-steel angles, with a minimum thickness of 0.0598-inches, to stiffen primary-frame flanges.
5. Sag Bracing: Minimum 1-by-1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-25-by-3-mm) structural-steel angles.

6. Base or Sill Angles: Minimum 3-by-2-by-0.0747 inch (76-by-51-mm) zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
7. Purlin and Girt Clips: Minimum 0.0747-inch thick steel sheet. Provide galvanized clips where clips are connected to galvanized framing members.
8. Secondary End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from minimum 0.0747-inch thick structural-steel sheet.
9. Framing for Openings: Channel shapes; fabricated from minimum 0.0598-inch thick cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or structural-steel shapes. Frame head and jamb of door openings and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.
10. Miscellaneous Structural Members: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; built-up steel plates; or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; designed to withstand required loads.

D. Canopy Framing: Manufacturer's standard structural-framing system designed to withstand required loads; fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Provide frames with attachment plates and splice members, factory drilled for field-bolted assembly.

E. Bracing: Provide adjustable wind bracing as follows:
1. Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M; ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345); or ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345); minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter steel; threaded full length or threaded a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) at each end.
2. Cable: ASTM A 475, 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter, extra-high-strength grade, Class B, zinc-coated, seven-strand steel; with threaded end anchors.
3. Rigid Portal Frames: Fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
4. Bracing: Where x-bracing using rods or cables cannot be utilized, provide stability with portal frames. Fixed-base columns are not allowed.

F. Bolts: Provide plain-finish bolts for structural-framing components that are primed or finish painted. Provide zinc-plated bolts for structural-framing components that are galvanized or where structural framing is in direct contact with roof or wall panels.

G. Materials:
1. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M; ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).
2. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes, and S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M; ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).
3. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M; ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).
4. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
5. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B or C, structural tubing.
6. Structural-Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 30 through 55 (205 through 380), or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS), Grades 45 through 70 (310 through 480); or cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 25 through 80 (170 through 550), or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS), Grades 45 through 70 (310 through 480).
7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 33 through 80 (230 through 550),) or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS), Grades 50 through 80 (340 through 550); with G60 (Z180) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
8. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Prepainted with Coil Coating: Steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 33 through 80 (230 through 550),) or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS), Grades 50 through 80 (340 through 550); with G90 (Z275) coating designation.
   b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50 or 80 (340 or 550); with Class AZ50 (AZM150) coating.
9. Non-High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) carbon-steel hex nuts; and ASTM F 844 plain (flat) steel washers.
   a. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
   b. Finish when in direct contact with panels: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
10. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325ASTM A 490 ASTM A 490M ((ASTM A 325M) or), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
   a. Finish: Plain, uncoated.

b. Finish when in direct contact with panels: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 or cadmium-plated.

11. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex-head steel structural bolts with spline ends.
    a. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
    b. Finish when in direct contact with panels: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
12. Anchor Rods, Nuts and Washers:
    a. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
    b. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6).
    c. Configuration: Straight.
    d. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
    e. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
    f. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon steel.
    g. Finish: [Plain] [Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C] [Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50].
13. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) ASTM A 36/A 36M.
    a. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
    b. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
    c. Finish: Plain, uncoated.

H. Finish: Factory primed. Apply specified primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
1. Apply primer to primary and secondary framing to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
    a. Prime secondary framing formed from uncoated steel sheet to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm) on each side.
2. Prime galvanized members with specified primer after phosphoric acid pretreatment.
3. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, Type I, red oxide.

2.5 METAL ROOF PANELS

A. Vertical-Rib, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and **flat pan** between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels.
1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) (24 gage) nominal thickness.
    a. Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer.
    b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Clips: Manufacturer's standard, floating type to accommodate thermal movement; fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel, or stainless-steel sheet.
3. Joint Type: Mechanically seamed, single folded or double folded according to manufacturer's standard.
4. Panel Coverage: 16 inches (406 mm).
5. Seam Height: 2 inches (51 mm).
6. Uplift Rating: UL 90.

B. Materials:
1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted-flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
    a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
    b. Surface: Smooth, flat.

C. Finishes:
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat with specially formulated pigments that will provide the minimum initial reflectance and thermal emittance required to comply with EnergyStar and LEED 2.1 requirements. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2.6 METAL WALL PANELS

A. Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and flush surface; with flush joint between panels; with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide flange for attaching interior finish; designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps.
   1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      a. Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer.
      b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   2. Panel Coverage: 16 inches (406 mm).
   3. Panel Height: 3 inches (76 mm).

B. Materials:
   1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted-flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
      a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
      b. Surface: **Smooth, flat**.

C. Finishes:
   1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2.7 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

A. Concealed-Fastener Metal Soffit Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and flush surface; with flush joint between panels; with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide flange for attaching interior finish; designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) (24 gage) nominal thickness.
      a. Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer.
      b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   2. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).
   3. Panel Height: 1 inch (25 mm).

2.8 THERMAL INSULATION

A. General: Provide insulation materials with fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products according to test method indicated by UL or another testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Surface Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
   2. Fire Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
   3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

B. 2-Layer Glass-Fiber-Blanket Insulation System:
   1. Insulation – Upper Layer: ASTM C 991, Type I, vinyl-faced, glass-fiber-blanket insulation; 0.5-lb/cu. ft. (8-kg/cu. m) density; 2-inch- (51-mm-) wide, continuous, vapor-tight edge tabs; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less. Thickness as indicated on the drawings.
      a. Vapor-Retarder Facing: ASTM C 1136, with permeance not greater than 0.02 perm (1.15 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method.
         1) Composition: White vinyl film facing, fiberglass scrim reinforcement, and metallized-polyester film backing.
   2. Insulation – Lower Layer: ASTM C 991, Type I, unfaced, glass-fiber-blanket insulation;; 0.5-lb/cu. ft. (8-kg/cu. m) density; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less. Thickness as indicated on the Drawings.
   3. Steel Straps: Galvanized Steel, with a minimum yield strength of 100 KSI, primed and painted to match liner fabric color.
      a. Size: 0.02 inch thick by 1 inch wide and continuous length.
   4. Fasteners #12 x 3/4 inch, plated, self-drilling screws with sealing washers painted to match specified color.

5. Polyethylene Liner Fabric- Vinyl film laminated on both sides of high density reinforcing fabric and complying with ASTM C 1136, with permeance not greater than 0.02 perm (1.15 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method.
6. Sealant: Solvent-based vapor barrier sealant or 3/4 inch wide by 1/32 inch thick extruded double sided, vapor barrier, sealant tape.
7. Thermal Break: 3/16 inch thick by 3 inch wide closed cell polyethylene foam tape.
8. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide accessories as standard with building system manufacturer and as specified. Fabricate and finish accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

B. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same material as metal roof panels.
2. Clips: Manufacturer's standard, formed from steel sheet, designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
3. Cleats: Manufacturer's standard, mechanically seamed cleats formed from steel sheet.
4. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
5. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
6. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal panels attach directly to purlins, provide thermal spacer blocks of thickness required to provide 1-inch (25-mm) standoff; fabricated from extruded polystyrene.

C. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same material as metal wall panels.
2. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

D. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating; finished to match adjacent metal panels.
1. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Provide ridge rake cap **without** manufacturer’s nameplate.
2. Opening Trim: Formed from 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Trim head and jamb of door openings, and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.

E. Gutters: Formed from 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) nominal-thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating; finished to match roof fascia and rake trim or color selected by the Architect. Match profile of gable trim, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 20-foot 0-inch- (6.96-m-) long sections, sized according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
1. Gutter Supports: Fabricated from same material and finish as gutters.
2. Strainers: Bronze, copper, or aluminum wire ball type at outlets.

F. Downspouts: Formed from 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) nominal-thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating; finished to match gutters or as selected by the Architect. Fabricate in minimum 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets.
1. Size: 4-inches by 6-inches.
2. Mounting Straps: Fabricated from same material and finish as downspouts.

G. Louvers: Refer to Section 08 90 00, “Louvers and Vents”.

H. Roof Curbs: Side rib to side rib type curb fabricated from minimum 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) nominal-thickness, aluminum sheet prepainted with coil coating; finished to match metal roof panels; with welded top box and bottom skirt, and integral full-length cricket; capable of withstanding loads indicated.

1. Size: Coordinate size and height with mechanical equipment specified and provided and with the roof slope to maintain manufacturer's recommended minimum height above the roof panel.
2. Curb Subframing: Fabricated from 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) nominal-thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped metallic-coated steel sheet.
3. Insulation: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid type.

I. Pipe Flashing: Premolded, EPDM pipe collar with flexible aluminum ring bonded to base and a stainless steel clamp at top of flashing.

J. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide fasteners with heads matching color of materials being fastened by means of factory-applied coating.
1. "Long Life" Fasteners for Metal Roof Panels: Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless-steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless-steel hex washer head, with EPDM washer under heads of fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels, compatible with required warranties.
2. "Long Life" Fasteners for Metal Wall Panels: Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless-steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless-steel hex washer head, with EPDM sealing washers bearing on weather side of metal panels, compatible with required warranties.
3. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws with hex washer head compatible with required warranties. Use Tapcon screws for attaching trim to masonry.
4. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets.
5. Mechanical Fasteners for Attaching Board Insulation: Self-tapping galvanized steel screws of gauge recommended by insulation manufacturer and of sufficient length to securely anchor insulation and withstand all superimposed loads; complete with 1-1/2 inch diameter PVC discs.

K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
2. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
3. Metal Panel Sealants:
   a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene-compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape of manufacturer's standard size.
   b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; one-part elastomeric polyurethane or polysulfide; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended by metal building system manufacturer.

2.10 FABRICATION

A. General: Design components and field connections required for erection to permit easy assembly.
1. Mark each piece and part of the assembly to correspond with previously prepared erection drawings, diagrams, and instruction manuals.
2. Fabricate structural framing to produce clean, smooth cuts and bends. Punch holes of proper size, shape, and location. Members shall be free of cracks, tears, and ruptures.

B. Tolerances: Comply with MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for fabrication and erection tolerances.

C. Primary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field assembly.
1. Make shop connections by welding or by using high-strength bolts.
2. Join flanges to webs of built-up members by a continuous, submerged arc-welding process.
3. Brace compression flange of primary framing with steel angles between frame web and purlin web or girt web, so flange compressive strength is within allowable limits for any combination of loadings.
4. Weld clips to frames for attaching secondary framing.
5. Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime primary framing with specified primer after fabrication.

D. Secondary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section by roll-forming or break-forming, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.
1. Make shop connections by welding or by using non-high-strength bolts.
2. Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime uncoated secondary framing with specified primer after fabrication.

E. Metal Panels: Fabricate and finish metal panels at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
   1. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of metal panel.

F. Retrofit Metal Roof Framing: Manufacturer’s standard configuration fabricated to meet design requirements and as follows:
   1. Support members shall incorporate purlins, eave struts, posts, rake angles, wall girts and connectors and shall be minimum 16 gage shop primed steel comforming to the requirements of ASTM A 525 with a minimum yield stress of 50,000 psi.
   2. Bracing: 24 gage galvanized (G90) steel strapping conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 446 Grade D. Minimum yield stress shall be 50,000 psi. Alternatively, provide minimum 16 gage cold-formed angles or channels sized to satisfy design requirements.
   3. Panel support spacing shall be manufacturer’s standard but not greater than 5’-0” o.c. measured horizontally and shall be reflected in structural calculations.
   4. Support members shall be designed to transfer roof dead and live loads as well as specified uplift loads directly to structural roof framing.
   5. Retrofit roof system shall be anchored directly to the roof structural supports as shown.
   6. All anchors to roof structure shall be corrosio0n resistant and shall be designed to resist specified loading with a safety factor of 2.5. Anchor design must be verified and submitted to the Architect/Engineer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with erector present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Before erection proceeds, survey elevations and locations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments to receive structural framing, with erector present, for compliance with requirements and metal building system manufacturer's tolerances.
   1. Engage land surveyor to perform surveying.

C. Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition.

B. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

A. Manufacturer’s certified erector/installer must be on the job site at all times during component erection and installation.

B. Erect metal building system according to manufacturer's written erection instructions and erection drawings.

C. Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer.

D. Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated, according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.

E. Base **and Bearing** Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
   1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
   2. Tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
   3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

F. Align and adjust structural framing before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with framing. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
   1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
   2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure will be completed and in service.

G. Primary Framing and End Walls: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Level baseplates to a true even plane with full bearing to supporting structures, set with double-nutted anchor bolts. Use grout to

obtain uniform bearing and to maintain a level base-line elevation. Moist-cure grout for not less than seven days after placement.

1. Make field connections using high-strength bolts installed according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for bolt type and joint type specified.
   a. Joint Type: Snug tightened or slip-critical as specified on erection drawings. Connections tightened to slip-critical shall be made by the turn-of-the-nut method in the presence of a special inspector, or shall use a positive means of verifying proper tension, such as load-indicating washers or twist-off bolts.

H. Secondary Framing: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Field bolt secondary framing, using non-high strength bolts, to clips attached to primary framing. Use sag rods to hold secondary framing rigidly to a straight line.
   1. Provide rake or gable purlins with tight-fitting closure channels and fasciae.
   2. Locate and space wall girts to suit openings such as doors and windows.
   3. Provide supplemental framing at entire perimeter of openings, including doors, windows, louvers, ventilators, and other penetrations of roof and walls.
   4. Roof purlins shall be spaced at 4 feet 0 inches on center measured horizontally (parallel with the floor surface), <u>not</u> along roof slope.

I. Bracing: Install bracing in roof and sidewalls where indicated on erection drawings.
   1. Tighten rod and cable bracing to avoid sag.
   2. Locate interior end-bay bracing only where indicated.

J. Framing for Openings: Provide shapes of proper design and size to reinforce openings and to carry loads and vibrations imposed, including equipment furnished under mechanical and electrical work. Securely attach to structural framing.

K. Erection Tolerances: Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing within AISC 303.

3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Examination: Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that structural-panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by manufacturer.
   1. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels, to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seams before metal panel installation.

B. General: Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   1. Field cut metal panels as required for doors, windows, and other openings. Cut openings as small as possible, neatly to size required, and without damage to adjacent metal panel finishes.
      a. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is **not** permitted.
   2. Install metal panels perpendicular to structural supports unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures at perimeter of openings and similar elements. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
   4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
   5. Locate metal panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports with end laps in alignment.
   6. Lap metal flashing over metal panels to allow moisture to run over and off the material.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
   1. Seal metal panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant the full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
   2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.5 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
   1. Install ridge **and hip** caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
   2. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves and rakes. Fasten with self-tapping screws.

B. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint, at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Install clips to supports with self-drilling or self-tapping fasteners.
   2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved motorized seamer tool so that clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
4. Rigidly fasten eave end of metal roof panels and allow ridge end free movement due to thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels for fasteners.
5. Provide metal closures at peaks rake edges rake walls and each side of ridge and hip caps.

C. Metal Fascia Panels: Align bottom of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-drilling or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.

D. Metal Roof Panel Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panels within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal wall panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts, extending full height of building, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, begin metal panel installation at corners with center of rib lined up with line of framing.
2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
3. When two rows of metal panels are required, lap panels 4 inches (102 mm) minimum.
4. When building height requires two rows of metal panels at gable ends, align lap of gable panels over metal wall panels at eave height.
5. Rigidly fasten base end of metal wall panels and allow eave end free movement due to thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels.
6. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
7. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
8. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
9. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated; or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
10. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-drilling or self-tapping screws.
11. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.

B. Metal Wall Panels: Install metal wall panels on exterior side of girts. Attach metal wall panels to supports with fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal wall panels within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nonaccumulative, on level, plumb, and on location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Provide metal soffit panels the full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.

B. Flash and seal metal soffit panels with weather closures where panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.

3.8 THERMAL INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. General: Install insulation concurrently with metal panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire surface, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder toward warm side of construction unless otherwise indicated.
2. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to the surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
3. Install factory-laminated, vapor-retarder-faced blankets straight and true in one-piece lengths, with both sets of facing tabs sealed, to provide a complete vapor retarder.

B. Blanket Roof Insulation: Comply with the following installation method:

1. Two-Layers-between-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend lower layer of insulation and vapor retarder between purlins suspended on steel straps. Install upper layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space between purlins formed by thermal spacer blocks.
   a. Install steel support straps to underside of secondary roof framing members in pattern shown on approved shop drawings and according to manufacturer’s written instructions.
   b. Install reinforced polyethylene vapor barrier over steel straps in a continuous unbroken membrane between steel frames. Fasten and seal according to manufacturer’s written instructions
   c. Install lower layer of unfaced insulation over the vapor barrier, between and parallel to the secondary roof framing members. Completely fill the cavity.

d. Install top layer of vinyl faced insulation over and perpendicular to the secondary framing members.

e. Install thermal spacer where metal roof panels attach directly to purlins.

C. Blanket Wall Insulation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing. Hold in place by metal wall panels fastened to secondary framing.

1. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.

3.9 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly, including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.

2. Install components for a complete metal wall panel assembly, including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.

3. Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.

2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

C. Gutters: Join sections with riveted-and-soldered or lapped-and-sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced as required for gutter size, but not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Slope gutters from center to downspouts at each end of gutter section. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

D. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1524 mm) o.c. in between.

1. Tie downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.

E. Roof Curbs: Install curbs centered between standing seam side ribs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install curbs from side rib to side rib with up slope lip under the roof panel and the down slope rib over the roof panel. Seal as required to provide weathertight installation.

F. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to panel as recommended by manufacturer.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections required in Chapter 17 if the IBC.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. High-Strength, Field-Bolted Connections: Connections shall be tested and inspected during installation according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

2. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, field-welded connections shall be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at inspector's option:

a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.

b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.

c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

C. Product will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 ADJUSTING

A. Circular Roof Ventilators: After completing installation, including work by other trades, lubricate, test, and adjust units to operate easily and be free of warp, twist, or distortion as needed to provide fully functioning units.

3.12 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing, bearing plates, and accessories.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or by SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Metal Panels: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

1. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 13 34 19

SECTION 22 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

D. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

E. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

G. Insulation: Class F

H. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 22 05 13

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Escutcheons.
   2. Floor plates.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
   1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
   2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
      a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
      c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
   1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
   2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

SECTION 22 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.
6. Test-plug kits.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All materials in contact with potable water systems shall be lead-free.

2.2 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Stainless Steel and of length to suit installation.
   a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Solid Front/Blow-out Back type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

B. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 20 to 240 deg F.

D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

H. Install test plugs in piping tees.

I. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Outlet of each water heater.
2. Outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
3. Outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.

J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Building water service entrance into building.
2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
3. Inlet of each water heater.
4. Outlet of each compressed air regulator.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi.

B. Scale Range for Compressed Air Piping: 0 to 200 psi.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Bronze ball valves.
2. Bronze lift check valves.
3. Bronze swing check valves.
4. Iron swing check valves.
5. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
6. Iron, center-guided check valves.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
E. RS: Rising stem.
F. SWP: Steam working pressure.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve used.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
2. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
F. Valve-End Connections:
1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Bronze.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
f. Disc: Bronze.

2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Trim: Bronze.
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.6 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Description:

a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
c. Seal: EPDM.
d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.7 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seat: EPDM.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
C. Install all valves, except ball valves, located in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe. Install ball valves located in horizontal piping with stem in the horizontal position (90° from vertical – on side of pipe).
D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly, gate, and globe valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
2. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
4. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
5. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, globe, resilient seat.

3.6 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 , bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23
01-697-027

# SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Pipe positioning systems.
8. Equipment supports.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
6. Coating: Zinc or Hot-dipped galvanized.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig, ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig, or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

C. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

D. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-

actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on 1/2-inch thick rubber walk pad over smooth roof surface. Walk pad shall be full-sized; do not cut pad. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

O. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
3. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
4. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
6. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
7. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
8. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
9. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
10. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
11. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
12. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
13. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
14. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
15. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
16. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
17. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
4. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
6. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
7. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
8. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
9. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
10. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
11. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
12. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
13. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
3. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
4. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
5. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
6. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
7. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 05 48.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
4. Surface Pattern: Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
7. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and/or elastomeric.

### 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
1. Mounting Plates:
   a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
   b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

### 2.3 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
1. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
   a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
   b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

### 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
   a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top housing with elastomeric pad.

2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
   a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top plate with elastomeric pad.
   c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
   a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.11 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 22 05 48.13

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

C. Valve numbering scheme.

D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black.

C. Background Color: Yellow.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 STENCILS

A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
   1. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
      a. Background Color: Safety Blue.
      b. Letter Color: White.
   2. Medium-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
      a. Background Color: Safety Blue.
      b. Letter Color: White.
   3. Domestic Water Piping:
      a. Background Color: Safety Green.
      b. Letter Color: White.
   4. Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping and Storm Drainage Piping:
      a. Background Color: Safety White.
      b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff stops; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule. Install a separate valve schedule for each building or building wing listing only those valves present within that building or wing. Locate the valve schedule behind a 1/4-inch thick clear Plexiglas plate secured to the wall in a janitor closet or mechanical room in a clearly visible and easily accessible location. Where valves are located above the ceiling, install ceiling markers directly below the valve. Ceiling markers shall utilize the same color schedule as the pipe labels.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
   1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
      a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
      b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
      c. Hot Water Return: 1-1/2 inches, round.
      d. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
      e. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
   2. Valve-Tag Color:
      a. Cold Water: Natural.
      b. Hot Water: Natural.
      c. Hot Water Return: Natural.
      d. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
      e. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
   3. Letter Color:
      a. Cold Water: Black.
      b. Hot Water: Black.
      c. Hot Water Return: Black.
      d. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Black.
      e. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 07 19 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
   1. Domestic cold-water piping.
   2. Domestic hot-water piping.
   3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
   4. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
   1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

### 1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

### 1.6 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

### 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

### 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

### 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
   1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.8 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

2.10 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures, provide at all lavatory locations unless noted otherwise on the Schedule of Plumbing Fixture Mounting Heights included on the drawings:

1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
   a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
   1. Vibration-control devices.
   2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
   3. Nameplates and data plates.
   4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
   4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
   4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
   1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
   3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
   4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
   5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.
4. Domestic cold water piping installed in interior masonry partitions and interior chases except when piping is installed in chases that extend between floors.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:
1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

C. Stormwater and Overflow: All horizontal stormwater and overflow pipe and fittings including all fittings that transition piping from horizontal to vertical or transition piping from vertical to horizontal:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies including all vertical piping from drain body to fitting that transitions piping to horizontal:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

E. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.

F. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 20 feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.024 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19

01-697-027

SECTION 22 11 13 - FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for domestic-water-service and fire-service mains.

B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

C. Water meters will be provided and installed by the utility company. Connections to the meter assembly will be contractor provided.

D. Contractor is required to purchase water meters from the utility company. Installation shall be per the utility company requirements.

E. Contractor is required to coordinate purchase and installation of water meters with the utility company. Entire meter assembly installation and connection to municipal water system shall be per the utility company requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.

B. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.

C. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.

D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.

2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.

3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.

4. The installation or repair of any underground facilities or piping which connects to and furnishes water for the water-based fire protection system shall be performed only by a licensed utility contractor, licensed fire protection sprinkler contractor, or licensed plumber.

B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.

E. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.

F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.

G. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.

2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.

3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.

B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.

2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.

C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven (7) days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, annealed temper.
1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, drawn temper.
1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
C. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
D. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
C. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 250, cast iron.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
1. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466.
B. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
1. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467.
2. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.
C. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.
2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
3. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.4 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron Rigid Expansion Joints:
1. Description: Three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:

1. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and 1 or 2 flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
    a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.

B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.

C. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
1. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
    a. Standard: AWWA C219.
    b. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    c. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
    d. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
    e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

C. Flexible Connectors:
1. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
2. Ferrous-Metal Piping: Stainless-steel hose covered with stainless-steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.

D. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
        2) Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 180 deg F .
        3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
        2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
        3) Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum at 180 deg F .
        4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.7 CORROSION-PROTECTION PIPING ENCASEMENT

A. Encasement for Underground Copper Piping:
1. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Form: Sheet or tube.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness, or high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
4. Color: Black.

2.8 GATE VALVES

A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
1. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
    a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
        1) Standard: AWWA C509.
        2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
        3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
        4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
2. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
    a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
        1) Standard: AWWA C509.
        2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.

3) End Connections: Flanged.

B. UL/FMG, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:

1. UL/FMG, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

a. Description: Iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, and inside screw.

1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.

2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

3) End Connections: Flanged.

2. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:

a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.

1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.

2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

3) End Connections: Flanged.

C. Bronze Gate Valves:

1. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:

a. Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.

1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.

2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

3) End Connections: Threaded.

2. Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

a. Description: Class 125, Type 1, bronze with solid wedge, threaded ends, and malleable-iron handwheel.

1) Standard: MSS SP-80.

2.9 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

1. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

a. Standard: MSS SP-60.

b. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.

c. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.

B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.

1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

C. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

2.10 CHECK VALVES

A. AWWA Check Valves:

1. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.

a. Standard: AWWA C508.

b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

B. UL/FMG, Check Valves:

1. Description: Swing-check type with pressure rating; rubber-face checks, unless otherwise indicated; and ends matching piping.

a. Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.

b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

2.11 BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. AWWA Butterfly Valves:

1. Description: Rubber seated.

a. Standard: AWWA C504.

b. Body: Cast or ductile iron.

c. Body Type: Flanged.

d. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

B. UL Butterfly Valves:

1. Description: Metal on resilient material seating.

a. Standards: UL 1091 and FMG approved.

b. Body: Cast or ductile iron.

c. Body Type: Flanged.
d. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

2.12 PLUG VALVES

A. Plug Valves:
1. Description: Resilient-seated eccentric.
a. Standard: MSS SP-108.
b. Body: Cast iron.
c. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum CWP.
d. Seat Material: Suitable for potable-water service.

2.13 CORPORATION VALVES AND CURB VALVES

A. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
1. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
2. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
3. Manifold: Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.

B. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.

C. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.
1. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.

2.14 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Regulator Co.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
d. Flomatic Corporation.
e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015 or AWWA C510.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Size: Refer to the drawings.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories: Ball valves with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; OS&Y gate valves with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Regulator Co.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL listed or FMG approved.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: As indicated on drawings.
5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
6. End Connections: Flanged.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories:
a. Valves: UL 262, FMG-approved, OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

C. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.15 CONCRETE VAULTS

A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.
   1. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel or polyethylene-encased steel steps.
   2. Manhole: ASTM A 48/A 48M Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
      a. Dimension: 24-inch minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

2.16 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following unless otherwise required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction:
      a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
      b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
      c. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
      d. American Foundry Group, Inc.
      e. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
      f. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
      g. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
      h. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
      i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
      j. Troy Valve; a division of Penn-Troy Manufacturing, Inc.
      k. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.
   2. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, 5-1/4-inch main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      a. Standards: AWWA C502, UL 246, FMG approved.
      b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
      c. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
      d. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches point to flat.
      e. Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
      f. Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
D. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be any of the following:
   1. Copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   2. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
F. Underground water-service piping NPS 3 to NPS 8 shall be any of the following:
   1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
   2. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron fittings; and gasketed joints.
G. Vault Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be any of the following unless otherwise required by the local municipality:
   1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   2. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
H. Vault water-service piping NPS 3 to NPS 8 shall be any of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   2. Ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron, grooved-end appurtenances; and grooved joints.

I. Underground Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 shall be any of the following:
   1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed or mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
   2. PVC, AWWA C900, Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; ductile iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints if approved for use by the local authority having jurisdiction.

J. Underground Combined Water-Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 shall be any of the following:
   1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed or mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
   2. PVC, AWWA C900, Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; ductile iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.

K. Vault Combined Water Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation. All valves used for fire-service shall be UL/FMG type.

B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
   1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves with valve box.
   2. Underground Valves, NPS 4 and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FMG, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
   3. Use the following for valves in vaults:
      a. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, rising stem.
      b. Gate Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: For water-service vaults use: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated. For fire-service or combined water-service and fire-service vaults use: UL/FMG, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem.
      c. Check Valves: For water-service vaults use: AWWA C508. For fire-service or combined water-service and fire-service vaults use: UL/FMG, swing type.
   4. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to control water pressure.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. See Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.

B. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
   1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
   2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
   3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
   4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.

C. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
   1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
   2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
   3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
   4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
   5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
   6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.

D. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.

E. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
   1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

F. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

G. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.

H. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
   1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches cover over top.
I. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
J. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
   1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
K. Sleeves are specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
L. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
M. See Section 21 12 00 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes," Section 21 13 13 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems," and Section 21 13 16 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
N. See Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
A. See Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
B. Make pipe joints according to the following:
   1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
   2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
   3. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
   4. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
      a. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
      b. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
      c. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION
A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
   1. Concrete thrust blocks.
   2. Locking mechanical joints.
   3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
   4. Bolted flanged joints.
   5. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
   1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
   2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
   3. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION
A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
C. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post where indicated on the drawings.
D. UL/FMG, Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
F. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
G. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in vault between shutoff valves. Install full-size valved bypass.
H. Valve Boxes: Install plumb. Pour concrete pad around top of box with top of pad set flush with finished grade.
   1. Paint top of domestic water valve box lids blue.
   2. paint top of fire service water valve box lids red.

3.9 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION
A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.

C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

3.10 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION
A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

3.11 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION
A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
B. Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

3.12 CONNECTIONS
A. See Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
B. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
C. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water and fire-suppression piping.
D. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to storm-drainage system or route to nearest culvert. See Section 33 41 00 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for connection to storm-sewer piping.
E. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
F. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION
A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
B. If non-metallic water-service piping is used, permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on all water entry locations into the building(s). See Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.
C. Tracer Wire: Insulated copper tracer wire not less than 12 AWG and with insulation type suitable for direct burial. Install tracer wire adjacent to all underground non-metallic piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate inside the vault and above ground at each water entry location.

3.15 CLEANING
A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
2. For fire-service piping, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
3. For domestic-water-service piping, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 11 13
01-697-027

SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
2. Encasement for piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven (7) days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
F. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:

1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.

H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:

1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

I. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:

1. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
   a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
   b. Ferrous housing sections.
   c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
   d. Bolts and nuts.
   e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.

2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

D. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

E. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.

G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

B. Form: Sheet or tube.

C. Color: Black or natural.

2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:
1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Description:
a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Description:
a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
b. Brass threaded end.
c. Solvent-cement-joint plastic end.
d. Rubber O-ring.
e. Union nut.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.

3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. All domestic water piping joints and materials shall be lead free.

C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

D. Where copper pipe occurs in concrete or underground, pipe shall be coated with two (2) coats of asphaltum base paint.

E. Copper piping in chases or concrete block walls shall be covered with clear vinyl film sheeting, 4 mils thick or pipe shall be coated with two (2) coats of asphaltum base paint.

F. Where metal piping comes into contact with any item made from a dissimilar metal, such as copper pipe to galvanized hangers or unistrut, completely wrap the pipe with duct tape or other material at the point of contact to alleviate galvanic corrosion between the two metals.

G. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

H. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

I. nstall water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

J. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.

K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

P. Install piping free of sags and bends.

Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 22 11 23 "Domestic Water Pumps."

U. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
N. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION
A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION
A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 3 and Larger: Use dielectric flanges.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION
A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
   4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
   5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
   6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
   7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
   8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

G. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
   1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
   2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
   3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
   4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Piping Inspections:
      a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
         1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
         2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
      c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
      d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Piping Tests:
      a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
      b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
      c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
      d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
      e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
      f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
   1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
   2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
   3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
   4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
      a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
      b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
   5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
   6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
   7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
   8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
   1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
   2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
      a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
      b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
         1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
         2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
      c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
      d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
      e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
   1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
   1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K ; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and restrained mechanical joints.

F. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
   1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

G. Aboveground domestic water piping, shall be one of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
   2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
   1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   2. Throttling Duty: Use globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
   4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16
01-697-027

# SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following piping specialties for domestic-water-service:
1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Wall Valve Boxes.
9. Hose bibbs.
10. Wall hydrants.
11. Ground hydrants.
12. Post hydrants.
13. Drain valves.
14. Water-hammer arresters.
15. Air vents.
16. Trap-seal primer valves.
17. Trap-seal primer systems.
18. Flexible connectors.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14. Mark "NSF-pw" on plastic piping components.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

C. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1056.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: As indicated on the drawings.
4. Accessories:
a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

### 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: As indicated on the drawings.

4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
   a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
   b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
   c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1052.
2. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
3. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
4. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

C. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:
1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:
1. Standard: ASSE 1003.
2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
3. Size: As indicated on the drawings.
4. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
6. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
1. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
2. Body: Brass or bronze.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:
1. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
4. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
5. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded or solder joint.
6. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
7. Tempered-Water Setting: 105 deg F.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
   a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.062 inch.
   b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.062 inch.
   c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.125 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.9 OUTLET BOXES

A. <u>Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes (WM-1)</u>:
1. Mounting: Recessed.
2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or Stainless-steel box and faceplate. Provide fire resistant when installed in rated walls.

3. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
4. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
5. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes (IM-1):
1. Mounting: Recessed.
2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or Stainless-steel box and faceplate. Provide fire resistant when installed in rated walls.
3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
4. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants (WH-2):
1. Standard: ASSE 1019-B.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Operation: Loose key.
4. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
6. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Box: Deep, nickel bronze or brass, flush mounted with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze or Chrome plated brass.
9. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

B. Moderate-Climate Wall Hydrants (WH-1):
1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Operation: Loose key.
4. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
5. Outlet:
   a. Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
   b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Box: Deep, nickel bronze or brass, flush mounted with cover.
7. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze or Chrome plated brass.
8. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

2.11 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:
1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:
1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Metal bellows or Copper tube with piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.13 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.14 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves with check valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.

G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry."

H. Install nonfreeze, nondraining-type post roof hydrants on roof as per manufacturer’s published recommendations.

I. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201 and as indicated on the drawings.

J. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly, and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 11 23 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
   2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
   3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
   4. TACO Incorporated.
   5. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps for hot water circulation systems.

C. Pump Construction:
   1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
   2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
   3. Impeller: Plastic.
   4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
   1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

### 2.3 CONTROLS

A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
   1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
   2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
   3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
   4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
   5. Transformer: Provide if required.
   6. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
   7. Settings: Start pump at 110 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
C. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
    1. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
D. Connect thermostats, to pumps that they control.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
    1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    2. Check piping connections for tightness.
    3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
    4. Set thermostats, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
    5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
        a. Verify bearing lubrication.
        b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
        c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
    6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
    7. Start motor.
    8. Open discharge valve slowly.
    9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23
01-697-027

# SECTION 22 13 13 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Nonpressure and pressure couplings.
3. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
4. Cleanouts.
5. Encasement for piping.
6. Manholes.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
2. Backwater valves.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic pipe and fittings in direct sunlight.
B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

### 2.2 DUCTILE-IRON, GRAVITY SEWER PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints and ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 for wall thickness.
B. Interior Lining: ANSI/AWWA C11/A21.11, cement-mortar.
C. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
D. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

### 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON, PRESSURE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint Piping:
1. Pipe: AWWA C151, with bolt holes in bell.
2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, with bolt holes in bell.
3. Glands: Cast or ductile iron; with bolt holes and high-strength, cast-iron or high-strength, low-alloy steel bolts and nuts.
4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe, fittings, and glands.

### 2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:
1. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Piping:
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D2665, schedule 40, PVC pipe with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.

C. PVC Pressure Piping:
1. Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150 PVC pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
3. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts. AWWA C900, Class 150 PVC pipe with bell ends.

D. PVC Water-Service Piping:
1. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80 PVC, socket type.

2.5 NONPRESSURE-TYPE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:
1. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
2. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
3. For Fiberglass Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
4. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
5. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
1. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

D. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:
1. Description: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

E. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:
1. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

F. Nonpressure-Type, Rigid Couplings:
1. Description: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling, molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material; with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

2.6 PRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

A. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.

B. Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.

C. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.

E. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

2.7 EXPANSION JOINTS AND DEFLECTION FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
1. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.

2.8 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
1. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light Duty, Medium Duty, Heavy Duty, and Extra-Heavy Duty.
3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

2.9 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.

C. Form: Sheet or tube.

D. Color: Black or natural.

2.10 MANHOLES

A. Manholes, frames, and covers in municipal sewer systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority.

B. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:
1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Diameter: 48 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated.

3. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
4. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section; with separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, of length to provide depth indicated.
6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated; with top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
9. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 48 inches.
10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

C. Designed Precast Concrete Manholes:
1. Description: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to manhole as required to prevent flotation.
3. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
4. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
5. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 48 inches.
6. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

D. Manhole Frames and Covers:
1. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser, with 4-inch- minimum-width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
2. Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 gray iron unless otherwise indicated.

2.11 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
   a. Invert Slope: Minimum 0.2 feet of fall through manhole – see drawings for inlet and outlet elevations.
2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
   a. Slope: 8 percent.

D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design

considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Installation of municipal sewer systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority.

C. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

D. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

E. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

F. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.

G. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
   1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Install piping with 18-inch minimum cover.
   3. No sanitary piping, except ductile iron or cast iron shall be laid with less than 18” of cover. No sanitary piping, except ductile iron or cast iron shall be laid beneath driveways with less than 3 feet of cover. Minimum cover for ductile iron and cast iron sanitary piping shall be 12” except under driveways. Minimum cover for ductile iron and cast iron sanitary piping under driveways shall be 24”. Maximum cover for PVC piping shall be 13’-0”.
   4. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
   5. Install ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to ASTM A 746.
   6. Install PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   7. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

H. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105 if the outside of the piping is not provided with a standard asphaltic coating:
   1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
   2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
   3. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.

I. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
   1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
   2. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
   3. Join ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
   4. Join PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
   5. Join solid-wall PVC piping according to ASTM D 2865 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   6. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings.

B. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Shielded flexible couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
      b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
      c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
   2. Use pressure pipe couplings for force-main joints.

3.4 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.

B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.

C. Install manholes in municipal sewer systems in accordance with the requirements of the local authority.

D. Where manhole depths exceed 20’-0”, provide intermediate landings.

E. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet. Invert channels shall be smooth and semi-circular in shape conforming to the inside of the adjacent sewer section. Changes in directions of flow shall be made with a smooth curve of as large a radius as the size of the manhole will permit. Changes in size and grade of the channels shall be made gradually and evenly. Precast inverts may be used or, form the invert channels directly in the precast base sections after being set and pipe is laid.

F. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated. Set tops approximately 2 foot above grade when located in sloped areas away from the buildings. Grout frames to manhole top section to prevent movement.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
   1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
   2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
   3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
   4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.

B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.

C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

B. Connect force-main piping to building's sanitary force mains specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.

C. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
   1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch overlap with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
   2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
   3. Make branch connections from side into underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
      a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
   4. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

D. Connections to municipal sewer systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority.

3.8 CLOSING ABANDONED SANITARY SEWER SYSTEMS

A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Unless otherwise required by the local authority, use either procedure below:
   1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
   2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.

B. Abandoned Manholes: Unless otherwise required by the local authority, excavate around manhole as required and use either procedure below:
   1. Remove manhole and close open ends of remaining piping.
   2. Remove top of manhole down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.

C. Abandoned Underground Tanks: Unless otherwise required by the local authority, excavate around underground tank as required and use either procedure below:
   1. Pump out and remove underground tank and close open ends of remaining piping.

2. Pump out tank. Remove top of underground tank to at least 24 inches below final grade. Fill with excavatable low-strength concrete fill. Close open ends of remaining piping.

D. Backfill to grade according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 31200 "Earth Moving" for underground utility identification devices. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.
3. Tracer Wire: Insulated copper tracer wire not less than 12 AWG and with insulation type suitable for direct burial. Install tracer wire adjacent to all underground not-metallic piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire at each manhole and cleanout.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
a. Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
c. Purge air and refill with water.
d. Disconnect water supply.
e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
6. Air Tests: Air tests are not allowed.
7. Force Main: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig.
a. Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
b. PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
8. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969.
9. Testing of municipal sewer systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Sanitary-sewage, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be any of the following except where indicated otherwise in the specifications or on the drawings:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
3. Ductile-iron, gravity-sewer piping and push-on joints.
4. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping; and gasketed joints. Acceptable only for 8-inch sized piping or larger.
5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 22 13 13

SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   a. Clamps: Type 304 AISI stainless steel, 4 clamps on sizes 1-1/2" – 4", 6 clamps on sizes 5" – 10".
   b. Screws: Type 305 AISI stainless steel 5/16" hex head.
   c. Shield: Type 304 AISI stainless steel corrugated. Shield thickness [**0.010"**] [**0.015"**].
   d. Gasket: Neoprene as primary elastomer, conforming to ASTM C564. Oil immersion test: 80% maximum volume change after immersion in ASTM oil No. 3 for 70 hours at 212°F.

C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.

B. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:

1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
3. Galvanized-Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

C. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
D. Copper Pressure Fittings:
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.7 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:
1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
c. Sleeve Materials:
1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
a. Standard: AWWA C219.
b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
a. Description:
1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
a. Description:
1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.

4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric Nipples:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
      2) Electroplated steel nipple.
      3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. No sanitary piping, except ductile iron or cast iron shall be laid with less than 18” of cover. Minimum cover for ductile iron and cast iron sanitary piping shall be 12”. Maximum cover for PVC piping shall be 13’-0”.

M. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
   2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
   3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.

P. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

Q. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
   1. No aboveground PVC piping shall be located in return air plenums unless it is completely wrapped in a high temperature insulation blanket encapsulated with an aluminum foil scrim, used as a fireproof flexible enclosure for plastic pipe in fire-rated plenums. Wrap shall extend to 5’-0” outside of return air plenum on piping. Tape wrap joints with aluminum foil tape. Provide minimum 1” overlap on wrap at joints. Installation shall be per the manufacturer’s published recommendations.

R. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.

T. Plumbing Specialties:
   1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in

sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

E. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

F. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

G. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded below ground and Shielded above ground, nonpressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 3 and larger: Use dielectric flanges.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
   a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
   b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
I. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
J. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
K. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
L. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
M. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 3 and larger.
D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cleanouts.
2. Floor drains.
3. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
4. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
5. Flashing materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

B. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

C. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete", and/or Section 03 30 53 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. <u>Exposed Metal Cleanouts (CO)</u>:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. <u>Interior, Cast Iron Floor Cleanouts (FCO-1)</u>:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Heavy-duty, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required only for cleanouts located in upper floors or mezzanines.
7. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
8. Closure: Plastic plug.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, set-screws, or other device.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Secured, round. In carpet locations provide with carpet marker type top. In tile locations provide with 1/8” tile recess in top.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy duty except in kitchen and ancillary spaces. Extra heavy duty in kitchen and ancillary spaces.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Exterior, Cast Iron Floor Cleanouts (FCO-2):
1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Cast iron soil pipe with cast iron ferrule.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
7. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
8. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
9. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

D. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts (WCO-1):
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, drilled-and-threaded brass plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. General Purpose, Cast-Iron Floor Drains (FD-1):
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
2. Pattern: Floor drain.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Seepage Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
5. Anchor Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
6. Clamping Device: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
11. Top Shape: Round.
12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 5” diameter top with adjustable strainer head.
13. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
14. Funnel: Not required.
15. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.

B. Equipment Room, Cast-Iron Floor Drains (FD-2):
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
2. Pattern: Floor drain.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Seepage Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
5. Anchor Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
6. Clamping Device: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Sediment Bucket: Cast iron.
9. Top or Strainer Material: Ductile iron.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Paint with two coats black enamel paint.
11. Top Shape: Round.
12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 8-1/2” diameter top with adjustable strainer head.
13. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty.
14. Funnel: Not required.
15. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.

C. Cast-Iron Floor Sinks (FS-1):
1. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
2. Pattern: Floor drain.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Seepage Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
5. Anchor Flange: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
6. Clamping Device: Required only for drains located in upper floors or mezzanines.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Sediment Bucket: Not required.

9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze with extra heavy stainless steel secured grate.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Stainless steel top strainer with aluminum dome bottom strainer.
11. Top Shape: Square.
12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 12-1/2" square top with half grate.
13. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty.
14. Funnel: Not required.
15. Inlet Fitting: Not required.

2.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
1. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
2. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
3. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
4. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
5. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:
1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of one pipe size larger than connected waste piping.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:
1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
   a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

C. Barrier type floor drain trap seal protection devices:
1. Standard: ASSE 1072.
2. Size: Same as drain outlet.
3. Application Rating: conform to type of flooring:
   a. AF: Any floor finish.
   b. AF-GW: Any floor finish, Grease laden waste.
   c. SF: Shower floor.
   d. CF: Concrete floor.
   e. CT: Ceramic tile floor.
   f. WF: Wood floor.
4. Markings: device shall have the following information visibly marked by permanent method:
   a. Name of manufacturer or trademark.
   b. Application designation per Table 2 of ASSE 1072.

D. Air-Gap Fittings:
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

F. Expansion Joints:
1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
   2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
   3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft.
   2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft.

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:
   1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 22 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.

C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
   2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
   3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 80 feet for larger piping.
   4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
   2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
      a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
      b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
      c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
   3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

H. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.

I. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.

J. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains where no trap-seal primer connection is indicated on the drawings.

K. Install barrier type floor drain trap seal protection devices at all floor drains.

L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

M. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

N. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.

O. Install solids interceptors with cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors that do not have integral cleanout on outlet. Install trap on interceptors that do not have integral trap and are connected to sanitary drainage and vent systems.

P. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

Q. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Replace tops and grates of floor drains and cleanouts that have been damaged or disfigured.

C. After the completion of work, clean tops and grates of all floor drains and cleanouts to a like new condition. Polish nickel bronze tops and grates, and paint cast iron or ductile iron tops and grates with black enamel paint.

D. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

01-697-027

SECTION 22 13 21 – MISCELLANEOUS DRAIN PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
   1. Plumbing Fixture waste rough-in piping.
   2. Overflow, Relief, Bleed, and Miscellaneous vent piping.
   3. Condensate-drain piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
   2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
   2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.

D. Copper Pressure Fittings:
   1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
   2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.4 RED BRASS PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Red Brass Pipe: ASTM B43, Schedule 40.

B. Red Brass Fittings: ASTM B62.

2.5 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40.
   1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
   1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

2.6 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

B. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

D. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
   1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
   2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

E. Red Brass, threaded: threads shall meet ASME/ANSI B1.20.1 standards, use with joint compound and Teflon tape suitable for red brass.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
   1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
   1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Plumbing fixture waste rough-in piping, shall be the following:
   1. All plumbing fixtures except urinals and water closets: DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
   2. Urinal waste rough-in piping: red brass piping, red brass fittings, and threaded connections.
   3. Water closet waste rough-in piping:
      a. Above ground: cast iron pipe with cast iron drainage fittings, and hub and spigot or hubless joints with cast iron closet flange and ring.
      b. Below ground: cast iron pipe with cast iron drainage fittings, and hub and spigot or hubless joints; or solid wall PVC pipe with PVC DWV socket fittings and solvent-cement joints with PVC closet flange with stainless steel ring.

B. Overflow, Relief, Bleed, and Miscellaneous vent piping, shall be the following:
   1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

C. Condensate-Drain Piping:
   1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

D. Condensate-Drain Piping from separated combustion/direct vented appliances and equipment:
   1. Schedule 40 CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent welded joints.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Where copper pipe occurs in concrete or underground, pipe shall be coated with two (2) coats of asphaltum base paint.

J. Copper piping in chases or concrete block walls shall be covered with clear vinyl film sheeting, 4 mils thick or pipe shall be coated with two (2) coats of asphaltum base paint.

K. Where metal piping comes into contact with any item made from a dissimilar metal, such as copper pipe to galvanized hangers or unistrut, completely wrap the pipe with duct tape or other material at the point of contact to alleviate galvanic corrosion between the two metals.

L. Install a DWV trap adapter fitting at the rough-in connection of the trap wall bend to the copper waste arm from the cast iron riser in the chase at all plumbing fixtures except urinals and water closets. Do not solder the trap wall bend to the waste arm.

M. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors except at plumbing fixture rough-in connections. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
   1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
   2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
      a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
      b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
      c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
   3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
   4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
   5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
   6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
   7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

G. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
   4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
   5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
   6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.

I. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

J.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

E. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

F. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

G. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
   3. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Piping Inspections:
      a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
         1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
         2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
      c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
      d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Piping Tests:
      a. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

b. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

c. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

d. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.

f. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

END OF SECTION 22 13 21

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 13 23 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Lint interceptors.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LINT INTERCEPTORS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, cast-iron or steel body; with settlement chamber and removable basket or strainer, and anodes.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. MIFAB, Inc.
   2. Rockford Sanitary Systems, Inc.
   3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
   4. Tyler Pipe, Inc.

C. Outlet Piping Connection: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Cover: Cast iron or steel, with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44), light-traffic load.

E. Capacities and Characteristics:
   1. Capacity: 25 gpm.
   2. Outlet Pipe Size: 4”.
   3. Trapped Outlet Required: Yes.
   4. Vent Pipe Size: 2”.
   5. Installation Position: Underground with extension to grade.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Set metal interceptors level and plumb.

B. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements and floors. Set tops 3 inches above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
   1. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
   2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION 22 13 23

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 32 00 - DOMESTIC WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Off-floor cartridge filters.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of water filtration equipment through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

C. Comply with NSF/ANSI Standard 42 for aesthetic effects; chlorine reduction; taste and odor reduction; and nominal particulate reduction, Class 1.

### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CARTRIDGE FILTERS

A. Off-Floor Cartridge Filters:
   1. Description: Simplex, in-line or wall-mounted housing with replaceable element for removing suspended particles from water.
      a. Housing: Corrosion resistant; designed to separate feedwater from filtrate and to direct feedwater through water filter element; with element support.
         1) Pipe Connections: Threaded according to` ASME B1.20.1.
         2) Support: Wall bracket.
      b. Element: Replaceable; of shape to fit housing.
   2. Capacity and Characteristics:
      a. Filter Design:
         1) Service Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm minimum.
         2) Chlorine, Taste, and Odor Reduction Capacity: 15,000 gallons.
         3) Sediment Reduction: 0.5 micron (nominal).
         4) Scale and Corrosion Inhibitor: 70 grams.
      b. Housing:
         1) Material: Plastic.
         2) Operating Pressure Range: 10-125 psig.
         3) Nominal Dimensions: 14-1/2 inches x 6-1/2 inches x 5-1/8 inches.
         4) Inlet and Outlet Size: 1/2 NPS.
         5) Drain Size: Not applicable.
      c. Element:
         1) Nominal Length: 10-inches.
         2) Media: Wound polyester or wound PP.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where filters will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 CARTRIDGE-FILTER INSTALLATION

A. Install cartridge filters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

B. Attach wall brackets for off-floor, wall-mounted, cartridge filter to vertical surface. Attach housing(s), and base if any, to wall bracket.

C. Install housings for off-floor, in-line, cartridge filters in piping.

D. Install filter elements in cartridges.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Make piping connections between water filtration equipment and dissimilar-metal water piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements for dielectric fittings specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

D. Install shutoff valves on feedwater-inlet and filtrate-outlet piping of each water filtration equipment filter.

1. Comply with requirements for metal general-duty valves specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2. Exception: Water filtration equipment with factory-installed shutoff valves at locations indicated.

E. Install pressure gages on feedwater-inlet and filtrate-outlet piping of each water filtration equipment filter. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

1. Exception: Water filtration equipment with factory-installed pressure gages at locations indicated.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

C. Domestic water filtration equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 22 32 00

01-697-027

# SECTION 22 34 00 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Gas-fired, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.
B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

### 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
b. Faulty operation of controls.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
a. Gas-Fired, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GAS-FIRED, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Bosch Water Heating.
2. Bradford White Corporation.
3. Intellihot Green Technologies, Inc.
4. KD Navien.
5. NORITZ America Corp.
6. Paloma Industries, Inc.
7. Rheem Manufacturing Company; Rheem Water Heating.
8. Rinnai Corporation.
9. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
10. State Industries.
11. Takagi.
B. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 for gas-fired, instantaneous, domestic-water heaters for indoor application.
C. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity. Heater shall be provided with a female vent connection at the top of the heater. Indoor models shall be equipped with an integrated condensation collector in the vent connection. Heaters shall be condensing type.

1. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3. Heat Exchanger: Copper tubing.
4. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
5. Jacket: Metal, with enameled finish, or plastic.
6. Burner: For use with tankless, domestic-water heaters and LP-gas fuel.
7. Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
8. Temperature Control: Remote, adjustable temperature control with a range from 98 degree F to 140 degree F. Diagnostic testing to display flow rate, output water temperature, and previous diagnostic codes. Provide with non-polarized two-core remote control cable (minimum 22 AWG).
9. Circulation Pump: all units shall include an internal circulation pump and 0.5 gallon buffer tank.
10. Controls: water heaters shall be controlled by an internal circuit board that monitors the inlet and outlet temperatures with installed thermistors, sensing and controlling flow rate to set point temperature with air-fuel ratio controls in order to maintain thermal combustion efficiency. Multi-system (cascade) applications that require 2 to 16 units shall be installed by connecting the units using cable-only connection.

D. Safety Devices:
1. Flame sensor system – flame rod.
2. High limit sensors,
3. Overheat prevention device.
4. Remaining flame (OHS).
5. Boiling protection.
6. Thermal fuse.
7. Combustion fan rpm check.
8. Automatic frost protection.
9. Over-current – glass fuse (3 amp).

E. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

F. Direct-Vent-System: Through-wall or roof, see drawings, coaxial- or double-channel vent assembly with domestic-water heater manufacturers' outside intake/exhaust screen.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Thermal Expansion Tanks:
1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
2. Construction:
   a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
   b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
3. Capacity and Characteristics:
   a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
   b. Capacity Acceptable: See water heater schedule on drawings for minimum capacity.
   c. Air Precharge Pressure: Set at water supply pressure.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

F. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.

G. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

H. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

I. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.

J. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install tankless, domestic-water heaters on wall bracket with bottom of heaters at least 48 inches above floor.
   1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
   2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
   3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
   1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
   1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
   2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
   3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
   4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 23 11 26 "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."

D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

G. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

H. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.

I. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 23 11 26 "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."

C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage and gas-fired, tankless domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 34 00

01-697-027

SECTION 22 42 13.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets (WC-1): Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Eljer.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Sloan.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Bowl:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Siphon jet.
   d. Style: Flushometer valve.
   e. Height: 18” comfort height – Adult Standard – Grade 8 and above.
   f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
   g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
   h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
   i. Color: White.
3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: Cast iron closet flange or PVC closet flange with stainless steel ring.
4. Flushometer Valve: WFV-1.
5. Toilet Seat: TS-1.

B. Water Closets (WC-2): Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Eljer.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Sloan.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Bowl:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Siphon jet.
   d. Style: Flushometer valve.
   e. Height: 18” – Adult Handicapped – Grade 8 and above.
   f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
   g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
   h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
   i. Color: White.
3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: Cast iron closet flange or PVC closet flange with stainless steel ring.
4. Flushometer Valve: WFV-1.
5. Toilet Seat: TS-1.

2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves (WFV-1):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Delta Commercial.
   b. Sloan Valve Company.
   c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037 and ADA compliant to meet handicap accessibility standard ANSI A117.1 of less than 5 lbs. operating force.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Exposed.
8. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats (TS-1):
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
   c. Beneke.
   d. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
   e. Church Seats.
   f. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
   g. Kohler Co.
   h. Olsonite Seat Co.
   i. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.
   j. Sperzel of Lexington.
   k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic with anti-microbial agent.
4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: stainless steel.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:
1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to the Georgia Accessibility Code.

B. Support Installation:
1. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Install flushometer-valve plumb.
3. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
4. Install split ring pipe support on flushometer-valve tailpiece.
5. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet (facing the wide side of the stall or room).
6. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.
E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of water closets, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
1. Replace flushometer valve with new if the finish has become discolored during construction and cannot be repaired to a “like new” condition.
2. Replace damaged, chipped, or cracked water closets with new.

B. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove all stickers.

C. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.13

01-697-027

SECTION 22 42 13.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Urinals.
2. Flushometer valves.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals (UR-1): Wall hung, back outlet, washout.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
   a. American Standard.
   b. Eljer.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Sloan.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Fixture:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
   d. Strainer or Trapway: Beehive strainer with trapway molded into china fixture.
   e. Height: 24” – Adult.
   f. Water Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
   g. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
   h. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
   i. Color: White.
3. Flushometer Valve: UFV-1.
4. Waste Fitting:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
   b. Size: NPS 2.
5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

B. Urinals (UR-2): Wall hung, back outlet, washout.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
   a. American Standard.
   b. Eljer.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Sloan.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Fixture:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
   d. Strainer or Trapway: Beehive strainer with trapway molded into china fixture.
   e. Height: 17” – Handicapped – Grades 4 and above.
   f. Water Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
   g. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
   h. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
   i. Color: White.
1. Flushometer Valve: UFV-1.

2. Waste Fitting:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
   b. Size: NPS 2.
3. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves (UFV-1):
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
   a. Delta Commercial.
   b. Sloan Valve Company.
   c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Exposed.
8. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4 .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:
1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to the Georgia Accessibility Code.

B. Support Installation:
1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Install flushometer-valve plumb.
3. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
4. Install split ring pipe support on flushometer-valve vacuum breaker.
5. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of urinals, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

1. Replace flushometer valve with new if the finish has become discolored during construction and cannot be repaired to a “like new” condition.
2. Replace damaged, chipped, or cracked urinals with new.

B. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove all stickers.

C. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.16

01-697-027

SECTION 22 42 16.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory (LAV-1): Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. American Standard.
b. Eljer.
c. Kohler Co.
d. Sloan.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: For wall hanging, with front overflow and integral back.
c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 20 by 18 inches.
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 4-inch center drilling.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
f. Height: 34” – Adult.
g. Protective Shielding Guards: Provide with Protective Shielding Piping Enclosure specified in Section 22 07 19 “Plumbing Piping Insulation”.
h. Color: White.
i. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
3. Faucet: LFT-1.
4. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Not Required.
5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

B. Lavatory – Kitchen (LAV-2): Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. American Standard.
b. Eljer.
c. Kohler Co.
d. Sloan.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: For wall hanging, with front overflow and integral back.
c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 20 by 18 inches.
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 4-inch center drilling.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
f. Height: 34” – Adult Handicapped.
g. Protective Shielding Guards: Provide with Protective Shielding Piping Enclosure specified in Section 22 07 19 “Plumbing Piping Insulation”.
h. Color: White.
i. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
3. Faucet: LFT-1.
4. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Not Required.
5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

2.2 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets (LFT-1): Manual-type, single-control mixing, commercial, solid-brass valve.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Delta Faucet Company.
   d. Kohler Co.
   e. Moen Incorporated.
   f. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
   g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
9. Valve Handle(s): Single lever.
10. Spout: Rigid type.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
12. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valve as specified in Section 22 11 19 “Domestic Water Piping Specialties”.
13. Drain: Not part of faucet.

2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping. Heavy Pattern.

E. Operation: Wheel handle.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 3/8.
2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper-pipe and brass straight or offset tailpieces or ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/4.
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

C. Install wall-mounted lavatories at mounting height specified.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures. Install trap adapter fitting at the connection of the trap wall bend to the roughing-in connection at the wall.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

1. Replace faucet with new if the finish has become discolored during construction and cannot be repaired to a “like new” condition.

2. Replace damaged, chipped, or cracked lavatories with new.

B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove all stickers.

C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.13

01-697-027

SECTION 22 42 16.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Service basins.
2. Utility sinks.
3. Sink faucets.
4. Supply fittings.
5. Waste fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins (MS-1): Terrazzo, corner floor mounted.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Acorn Engineering Company.
b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
d. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
2. Fixture:
a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
b. Shape: Five sided.
c. Nominal Size: 32 by 32 inches.
d. Height: 12 inches with dropped front.
e. Back Panels: Stainless steel at each wall.
f. Rim Guard: On front top surfaces.
g. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
4. Faucet: SFT-1.

2.2 UTILITY SINKS

A. Single Compartment Sinks (SCS-1): Stainless steel, counter mounted, handicap accessible depth.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Advance Tabco.
b. Eagle Group; Foodservice Equipment Division.
c. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
d. Griffin Products, Inc.
e. Just Manufacturing.
f. Kohler Co.
2. Fixture:
a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
b. Type: Ledge back.
c. Number of Compartments: One.
d. Overall Dimensions: 19-inches long by 18-inches wide.
e. Metal Thickness: 0.050 inch (18 gauge).
f. Compartment:
1) Dimensions: 16-inches long by 11-1/2-inches wide by 6-1/2-inches deep.
2) Drain: 3-1/2-inch crumb cup with offset tailpiece.
3) Drain Location: Off-Centered to rear of compartment.
g. Mounting: On counter with sealant.
3. Faucet: SFT-2.
a. Number Required: One.
b. Faucet Holes: Three.
c. Mounting: On ledge.
4. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fitting: Not required.
5. Supply Fittings:

a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
b. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
c. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
d. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping. Heavy pattern.
1) Operation: Wheel handle.
2) Risers: NPS 3/8, chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe or ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

6. Waste Fittings:
a. Trap(s):
1) Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
2) Size: NPS 1-1/2.
3) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Sink Faucets (SFT-1): Manual type, two-lever-handle mixing valve.
1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets.
a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1) American Standard.
2) Chicago Faucets.
3) Delta Faucet Company.
4) Kohler Co.
5) Moen Incorporated.
6) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
7) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; integral service stops; check stops; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Wall mounted service sink faucet with wall brace and bucket hook.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Rough chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 4.0 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Back/wall, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass with wall brace.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
12. Spout Outlet: Hose thread according to ASME B1.20.7.
13. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Not required.

C. Sink Faucets (SFT-2): Manual type, two-lever-handle mixing valve.
1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets.
a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1) American Standard.
2) Chicago Faucets.
3) Delta Faucet Company.
4) Kohler Co.
5) Moen Incorporated.
6) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
7) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Widespread.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.0 gpm.

8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Swing gooseneck.
11. Hand Spray: Not required.
12. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valve as specified in Section 22 11 19 “Domestic Water Piping Specialties”.
13. Vacuum Breaker: Not required for hose outlet.
14. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.4 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
   1. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
   2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures. Install trap adapter fitting at the connection of the trap wall bend to the roughing-in connection at the wall.
B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
   1. Replace faucet with new if the finish has become discolored during construction and cannot be repaired to a “like new” condition.
   2. Replace damaged, chipped, cracked, or dented sinks with new.
B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove all stickers.
C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.16

01-697-027

SECTION 22 42 23 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS AND BATHTUBS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Shower faucets.
2. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Shower Faucets (SH-1): Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicator; check stops; and wall shower head.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Leonard Valve Company.
   e. Moen Incorporated.
   f. Powers.
   g. Speakman Company.
   h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
   i. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.
2. Faucet:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
   b. Body Material: Solid brass.
   c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
   d. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Mounting: Concealed.
   f. Operation: Single-handle, rotate control with hot- and cold-water indicator. ADA Compliant.
   g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
   h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
   i. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.
3. Shower Head:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
   b. Type: Heavy-duty, ball joint and head integral with mounting flange .
   c. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
   d. Spray Pattern: Fixed.
   e. Integral Volume Control: Required.
4. Mounting Heights (from finished floor):
   a. Centerline of Faucet: 43-inches.
   b. Centerline of Wall Shower Head: 78-inches.

C. Shower Faucets (SH-2): Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicator; check stops; wall shower head; and hand shower.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Standard.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Leonard Valve Company.
   e. Moen Incorporated.
   f. Powers.
   g. Speakman Company.
   h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
   i. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.
2. Faucet:
   a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.

b. Body Material: Solid brass.
c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
d. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm unless otherwise indicated.
e. Mounting: Concealed.
f. Operation: Single-handle, rotate control with hot- and cold-water indicator. ADA Compliant.
g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
i. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.

3. Shower Head:
a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Type: Heavy-duty, ball joint and head integral with mounting flange.
c. Hand shower: required, with flexible metal-clad hose, in-line vacuum breaker, wall connection and flange, and two wall-hooks.
d. Backflow-Prevention Device: ASSE 1014.
e. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
f. Spray Pattern: Fixed.
g. Integral Volume Control: Required.

4. Mounting Heights (from finished floor):
a. Centerline of Faucet: 43-inches.
b. Centerline of Wall Shower Head: 78-inches.
c. Centerline of Hand Shower: 48-inches.
d. Centerline of Diverter: 43-inches.

2.2 GROUT
A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION
A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.
B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION
A. Assemble bathtub and shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
B. Install bathtubs and showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each bathtub and shower faucet.
1. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
D. Set bathtubs in leveling bed of cement grout.
E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
F. Seal joints between fixtures and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS
A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
C. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING
A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.
B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
A. After completing installation of bathtubs and showers, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
B. Clean bathtubs and showers, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove all stickers.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of bathtubs and showers for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 23

01-697-027

SECTION 22 47 16 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

A. Pressure Water Coolers (EDF-1): Wall mounted, wheelchair accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
   b. Halsey Taylor.
   c. Haws Corporation.
   d. Larco Inc.
   e. Tri Palm International, LLC; Oasis Brand.
   f. Tri Palm International, LLC; Sunroc Brand.
2. Cabinet: Single, all stainless steel, vandal-resistant, barrier-free access.
3. Height (to spout outlet): 36” – Adult Handicapped – Grades 8 and above.
4. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on each cabinet deck.
5. Control: Push button.
6. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
7. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
8. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
9. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
   a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
10. Capacities and Characteristics:
    a. Cooled Water: 8 gph.
    b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F.
    c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F.
    d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.
11. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I water-cooler carrier.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

C. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures. Install trap adapter fitting at the connection of the trap wall bend to the roughing-in connection at the wall.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and 4” stream height.

B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

3.5 CLEANING

A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Remove all stickers and protective plastic covering.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 47 16

01-697-027

SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   1. Motor controllers.
   2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F

J. Code Letter Designation:
   1. Motors 15HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller than 15HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324Tand larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
   1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   1. Permanent-split capacitor.
   2. Split phase.
   3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Sleeves.
   2. Grout.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

### 2.2 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
B. Select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch 1/2-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
   2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and .
D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
   3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 23 05 17
01-697-027

SECTION 23 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 23 05 18

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 05 29- HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel .

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel .

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

### 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 2.5 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

2. Base: Plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

D. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

E. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS
A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS
A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING
A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING
A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE
A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
   a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
   b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
   c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29
01-697-027

SECTION 23 05 48.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads

1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
4. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric .
   a. Surface Pattern: Ribbed or Waffle pattern.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Mounting Plates:
   a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
   b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.3 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
   a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
   b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.

4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
   a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top housing with elastomeric pad.

2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:
1. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
   a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top plate with elastomeric pad.
   c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
1. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
   a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.
1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene .
1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.11 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

END OF SECTION 23 05 48.13

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Duct labels.
4. Valve tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch for units up to 20 sq inches, 1/8 inch thick for larger equipment and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White .
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws .
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number..

### 2.2 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

### 2.3 DUCT LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: White.

C. Background Color: Blue or Green depending on service type.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook .

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 feet along each run. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Refrigerant Piping:
a. Background Color: Green.
b. Letter Color: White .
2. Natural or LP Gas Piping:
a. Background Color: Yellow.
b. Letter Color: White.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
1. Blue : For supply ducts.
2. Green : For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
3. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.

B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
a. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches , round .
b. Gas: 1-1/2 inches , round .
2. Valve-Tag Color:
a. Refrigerant: Natural .
b. Gas: Natural .
3. Letter Color:
a. Refrigerant: Black .
b. Gas: Black .

END OF SECTION 23 05 53
01-697-027

# SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This specification covers work that will be performed under a separate contract. Bids for testing and balancing will be received directly by the Owner. See Section 01 10 00 Summary.

B. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
   a. Constant-volume air systems.
   b. Variable-air-volume systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Certified TAB reports.

C. Sample report forms.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB .

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB .

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Contractor on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians.

1. Agenda Items:
   a. The Contract Documents examination report.
   b. The TAB plan.
   c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
   d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect/Engineer .

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

### 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Notice: Provide seven days advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
P. Report deficiencies to the Contractor, Architect/Engineer and Owner discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION
A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING
A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 or [SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation," Section 23 07 16 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 23 07 19 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS
A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
I. Check for airflow blockages.
J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
   1. Measure total airflow.
      a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
   2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
      a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
      b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
      c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
      d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
   3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
      a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
   4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
   5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
   6. Obtain approval from Architect/Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
   7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
   1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
      a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
   2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
   3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
   1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
   1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
   2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

E. Verify installation and operation of air treatment devices required as indicated on the mechanical equipment schedule.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
   a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
8. Record final fan-performance data.

C. Verify installation and operation of air treatment devices required as indicated on the mechanical equipment schedule.

3.7 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent .
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent .

3.8 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.9 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.

4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    f. Verify installation of air treatment device.
2. Motor Data:
    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Fan rpm.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    j. Return airflow in cfm.
    k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    l. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
1. Coil Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Coil type.
   d. Number of rows.
   e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
   f. Make and model number.
   g. Face area in sq. ft..
   h. Tube size in NPS.
   i. Tube and fin materials.
   j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Average face velocity in fpm.
   c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
   d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
   i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
   j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and unit size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Fuel type in input data.
   g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
   h. Ignition type.
   i. Burner-control types.
   j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
   k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
   l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
   m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
   c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
   d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
   e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
   f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
   g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
   i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
   j. Manifold pressure in psig.
   k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
   l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
   m. Motor voltage at each connection.
   n. Motor amperage for each phase.
   o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.

c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Air flow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Heat output in Btu/h.
b. Air flow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:
a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
a. System and air-handling-unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Apparatus used for test.
d. Area served.
e. Make.

f. Number from system diagram.
g. Type and model number.
h. Size.
i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. Instrument Calibration Reports:
1. Report Data:
a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.10 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93
01-697-027

SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

F. Fiber Blanket Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket . Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
a.
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.6 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 ; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal .

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, , length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

L. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" and fire-resistive joint sealers.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
   e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-

inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.

b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.

2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.

3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.

2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.

3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.

4. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.

2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.

3. Flexible connectors.

4. Vibration-control devices.

5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

6. Indoor, concealed exhaust or return air.

7. Indoor, exposed exhaust or return air.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board:1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.11 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be[ **one of**] the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
E. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
F. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
G. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
H. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
   1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.040 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13
01-697-027

# SECTION 23 09 00 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 23 09 93 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to this Section.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

B. I/O: Input/output.

C. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

D. PC: Personal computer.

E. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

F. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

### 1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Comply with the following performance requirements:

1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.
3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
   a. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   b. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   c. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
   d. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
   e. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F.
   f. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
   g. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
   h. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.

1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
5. Written description of sequence of operation.
6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
8. DDC System Hardware:
   a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
   b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
   c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
10. Controlled Systems:
    a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
    b. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
    c. Points list.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
   1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
   2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
   3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
   4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
   5. Calibration records and list of set points.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
   1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
   2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
   3. Device address list.
   4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
   5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B. Coordinate equipment with Section 28 31 11 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 28 31 12 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.

D. Coordinate equipment with Section 26 09 13 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.

E. Coordinate equipment with Section 26 24 16 "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

F. Coordinate equipment with Section 26 24 19 "Motor-Control Centers" to achieve compatibility with motor starters and annunciation devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Carrier iVu

B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.

C. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking

environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

2.2 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. Diagnostic Terminal Unit: Portable notebook-style, PC-based microcomputer terminal capable of accessing system data by connecting to system network with minimum configuration as follows:
   1. System: With one integrated USB 2.0 port, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
   2. Processor: Intel i7, 2.5 GHz.
   3. Random-Access Memory: 8 GB.
   4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1920 x 1080 pixels, 256-MB video memory.
   5. Monitor: 15 inches, LCD color.
   6. Keyboard: QWERTY 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
   7. Hard-Disk Drive: 500 GB.
   8. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48 .
   9. Pointing Device: Touch pad or other internal device.

B. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
   1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
      a. Global communications.
      b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
      c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
      d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
      e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
   3. Standard Application Programs:
      a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
      b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
      c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
      d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
      e. Remote communications.
      f. Maintenance management.
      g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
   4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

C. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
   1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
      a. Global communications.
      b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
      c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
   3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
   1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
   2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
   3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
   4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
   5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).
   6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
   7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
   1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
   2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
   3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

F. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
   1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
   2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
   3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
   4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.3 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
   1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72 -hour battery backup.
   2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
   3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
   4. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
   5. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

2.4 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

A. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.

B. Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F, and single- or double-pole contacts.

C. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.
   1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

D. Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.

E. Receiver Controllers: Single- or multiple-input models with control-point adjustment, direct or reverse acting with mechanical set-point adjustment with locking device, proportional band adjustment, authority adjustment, and proportional control mode.
   1. Remote-control-point adjustment shall be plus or minus 20 percent of sensor span, input signal of 3 to 13 psig.
   2. Proportional band shall extend from 2 to 20 percent for 5 psig.

3. Authority shall be 20 to 200 percent.
4. Air-supply pressure of 18 psig, input signal of 3 to 15 psig, and output signal of zero to supply pressure.
5. Gages: 2-1/2 inches in diameter, 2.5 percent wide-scale accuracy, and range to match transmitter input or output pressure.

2.5 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
4. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
5. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed .
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed .
6. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
7. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

C. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
1. Accuracy: 2 percent full range with linear output.
2. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
3. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed .
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed .
4. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
5. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of minus 22 to plus 185 deg F .
6. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

D. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
1. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
   a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
   b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
   c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg.
   d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
2. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
3. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
4. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
5. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

E. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
1. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
2. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.
3. Thermometer: Exposed .

F. Room sensor accessories include the following:
1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.
2. Guards: Metal wire, tamperproof in gymnasiums
3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

2.6 STATUS SENSORS

A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.

B. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig, piped across pump.

C. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.

D. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.

E. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

F. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

G. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

2.7 GAS DETECTION EQUIPMENT

A. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F and calibrated for 0 to 2 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output;, for wall mounting.

2.8 THERMOSTATS

A. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.
   1. Label switches "FAN ON-OFF" .
   2. Mount on single electric switch box.

B. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.
   1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
   2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
   3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
   4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
   5. Short-cycle protection.
   6. Programming based on every day of week.
   7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
   8. Battery replacement without program loss.
   9. Thermostat display features include the following:
      a. Time of day.
      b. Actual room temperature.
      c. Programmed temperature.
      d. Programmed time.
      e. Duration of timed override.
      f. Day of week.
      g. System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."

C. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.

D. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.
   1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
   2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.

E. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.

F. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.

G. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, automatic-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
   1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
   2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

H. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, **automatic**-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
   1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
   2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

I. Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig, and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

2.9 HUMIDISTATS

A. Pneumatic Room Humidistats: Wall-mounting, proportioning type with adjustable throttling range, 20 to 90 percent operating range, and cover matching room thermostat cover.

B. Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Electric insertion, 2-position type with adjustable, 2 percent throttling range, 20 to 80 percent operating range, and single- or double-pole contacts.

2.10 ACTUATORS

A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.

B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

1. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
2. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
   a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
   b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
   c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft of damper.
   d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
   e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
   f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
3. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
4. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
5. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
6. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 -V ac.
7. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
8. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
9. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F .
10. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F.
11. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed .

2.11 DAMPERS

A. Dampers: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch-minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches and length of 48 inches.

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.12 CONTROL CABLE

A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.

B. Verify that duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.

1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

D. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:

1. Entrances.
2. Public areas.
3. Gymnasiums

E. Install automatic dampers according to Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

F. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

G. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

H. Install steam and condensate instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 23 22 16 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties."

I. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 23 23 00 "Refrigerant Piping."

J. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts".

K. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
5. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.
6. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
7. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
8. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
9. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
10. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
11. Check DDC system as follows:
    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
   a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
   b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
   c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
   d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
   e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Temperature:
   a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
   b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
6. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
7. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
8. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
9. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 09 00

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 11 26 - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.
6. Storage containers.
7. Vaporizers.
8. Air mixers.
9. Concrete bases.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
1. For Piping Containing Only Vapor:
   a. Piping and Valves: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.
2. For Piping Containing Liquid:
   a. Piping between Shutoff Valves: 350 psig unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Piping Other Than Above: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Valves and Fittings: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.

B. LPG System Pressure within Buildings: One pressure range. 0.5 psig or less.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Piping specialties.
2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
5. Dielectric fittings.
6. Storage containers.
7. Vaporizers.
8. Air mixers.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing LPG piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging coating and protect from direct sunlight.
D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing LPG Service: Do not interrupt LPG service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of LPG supply according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of LPG service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of LPG service without Owner's written permission.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 08 31 13 "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
   1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
   2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
   3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
   4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
      a. Material Group: 1.1.
      b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
      c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
      d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
      e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground, and stainless steel underground.
B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
   1. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
   2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
      a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
         1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
         2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
   3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
   4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
   5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
   6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
C. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type L.
   1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
   2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
      a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
      b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
   3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
D. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type L.
   1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
   2. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
E. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
   1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
   2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
   3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
      a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.

b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B with corrosion-protective coating covering.
c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
e. Tracer wire connection.
f. Ultraviolet shield.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Flexible Piping Joints:
1. Approved for LPG service.
2. Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
3. Minimum working pressure of 250 psig and 250 deg F operating temperature.
4. Flanged- or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and shall be capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment.
5. Maximum 36-inch length for liquid LPG lines.

B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 36 inches

C. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

D. T-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

E. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with ASME B16.33 and UL 842.
1. CWP Rating: 250 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Socket ends for brazed joints.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing by CSA or agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Valves 1-1/4 inch and larger shall be suitable for LPG service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Vapor Service: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inch to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

D. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
   1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
   2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
   3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

E. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   2. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   5. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
   6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
   8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
   6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
   8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
   1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   2. Plug: Bronze.
   3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
   5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
   6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   7. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
   1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126 Class B.
   2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
   3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
   4. Stem Seal: Compatible with LPG.
   5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
   7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
   8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

I. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.
   1. Body: PE.
   2. Ball: PE.
   3. Stem: Acetal.
   4. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
   5. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
   6. CWP Rating: 80 psig.
   7. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
   8. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.

9. Include plastic valve extension.
10. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

J. Valve Boxes:
1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for LPG.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
9. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Description:
a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Description:
a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Description:
a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

B. Tracer Wire: yellow insulated copper tracer wire not less than 12 AWG and with insulation type suitable for direct burial.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off LPG to premises or piping section.

B. Inspect LPG piping according to NFPA 58, NFPA 54, and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with NFPA 58, NFPA 54, and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.4 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 58, NFPA 54, and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for installation and purging of LPG piping.

B. Install underground, LPG piping buried at least 18 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

1. If LPG piping is installed less than 18 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.

C. Install underground, PE, LPG piping according to ASTM D 2774.

D. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

E. Joints for connection to inlets and outlets on vaporizers, air mixers, regulators, and valves may be flanged or threaded to match the equipment.

F. Install connection tee for pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 23 05 19 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.5 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LPG piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

K. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

L. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying.

1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

M. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

N. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

O. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed LPG piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: LPG piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.

2. In Floor Channels: Install LPG piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.

3. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.

a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

4. Prohibited Locations:

a. Do not install LPG piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.

b. Do not install LPG piping in solid walls or partitions.

P. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

Q. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

R. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections. All unions and flanged connections shall be dielectric type.

S. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.

T. Install connection tee for pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 23 05 19 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing connector.

B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.

C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.

E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

## 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 22, "Pipe and Tube."

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for LPG service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

## 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for horizontal, drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8: Maximum span, 84 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Install LPG piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

E. Refer to the drawings for type of connection at each piece of gas-fired equipment.

3.10 STORAGE CONTAINER INSTALLATION

A. Fill storage container to at least 80 percent capacity with propane.

B. Install piping connections with swing joints or flexible connectors to allow for storage container settlement and for thermal expansion and contraction.

C. Ground containers according to NFPA 780. Grounding is specified in Section 26 41 13 "Lightning Protection for Structures."

D. Set storage containers in felt pads on concrete or steel saddles. Install corrosion protection at container-to-felt contact.

3.11 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

C. Install tracer wire adjacent to all underground piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the piping.

3.12 PAINTING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior LPG piping.

B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.

a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.

b. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).

c. Color: Safety yellow on roofs, all other locations shall match downspout color.

C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.

a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.

b. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).

c. Color: Safety yellow.

D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.13 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to seismic codes at Project.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.

2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.

3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.

4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

6. Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or Section 03 30 53 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test, inspect, and purge LPG according to NFPA 58, NFPA 54, and the International Fuel Gas Code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. LPG piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.15 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain LPG equipment.

3.16 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground LPG liquid piping (at the storage tank) shall be one of the following:
   1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 80 steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
   3. Annealed-temper copper tube, Type L with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.

B. Underground LPG vapor piping shall be the following:
   1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat-fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.

C. Aboveground LPG vapor piping shall be one of the following:
   1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
   2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings.
   3. Annealed-temper copper tube, Type L with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.

D. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.17 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
   1. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
   2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
   1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints. Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 4-inches shall not be used except where approved by the local authority.
   2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
   3. Drawn-temper copper tube, Type L with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
   1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints. Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 4-inches shall not be used except where approved by the local authority.
   2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

D. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.18 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.

B. Underground Vapor Piping:
   1. PE valves.
   2. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, lubricated plug valves.
   3. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated plug valves.

3.19 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground Liquid Piping (at the storage tank):
   1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

B. Interior Valves:
   1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
   2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
   3. Bronze plug valve.
   4. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.

C. Exterior Valves:
   1. Bronze plug valve.
   2. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.

END OF SECTION 23 11 26

SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
   2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
   3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
   2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
   1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 .
   2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
   1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      a. Type I, Flexible: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
   a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
   2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
      a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
      b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
   1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel ; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
   1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
   2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
   3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
   4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
   5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
   6. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
   7. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
      a. Fan discharges.
      b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
      c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
   1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
   2. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
   3. Water resistant.
   4. Mold and mildew resistant.
   5. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
   6. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
   7. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
   8. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
   9. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
11. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
12. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
13. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
14. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
15. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-

handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round

Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
   a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
   a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. N/A.

B. Supply, Return & Outside Air Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Low Pressure Air-Handling Systems:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12 .
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6 .
2. Ducts Connected to Medium Pressure Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
   e.

C. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
   a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24 .
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12 .
   e.

D. Intermediate Reinforcement:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel .
E. Liner:
   1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I , 1-1/2 inches thick.
   2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I 1-1/2 inches] thick.
   3. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I , 1 inch thick.
F. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
   1. Supply Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.
G. Elbow Configuration:
   1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
      a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
         1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
         2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
      b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
         1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
         2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
         3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
      c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
         1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
         2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
         3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
   2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
      a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
   3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
      a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
         1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
         2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
         3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
         4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
      b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
      c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam .
H. Branch Configuration:
   1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
      a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
      b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
   2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
      a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
      b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
      c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Fire dampers.
4. Flange connectors.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Description: Gravity balanced.

B. Maximum Air Velocity: 3000 fpm .

C. Maximum System Pressure: 3-inch wg .

D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum , with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, end pivoted, maximum 6-inch width,0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.

F. Blade Action: Parallel.

G. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.

H. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch .

I. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum .

J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K. Bearings: Synthetic pivot bushings.

L. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
   a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Aluminum.

8. Screen Type: Bird .
9. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Standard leakage rating.
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:
a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel .
b. Mitered and welded corners.
c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
d. Galvanized -steel, 0.064 inch thick.
5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel .
6. Bearings:
a. Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic .
b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Type: Static ; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05 thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.6 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
B. Material: Galvanized steel.
C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.7 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
D. Vane Construction: Double wall.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Vision panel.

d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to 24 inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.
H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
1. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
J. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 12 by 12 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 18 by 18 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 24 by 24 inches.
K. Label access doors according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
M. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct strapped in place.
N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands .
O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.

3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00
01-697-027

SECTION 23 34 23 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.
7. Fan speed controllers.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corporation.
2. Breidert Air Products.
3. Carnes Company.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Loren Cook Company.
6. PennBarry.
7. Twin Cities.
8. Venco.

B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle ; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.

3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Equipment Mounting:
1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch . Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

G. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 34 23

01-697-027

SECTION 23 36 00 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.

1. Air terminal units.
2. Liners and adhesives.
3. Sealants and gaskets.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish two spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek Company.
2. Carnes.
3. Carrier Corp.
4. Krueger.
5. METALAIRE, Inc.
6. Nailor Industries Inc.
7. Price Industries.
8. Titus.
9. Trane; a business of American Standard Companies.

B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

C. Casing: 0.034-inch steel , single wall.

1. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. Damper Position: Normally open .

E. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
   1. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
   2. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable.)
   3. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
   4. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
   5. Fan interlock contacts.
   6. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils more than 48 A).
   7. Staged heat.

F. Direct Digital Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Section 23 09 00 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:
   1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, spring return open .
   2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
      a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
      b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
      c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
      d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 23 09 00 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
   3. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

G. Control Sequence:
   1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
   2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostatic sensor.

2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Steel Cables: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603 .

D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

E. Air Terminal Unit Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

F. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes and plates for units with steel casings; aluminum for units with aluminum casings.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.
   1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
   1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
   2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
   3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
   4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
   5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.3 CONNECTIONS
A. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."
B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION
A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
C. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
D. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
E. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE
A. startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
4. Verify that control connections are complete.
5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION
A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 23 36 00
01-697-027

SECTION 23 37 13 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Fixed face grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
b. Carnes.
c. Krueger.
d. METALAIRE, Inc.
e. Nailor Industries Inc.
f. Price Industries.
g. Titus.
h. Tuttle & Bailey.

2.2 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Square Ceiling Diffusers :

1. Material: Steel .
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white
3. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches .
4. Face Style: Three cone or Four cone
5. Mounting: T-bar.
6. Pattern: Fixed.
7. Accessories:

a. Factory insulated backpan.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Fixed Face Grille :

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white .
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
4. Mounting: Lay in.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 41 00 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pleated panel filters.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Provide two complete set(s) of filters for each filter bank. If system includes prefilters, provide only prefilters.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:
   1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality"; Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
   2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.1 for arrestance and ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.

C. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

### 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.

B. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 2.

C. Media: Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
   1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
   3. Welded wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
   4. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
   5. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

D. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer sealed or bonded to the media.

E. Capacities and Characteristics:
   1. Thickness or Depth: 2 inches.
   2. Maximum or Rated Face Velocity: 500fpm.
   3. Efficiency: 90 percent on particles 20 micrometers and larger at 500 fpm.
   4. Arrestance: 90-93 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1.
   5. MERV Rating: 7 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.

B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.

C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

### 3.2 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 23 41 00

SECTION 23 44 00 – AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Carbon Fiber, Needle Point Bipolar Ionization.
2. Rack Mounted Needle Point Bipolar Ionization.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Indoor Air Quality calculations using the formulas within ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2007 to validate acceptable indoor air quality at the quantity of outside air scheduled (when projects are designed with outside air reduction).
4. Copy of UL 867 independent ozone test.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: The Air Purification Technology shall have been tested by UL or Intertek/ETL to prove conformance to UL 867-2007 including the ozone chamber testing and peak ozone test for electronic devices.

B. Air purification systems shall be UL & CE listed.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installing Contractor agrees to repair or replace devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Global Plasma Solutions.
2. Bioclimatic.
3. Atmosair
4. Plasma Air.

2.2 CARBON FIBER, NEEDLE POINT BIPOLAR IONIZATION

A. Description: Each Plasma Generator with Bi-polar Ionization output shall include the required number of electrodes and power generators sized to the air handling equipment capacity. A minimum of one electrode pair per 2,400 CFM of air flow shall be provided. Ionization needles utilized in DC based systems shall be made of carbon fiber brushes to eliminate fouling.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Wiring, conduit and junction boxes shall be installed within housing plenums in accordance with NEC NFPA 70.

C. Electrodes shall be energized only when the main unit disconnect is turned on and the fan is operating.

D. Ionization Output: The ionization output shall be controlled such that an equal number of positive and negative ions are produced. Imbalanced levels shall not be acceptable. An LED indicator shall be provided to prove ion output is activated.

2.3 RACK MOUNTED, NEEDLE POINT BIPOLAR IONIZATION

A. Description: Where so indicated on the plans and/or schedules Plasma Generator(s) shall be supplied and installed. The mechanical contractor shall mount the Plasma Generator and wire it to the remote mount power supply using the high voltage cables provided by the air purification manufacturer. Each plasma generator shall be designed with an aluminum casing, liquid tight flexible conduit and a high voltage quick connector.

B. Each Plasma Generator with Bi-polar Ionization output shall include a minimum of sixteen 316 medical grade stainless steel ion needles per foot of coil face width shall be provided. The entire cooling coil width shall have equal distribution of ionization across the face. The plasma electrode shall require no more than one inch in the direction of airflow for mounting. All hardware required for mounting shall be provided by the air purification manufacturer except self tapping screws

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Wiring, conduit and junction boxes shall be installed within housing plenums in accordance with NEC NFPA 70. Rack mounted devices shall be powered by 24V connection through the equipment.

D. Electrodes shall be energized only when the main unit disconnect is turned on and the fan is operating.

E. Ionization Output: The ionization output shall be controlled such that an equal number of positive and negative ions are produced. Imbalanced levels shall not be acceptable. An LED indicator shall be provided to prove ion output is activated.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Effectively killing microorganisms downstream of the bi-polar ionization equipment (mold, bacteria, virus, etc.).
2. Controlling gas phase contaminants generated from human occupants, building structure and furnishings.
3. Capable of reducing static space charges.
4. All manufacturers shall provide documentation by an independent NELEC accredited laboratory that proves the product has minimum kill rates for the following pathogens given the allotted time and in a space condition:
   a. MRSA - >95% in 30 minutes or less
   b. E.coli - > 95% in 15 minutes or less
   c. TB - > 65% in 60 minutes or less
   d. C. diff - >80% in 30 minutes or less
5. When mounted to the air entering side of a cooling coil, keep the cooling coil free from pathogen and mold growth.

2.5 CONTROLS AND SAFETIES

A. All Plasma Generators shall have internal short circuit protection, overload protection, and automatic fault reset.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. The installing contractor shall mount and wire the Plasma device within the air handling unit specified or as shown or the plans. The contractor shall follow all manufacturer IOM instructions during installation.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. Air Handling Equipment fifteen (15) tons and under indicated on the mechanical drawings to have air treatment devices shall be provided with the carbon fiber, needle point bipolar ionization devices as specified above. Multiple devices may be necessary due to cfm requirements.

D. Air Handling Equipment over fifteen (15) tons indicated on the mechanical drawings to have air treatment devices shall be provided with the rack mounted, needle point bipolar ionization devices as specified above. Device configuration shall be suitable for equipment cfm quantities as scheduled.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Train owner’s personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment. .

END OF SECTION 23 44 00

01-697-027

SECTION 23 74 13 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (pad mounted units) with the following components and accessories:
   1. Direct-expansion cooling.
   2. Hot-gas reheat.
   3. Gas furnace.
   4. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each PMU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For PMUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fan Belts: Two sets for each belt-driven fan.
   2. Filters: Two sets of filters for each unit.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Compliance:
   1. Comply with ARI 203/110 and ARI 303/110 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for PMUs.
   2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for PMUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:
   1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
   2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
   3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of PMUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
   2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. AAON, Inc.
   2. Carrier Corporation.
   3. Lennox Industries Inc.
   4. Trane; American Standard Companies, Inc.

2.2 CASING

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.

B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.

C. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
   2. Thickness: 1 inch.
   3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
   4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

D. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of stainless-steel sheet, or non-corrosive composite material and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.3 FANS

A. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multispeed motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

B. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multi-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

C. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.

D. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

E. Fan shall be suitable for staged air volume operation with compressor cycling. Comply with requirements in 23 09 93 “Sequence of Operation for HVAC Controls”.

2.4 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
   1. Aluminum -plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
   2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
   3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
   4. Condensate Drain Pan: Stainless steel or non-corrosive composite formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
   1. Aluminum -plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.

C. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:
   1. Aluminum -plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
   2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Two

B. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.

C. Refrigeration Specialties:
   1. Refrigerant: R-410A .
   2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
   3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
   4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
   5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
   6. Minimum off-time relay.
   7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
   8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
   9. Low-ambient kit with head pressure control.
   10. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
   1. Pleated: Minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 7 .

2.7 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.
   1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.

B. Burners: Stainless steel.
   1. Fuel: LP gas.
   2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented.
E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.
F. Safety Controls:
1. Gas Control Valve: Two stage.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS
A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION
A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS
A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 23 09 00 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
1. DDC Controller:
2. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
3. Safety Control Operation:
a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Section 28 31 11 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 28 31 12 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."
B. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
3. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
a. Adjusting set points.
b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
g. Monitoring cooling load.
h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

2.11 ACCESSORIES
A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
B. Low-ambient kit for operation down to 35 deg F.
C. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
D. VFD for indoor fan control on units with VAV application. See mechanical drawings. VFD shall receive a 0-10 Vdc signal from the unit control based upon supply static pressure, and shall cause the drive to accelerate or decelerate as required to maintain the supply static pressure setpoint. When subjected to high ambient return conditions the VFD shall reduce its output frequency to maintain operation.
E. Supply side smoke detector.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION
A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of PMUs.
B. Examine roughing-in for PMUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural steel equipment stand. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure PMUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.

B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.

1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 23 11 23 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing PMU and air-distribution systems, clean all air pathways and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain PMUs.

END OF SECTION 23 74 13

01-697-027

SECTION 23 74 33 - DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes factory-packaged units capable of supplying up to 100 percent outdoor air and providing cooling only and heating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Prepare the following by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer:
   a. Mounting Details: For securing and flashing roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
   b. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Roof-curb mounting details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Size and location of unit-mounted rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to roof curb.
2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.

B. Startup service reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: Two sets for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: Two sets for each unit.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Aaon.
2. AAON.
3. Greenheck.
4. Trane.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. Cabinet Thermal Performance:

1. Maximum Overall U-Value: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Maximum Overall U-Value: 0.10 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F .
3. Include effects of metal-to-metal contact and thermal bridges in the calculations.

C. Cabinet Surface Condensation:

1. Cabinet shall have additional insulation and vapor seals if required to prevent condensation on the interior and exterior of the cabinet.
2. Portions of cabinet located downstream from the cooling coil shall have a thermal break at each thermal bridge between the exterior and interior casing to prevent condensation from occurring on the interior and exterior surfaces. The thermal break shall not compromise the structural integrity of the cabinet.

D. Maximum Cabinet Leakage: 1 percent of the total supply-air flow at a pressure rating equal to the fan shut-off pressure.

E. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

A. Construction: Double wall.
B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with paint finish .
C. Interior Casing Material: Galvanized steel.
D. Lifting and Handling Provisions: Factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs.
E. Base Rails: Galvanized -steel rails for mounting on roof curb or pad as indicated.
F. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
1. Service Doors: Hinged access doors with gaskets. Material and construction of doors shall match material and construction of cabinet in which doors are installed.
G. Roof: Standing seam or membrane; sloped to drain water.
H. Floor: Reinforced, metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation shall be below metal walking surface.
I. Cabinet Insulation:
1. Type: Fibrous-glass duct lining complying with ASTM C 1071, Type II,flexible elastomeric insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, sheet materials, or foam filled panels..
2. Thickness: 1 inch .
3. Insulation Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Suitable for adhesive, mechanical, or welding attachment to casing without damaging liner and without causing air leakage when applied as recommended by manufacturer.
J. Condensate Drain Pans:
1. Shape: Rectangular, with slope in at least two planes to direct water toward drain connection.
2. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from cooling coils including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends.
a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1 .
b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
3. Material: Stainless-steel sheetDrain Connection:
a. Located at lowest point of pan.
b. Terminated with threaded nipple.
4. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
K. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1 for resistance to mold and erosion.

2.4 SUPPLY FAN AND EXHAUST FANS

A. Forward-Curved Fan Type: Centrifugal; statically and dynamically balanced.
1. Fan Wheel Material: Galvanized steel, mounted on solid-steel shaft.
2. Bearings: Self-aligning, permanently lubricated ball bearings .
B. Service Factor for Belt Drive Applications: V-belt drive with matching fan pulley and adjustable motor sheaves and belt assembly with minimum 1.5 service factor.
C. Motors:
1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Enclosure: Open dripproof .
3. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron .
4. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
D. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted to fan casing with elastomeric or spring isolators.
E. The unit controller shall proportionally control the ECM, Electronically Commutated Motor on the supply and exhaust fans. The supply fan shall be controlled to maintain an adjustable duct pressure set point. A duct static pressure sensor shall be factory mounted in the control panel. The field shall furnish and install the pneumatic tubing for the duct static pressure sensor. The unit controller shall provide discharge air temperature control with the compressor modulation.

2.5 COOLING AND HOT GAS REHEAT COILS

A. Capacity Ratings: Comply with ASHRAE 33 and ARI 410 and coil bearing the ARI label.
B. Coil Casing Material: Manufacturer's standard material .
C. Tube Material: Copper .
D. Tube Header Material: Manufacturer's standard material .
E. Fin Material: Aluminum .
F. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
G. Leak Test: Coils shall be leak tested with air underwater.
H. Refrigerant Coil Capacity Reduction: Circuit coils for interleaved control.
I. Refrigerant Coil Suction and Distributor Header Materials: Seamless copper tube with brazed joints.

2.6 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM

A. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

B. Refrigerant Charge: Factory charged with refrigerant and filled with oil.

C. Compressor:

1. Multiple scroll compressors with a minimum of 2 stages of cooling mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure

D. Refrigerant: R-410A .

1. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.
2. Provide unit with operating charge of refrigerant.

E. Refrigeration System Specialties:

1. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
2. Refrigerant dryer.
3. High-pressure switch.
4. Low-pressure switch.
5. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
6. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
7. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.

F. Refrigerant condenser and reheat condenser coils:

1. Capacity Ratings: Complying with ASHRAE 33 and ARI 410 and coil bearing the ARI label.
2. Tube Material: Copper.
3. Fin Material: Aluminum .
4. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
5. Leak Test: Coils shall be leak tested with air underwater.
6. Coating: Phenolic epoxy corrosion-protection coating after assembly.

G. Condenser Fan Assembly:

1. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades.
2. Fan Motors:
   a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   b. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed non-ventilating (TENV) or totally enclosed air over (TEAO) enclosure.
   c. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron .
   d. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated bearings .
   e. Built-in overcurrent and thermal-overload protection.
   f. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
3. Fan Safety Guards: Steel with corrosion-resistant coating.

H. Safety Controls:

1. Compressor motor and condenser coil fan motor low ambient lockout.
2. Overcurrent protection for compressor motor.

2.7 INDIRECT-FIRED GAS FURNACE HEATING

A. Furnace Assembly:

1. Factory assembled, piped, and wired.
2. Comply with requirements in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code," and ANSI Z21.47, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces."
3. AGA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of AGA.

B. Burners:

1. Heat-Exchanger Material: Stainless steel with a minimum thermal efficiency of 80 percent.
2. Fuel: LP gas.
3. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger Drain Pan Material: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Power vent with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.

E. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Control Valve: Electronic modulating.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 OUTDOOR-AIR INTAKE HOOD

A. Type: Manufacturer's standard hood or louver.

B. Materials: Match cabinet.

C. Bird Screen: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Configuration: Designed to inhibit wind-driven rain and snow from entering unit.

2.9 FILTERS

A. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:
   1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
   2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
   3. Thickness: 2 inches .
   4. Minimum Arrestance: 90 , according to ASHRAE 52.1.
   5. Minimum Merv: 7 , according to ASHRAE 52.2.
   6. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats and held by self-supporting wire grid.

B. Mounting Frames:
   1. Panel filters arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or from access plenum.
   2. Extended surface filters arranged for flat orientation, removable from access plenum.
   3. Galvanized or stainless steel with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

2.10 ENTHALPY WHEELS

A. Casing:
   1. Steel with standard factory-painted finish.
   2. Integral purge section limiting carryover of exhaust air to between 0.05 percent at 1.6-inch wg and 0.20 percent at 4-inch wg differential pressure.
   3. Casing seals on periphery of rotor and on duct divider and purge section.
   4. Support vertical rotors on grease-lubricated ball bearings having extended grease fittings or permanently lubricated bearings. Support horizontal rotors on tapered roller bearing.

B. Rotor: Glass-fiber, Polymer, or aluminum core wheel impregnated with nonmigrating, water-selective, desiccant coating.

C. Drive: Fractional horsepower motor and gear reducer and self-adjusting multilink belt around outside of rotor.
   1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

D. Controls:
   1. Starting relay, factory mounted and wired, and manual motor starter for field wiring.

2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. General Electrical Power Connection Requirements: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.

B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R , mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key,

C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

D. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.

E. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.

F. Receptacle: Factory wire unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.

G. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

2.12 CONTROLS

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 23 09 00 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

B. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.

C. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions.

D. Unit-Mounted Status Panel:
   1. Cooling/Off/Heating Controls: Control operational mode.
   2. Damper Position: Indicate position of outdoor-air dampers in terms of percentage of outdoor air.
   3. Status Lights:
      a. Filter dirty.
      b. Fan operating.
      c. Cooling operating.
      d. Heating operating.
      e. General alarm.
   4. Digital Numeric Display:
      a. Outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
      b. Outdoor dew point temperature.
      c. Supply temperature.

d. Return air relative humidity.

E. Control Dampers:
1. Damper Location: Factory installed inside unit for ease of blade axle and bushing service. Arrange dampers located in a mixing box to achieve convergent airflow to minimize stratification.
2. Factory installed recirculation, and outside air damper.
3. Damper Leakage: Comply with requirements in AMCA 500-D. Leakage shall not exceed 6.5 cfm per sq. ft. at a static-pressure differential of 4.0 inches water column when a torque of 5 inch pounds per sq. ft. is applied to the damper jackshaft.
4. Damper Rating: Rated for close-off pressure equal to the fan shutoff pressure.
5. Damper Label: Bear the AMCA seal for both air leakage and performance.
6. Blade Configuration: Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control and equipment isolation service and use modulating control when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use an opposed-blade configuration.
7. Damper Frame Material: Extruded aluminum galvanized steel or stainless steel.
8. Blade Type: Single-thickness metal reinforced with multiple V-grooves .
9. Blade Material: Extruded aluminum .
10. Maximum Blade Width: 6 inches.
11. Maximum Blade Length: 48 inches.
12. Blade Seals: Replaceable, continuous perimeter vinyl seals and jambs with stainless-steel compression-type seals.
13. Bearings: Thrust bearings for vertical blade axles.

F. Damper Operators:
1. Factory-installed electric operator for each damper assembly with one operator for each damper assembly mounted to the damper frame.
2. Operator capable of shutoff against fan pressure and able to operate the damper with sufficient reserve power to achieve smooth modulating action and proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
3. Adjustable Stops: For both maximum and minimum positions.
4. Position Indicator and Graduated Scale: Factory installed on each actuator with words "OPEN" and "CLOSED," or similar identification, at travel limits.
5. Spring-return operator to fail-safe; either closed or open as required by application.
6. Operator Type: Direct coupled, designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
7. Position feedback Signal: For remote monitoring of damper position.
8. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
9. Circuitry: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

G. Refrigeration System Controls:
1. Unit-mounted enthalpy controller shall lock out refrigerant system when outdoor-air enthalpy is less than 28 Btu/lb of dry air or outdoor-air temperature is less than 60 deg F.
2. Relative-humidity sensor energizes dehumidifier operation when relative humidity is more than 50 percent.

H. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display unit status and alarms.
1. Hardwired Points:
a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm .
b. Control: On-off operation, supply temperature set-point adjustment space humidity set-point adjustment .
2. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control panel shall be available through the BAS.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex Receptacle: Factory mounted with 20 amp 120 V GFI duplex receptacle and weatherproof cover.

B. Supply side, factory mounted smoke detector.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install air units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.

D. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

E. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to sanitary drain.

1. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D 1785, with solvent-welded fittings.
   a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Pipe Size: Same size as condensate drain pan connection.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct Connections:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."
2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.

1. Install electrical devices furnished by unit manufacturer but not factory mounted.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Inspect units for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
   a. High-limit heat exchanger.
   b. Alarms.
4. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
5. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits and measure and record the following:
   a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
   b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
   c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
   d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
6. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
   a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
   b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
7. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
8. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
9. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
10. Verify that filters are installed.
11. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
12. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
13. Verify bearing lubrication.
14. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
15. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
16. Start unit.
17. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
18. Operate unit for run-in period.
19. Calibrate controls.
20. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.

21. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
22. Verify operational sequence of controls.
23. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
    a. Supply-air volume.
    b. Return-air flow.
    c. Outdoor-air flow.

B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.

C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.

D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 23 74 33

01-697-027

# SECTION 23 81 13 - PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR-CONDITIONERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged terminal air conditioners and their accessories and controls, in the following configurations:
   1. Through-the-wall air conditioners.
   2. Heat-pump units.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit EA 4: Documentation indicating that equipment and refrigerants comply.
   2. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For packaged terminal air conditioners. Include plans, elevations, sections, details for wall penetrations, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Color Samples: For unit cabinet, discharge grille, and exterior louver, and for each color and texture specified.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged terminal air conditioners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Ventilation Rate Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

### 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of packaged terminal air conditioners and wall construction with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged terminal air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

   1. Warranty Period for Sealed Refrigeration System: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion, including components and labor.
   2. Warranty Period for Non-Sealed System Parts: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion, including only components and excluding labor.
   3. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
   1. Amana,
   2. Gree,
   3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Appliances.
   4. LG

### 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, self-contained, packaged terminal air conditioner with room cabinet, electric refrigeration system, heating, and temperature controls; fully charged with refrigerant and filled with oil; with cord-connected or hardwired chassis per electrical documents.

### 2.3 CHASSIS

A. Cabinet: Removable front panel with concealed latches.
   1. Mounting: Wall with wall sleeve .

2. Discharge Grille: Reversible polycarbonate discharge grille allowing upward and horizontal airflow.
3. Louvers: Extruded aluminum with enamel finish ; bronze color.
4. Finish: Baked enamel.
5. Access Door: Hinged door in top of cabinet for access to controls.

B. Refrigeration System: Direct-expansion indoor coil with capillary restrictor; and hermetically sealed scroll compressor with vibration isolation and overload protection.
1. Indoor and Outdoor Coils: Seamless copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins.
2. Accumulator.
3. Constant-pressure expansion valve.
4. Reversing valve.
5. Charge: R-410A.

C. Indoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal; with motor and positive-pressure ventilation damper with electric operator.

D. Filters: Washable polyurethane in molded plastic frame.

E. Condensate Drain: Drain pan to direct condensate to outdoor coil for re-evaporation and piping to direct condensate to underground piping.

F. Outdoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal or propeller type with separate motor.
1. Indoor and Outdoor Fan Motors: Two speed; comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
a. Fan Motors: Permanently lubricated split capacitor.
b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
c. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

2.4 HEATING

A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium-wire, electric-resistance heating elements with contactor and high-temperature-limit switch.

2.5 CONTROLS

A. Control Module: Unit-mounted digital panel with touchpad temperature control and with touchpad for heating, cooling, and fan operation. Include the following features:
1. Low Ambient Lockout Control: Prevents cooling-cycle operation below 40 deg F outdoor air temperature.
2. Heat-Pump Ambient Control: Field-adjustable switch changes to heat-pump heating operation above 40 deg F and to supplemental heating below plus 25 deg F.
3. Temperature-Limit Control: Prevents occupant from exceeding preset setup temperature.
4. Building Automation System Interface: Allows remote on-off control with setback temperature control.
5. Reverse-Cycle Defrost: Solid-state sensor monitors frost buildup on outdoor coil and reverses unit to melt frost.

B. Outdoor Air: Motorized intake damper. Open intake when unit indoor air fan runs.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Factory test to comply with ARI 300, "Sound Rating and Sound Transmission Loss of Packaged Terminal Equipment."

B. Unit Performance Ratings: Factory test to comply with ARI 310/380/CSA C744, "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances and tolerances.

B. Install wall sleeves in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.2 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

B. After installation, verify the following:
1. Unit is level and is flashed in exterior wall.
2. Unit casing has no visible damage.
3. Compressor, air-cooled condenser coil, and fans have no visible damage.
4. Labels are clearly visible.
5. Controls are connected and operable.
6. Shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps are removed.

7. Filters are installed and clean.
8. Drain pan and drain line are installed correctly.
9. Electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements in electrical Sections.
10. Installation. Perform startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions, including the following:
    a. Lubricate bearings on fan.
    b. Check fan-wheel rotation for correct direction without vibration and binding.

C. After startup service and performance test, change filters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 23 81 13

01-697-027

SECTION 23 81 19 - SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, air-cooled air-conditioning units with refrigerant compressors and controls intended for indoor installations.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For self-contained air conditioners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: Two set(s) of filters for each unit.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ARI Compliance:

1. Applicable requirements in ARI 210/240.
2. Applicable requirements in ARI 340/360.
3. Applicable requirements in ARI 390.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Ventilation Rate Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of self-contained air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:

a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bard Manufacturing Company.
2. Marvair.
3. Intertherm.

2.2 PACKAGED UNITS

A. Description: Factory assembled, wired, and tested; and fully charged with refrigerant and oil.

B. Configuration: Vertical, wall mounted; horizontal discharge.

C. Disconnect Switch: Factory mounted on cabinet.

2.3 CABINET

A. Frame and Panels: Structural-steel frame with galvanized-steel panels and access doors or panels and sloped top. Hinged, lockable service doors provided for filter, heat exchanger, and indoor blower motor service.

1. Exterior-Surface Finish: Dark Bronze.
2. Interior-Surface Finish: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Mounting Brackets: Full length side mounting brackets integral to the cabinet.

C. Insulation: Cooling section shall be full insulated with 1” fiberglass.

2.4 SUPPLY AIR FAN

A. Fan Material: Galvanized steel.

B. Configuration: Double-width, double-inlet, forward-curved centrifugal fan; statically and dynamically balanced.
C. Drive: Direct, with fan and motor resiliently mounted.
D. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
E. Isolation: Mount fan and motor on common subbase and mount assembly on isolators.
F. Outdoor-Air-Intake Accessories:
1. Motorized Outdoor-Air Damper: Motorized, two-position blade damper allowing induction of up to 40 percent outdoor air; with spring-return, low-voltage damper motor.

2.5 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM
A. Compressor: Step Capacity, Scroll type, hermetically sealed, 3600 rpm maximum, and resiliently mounted with positive lubrication, internal motor protection, sound blanket, and discharge muffler.
B. Refrigerant Coils (Indoor and Outdoor for Air-Cooled Units): Seamless copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins.
1. Refrigerant Circuits: A separate circuit for each compressor, with externally equalized thermal-expansion valve, filter dryer, sight glass, high-pressure relief valve, and charging valves.
2. Mount coil assembly over stainless-steel or composite drain pan complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
3. Refrigerant: R-410A.
4. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
5. Refrigerant dryer.
6. High-pressure switch.
7. Low-pressure switch.
8. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
9. Low ambient control.
10. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.

2.6 HEATING SECTION
A. Gas Burner: 18 gauge stainless steel of mechanically joined tubular construction; direct spark ignition system with remote ignition sensor; field convertible (natural or liquid petroleum) two stage gas burner; induced draft mechanical combustion system with pressure proving switch.

2.7 CONTROLS
A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 23 09 00 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 23 09 93 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls."
B. Control Package: Factory wired, including contactor, high- and low-pressure cutouts, internal-winding thermostat for compressor, control-circuit transformer, and noncycling reset relay.
C. Phase Monitor: Unit lockout if phase imbalance is detected with manual reset by powering off the equipment at the circuit breaker or disconnect.
D. Time-Delay Relay: Five-minute delay to prevent compressor cycling.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION
A. Install units level and plumb.
B. Anchor units to structure.

3.2 CONNECTIONS
A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
B. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, and inspect for refrigerant leaks.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
D. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE
A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 23 81 19

01-697-027

SECTION 23 82 39.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
   1. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.
   2. Chromalox, Inc.
   3. Indeeco.
   4. Markel Products Company; TPI Corporation.
   5. Marley Engineered Products.
   6. Ouellet Canada Inc.
   7. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.
   8. Raywall; TPI Corporation.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

A. Front Panel: Stamped-steel louver , with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.

B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Surface-Mounted Wall Heater Cabinet Enclosure: 16 gauge Steel with finish to match cabinet.

E. Recess-Mounted Ceiling Heater Enclosure: 20 gauge Steel with factory white finish.

2.4 COIL

A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Provide integral circuit breaker for overcurrent protection.

2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.

B. Motor: Permanently lubricated with internal thermal overload protection.. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.6 CONTROLS

A. Controls: Unit-mounted thermostat, not to exceed 120 volts with transformers and contactors required. Low-voltage relay with transformer kit.

B. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection with disconnect switch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.

C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 23 82 39.19

01-697-027

SECTION 23 91 16 - MECHANICAL WALL LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal).

C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical).

D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
2. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
3. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek company.
4. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
5. Carnes.
6. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
7. Dowco Products Group; Safe Air of Illinois.
8. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
9. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
10. Louvers & Dampers; a division of Mestek, Inc.
11. Pottorff.
12. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
13. United Enertech.
14. Vent Products Co., Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.

1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Structural Drawings.

B. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade shall pass basic-protection, large-missile testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than louvers indicated for use on the Project.

C. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

E. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

F. UL and NEMA Compliance: Provide motors and related components for motor-operated louvers that are listed and labeled by UL and comply with applicable NEMA standards.

2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Horizontal Storm-Resistant Louver:

1. Louver Depth: 4 inches.
2. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.060 inch for blades and 0.080 inch for frames.
3. Louver Performance Ratings:
   a. Free Area: Not less than 6.0 sq. ft. for 48-inch- wide by 48-inch- high louver.
   b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 750-fpm free-area intake velocity.
   c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 95 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 8 inches per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph at a core-area intake velocity of 500 fpm.

2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
   1. Screen Location: Interior face unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Screening Type: Bird screening.

B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.

C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
   1. Metal: Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
   2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.

D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
   1. Bird Screening: Flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4 by 0.050 inch thick.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
   1. Use Phillips flat-head, hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
   3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.

D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.
   1. Horizontal Mullions: Provide horizontal mullions at joints .

C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
   1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.

D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.

F. Provide extended sills for recessed louvers.

G. Provide with flange frame kit.

H. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Finish louvers after assembly.

B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.

C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

E. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.

F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.

B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.

C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 23 91 16

01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Specification Section 01 23 00 “Alternates” for the definition of alternates of work stated on the bid form that may or may not be selected by the owner before the contract is awarded.

C. The requirements of this section apply to all Division 26 sections.

**1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

A. Provide all labor, supervision, tools, transportation and materials necessary for and incidental to a complete and fully operable electrical installation. Installation shall consist of raceways, wiring, lighting, lighting controls, wiring devices, panelboards, switchboards, transformers, emergency and/or standby power systems and other systems and related apparatus as hereinafter specified and/or indicated or required to make a finished system.

B. The drawings and specifications, supplemented by current jurisdictional codes, shall jointly govern the installation. Any work required by either drawings or specifications and not by the other shall be provided as though required by both. Any work obviously necessary to complete the required systems, or which may be fairly implied, shall be provided.

C. All equipment shall readily fit in the spaces as indicated. If any equipment proposed is of larger size than that specified or indicated, its use will not be permitted. Other accommodations, as approved by the Architect, may be permitted to rectify equipment size issues.

D. Provide all wiring, connections and miscellaneous accessories necessary for the complete installation of, and final connections to equipment furnished under other divisions of the specifications and/or the Owner, where indicated on the Electrical drawings or otherwise specified herein. Make all final connections to such, including installation of all special devices furnished with such equipment, and provide all material necessary that is not supplied with the special equipment.

E. It is the intent of these specifications to provide an electrical system installation, complete in every respect, to operate in the manner and under conditions as shown on the drawings and herein specified. All items which are required to complete the work shall be furnished.

F. Furnish and install raceways, boxes, supports, sleeves, pull strings, and other pathways as indicated for the installation of communications, security, and safety systems by Divisions 27 and 28, control wiring for Division 23 equipment, or for systems to be provided by the Owner. Where installed exposed; concealed within walls, below ground or in inaccessible ceilings; required by the AHJ, code, or where otherwise specified or indicated, system cabling shall be installed completely in conduit. Where cabling is not installed in raceways, provide cable trays or low voltage cable supports.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. Provide: As used in the Specifications or on the Drawings, the word “provide” shall mean "furnish, install and connect complete."

B. Wiring: As used herein shall mean "wire or cable", installed in raceway with all required boxes, fittings, connectors and accessories, completely installed."

C. Work: As used herein shall be understood to mean "the materials completely installed, including the labor involved".

D. Concealed: Where the word “concealed” is used in conjunction with raceways, boxes or equipment, the word shall mean hidden from sight by installing above ceilings, within walls, beneath floors or within chases.

E. As Indicated: As used herein shall mean "as shown on the drawings".

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

A. General:

1. Comply with Division 1 requirements and with submittal requirements in each individual Division 26 specification section.
2. Clearly identify all submittals with project name and location, contractor and subcontractor’s names. General contractor shall review and approve all submittals prior to submitting to Architect. Mark each submittal with company name, reviewer's initials and date of review. Submittals not so approved and marked will be rejected, and resubmittal will be required.
3. Submittals shall be properly marked to identify pertinent products, models, or part numbers. Show performance characteristics and capacities, dimensions and clearances required, and wiring diagrams and controls.
4. Submittals shall include manufacturer’s published capacity information, including tables, curves and other data required to confirm capabilities under design conditions.
5. Any and all deviations from contract documents shall be explicitly noted by the Contractor on his submittal. The Architect's approval of shop drawings, diagrams, schedules, etc., shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for deviations from drawings or specifications unless he has, in writing,

called the Architect's attention to such deviations at the time of submission nor shall it relieve him from responsibility for errors of any sort in shop drawings or schedules.

6. No submittals will be checked until all plumbing, heating and air conditioning and electrical submittals are received.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Record drawings: Within 30 days of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall provide Record Drawings to the Owner. Two complete sets of hard copy Record Drawings and one electronic copy shall be provided, consisting of the following:
   a. A complete set of prints, marked by the Contractor for indication, in red pen, of the changes made in the actual installation. The actual locations of all concealed conduit systems, outlets and equipment installed by the Contractor shall be indicated so as to enable the Owner to properly operate, maintain and repair both exposed and concealed work. The most recent revisions of the contract documents shall be used as the background for “as-built” mark-ups. Drawings shall include a single-line diagram of the electrical distribution system and floor plans of the location of distribution equipment and the areas served by that equipment.
   b. One electronic copy of the above.
2. O&M Manual: The Contractor shall provide a manual that provide instruction about the operation and maintenance of the building’s electrical distribution system equipment. The manual must include at least the following information:
   a. Submittal data stating equipment nameplate ratings and information about optional and accessory installed equipment.
   b. Operation manuals.
   c. Maintenance manuals for each piece of equipment requiring maintenance. Required routine maintenance actions shall be clearly identified. The maintenance instructions shall include all installed equipment requiring scheduled maintenance and maintenance due to operating conditions.
   d. For each system, names and addresses of at least one qualified service agency.
   e. Operational narrative and schematic of the system as it is normally intended to operate.
3. Certificates: Certificates of inspection and approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Warranty:

1. Provide a one (1) year warranty, minimum, on all parts and labor for all equipment and labor provided under this Division. The warranty time period shall start on the date of Owner acceptance and/or date of Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Furnish only new, first-class quality, materials and equipment, delivered, erected, connected and finished in every detail, selected and arranged to fit properly into building spaces. Where no specific kind or quality of material is specified, furnish first-class standard article, approved by Architect.

B. Furnish services of one or more experienced superintendents, to be in charge of installation of work, and all skilled workmen, electricians and laborers required to unload, transfer, erect, connect, adjust, start, operate and test each system.

C. Comply with all county, state and federal laws and regulations applicable to the electrical work, and obtain and pay all fees for all required permits.

D. Furnish the Owner with certificates of inspection and final approval from all authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Before submitting his proposal, each bidder shall visit the site and examine the premises so as to fully understand all of the existing conditions relating to his work. No allowance or consideration will be made for lack of knowledge of materials to be furnished, work to be done or conditions to be complied with.

**1.6 LAWS, CODES AND STANDARDS**

A. The work under this Division shall comply with the governing federal, state, and local laws, codes and standards in effect at the project site. Such laws, codes and standards shall constitute the minimum requirements for work, unless supplemented and/or modified by more stringent requirements of the Contract Documents. Specifically, adhere to the currently enforced edition of the following codes and standards, with state and local amendments (where applicable):

1. The Georgia State Minimum Standard Codes:
   a. International Building Code, 2012 Edition with 2014, 2015 & 2017 Georgia State Amendments
   b. International Mechanical Code, 2012 Edition with 2014 & 2015 Georgia State Amendments
   c. International Plumbing code, 2012 Edition with 2014 & 2015 Georgia State Amendments, and IPC Appendix F
   d. International Fuel Gas Code, 2012 Edition with 2014 & 2015 Georgia State Amendments
   e. NFPA National Electrical Code, 2014 Edition

f. International Energy Conservation Code, 2009 Edition with 2011 & 2012 Georgia State Amendments
g. International Swimming Pool and Spa Code, 2012 Edition with 2014 Georgia State Amendments
h. International Existing Building Code, 2012 Edition with 2015 Georgia State Amendments
i. International Residential Code for One & Two Family Dwellings, 2012 Edition with 2014 & 2015 Georgia State Amendments, and IRC Appendix F8.

2. Local Codes or Regulations.

B. Resolve code interpretations or discrepancies discovered in the Contract Documents with the Engineer prior to bid. Necessary changes or revisions to the electrical work not indicated but necessary to meet any code requirements shall be made by this Contractor, without additional charge.

**1.7 DRAWINGS:**

A. The drawings are diagrammatic and are intended to show, in general, the character, arrangement and intent of the equipment and materials included in these documents. The drawings illustrate the general route of raceways and the approximate location of outlets, fixtures, devices and related apparatus. Do not scale the drawings to determine exact positions and clearances. Obtain necessary dimensions from Architectural, Mechanical and Structural drawings.

B. If explanatory drawings are issued later, they shall supplement the drawings listed above, unless specifically designated otherwise. These drawings indicate the electrical system to be installed.

C. Contractor shall become familiar with the architectural, structural, plumbing, mechanical and kitchen equipment drawings and specifications, and shall coordinate and adapt his work to the building as required by these drawings and specifications.

D. Bring to the attention of the Architect, immediately, any changes in the size or location of the material, or equipment, which may be necessary in order to meet field conditions, or to avoid conflict with the equipment installed under other sections. Obtain the Architect's approval before such deviations are made.

**1.8 VISIT TO THE SITE:**

A. Before submitting his proposal, each bidder shall visit the site and examine the premises so as to fully understand all of the existing conditions relating to his work. No allowance or consideration will be made for lack of knowledge of materials to be furnished, work to be done or conditions to be complied with.

**1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS**

A. The existing electrical installation is to be modified as indicated or specified.

B. All work necessary to properly tie in and adapt the new work with the existing installation shall be performed.

C. All electrical apparatus and wiring rendered useless due to changes in the existing building and relocation of existing equipment shall be removed, where exposed to view, and shall be disposed of as directed by the Owner.

D. Should the installation of new distribution equipment, ductwork, piping, conduit, or other equipment conflict with existing lighting fixtures and/or electrical outlets, the Electrical Contractor shall shift the outlets or make such other changes as are necessary in the electrical installation to remedy the conflicts as approved by the Engineer and at no extra cost to the Owner.

E. Existing systems shall be modified as necessary to adapt them to the new work.

F. All work contemplated under this Contract shall, unless otherwise specified or indicated, match, duplicate, and form a continuation of the existing facilities.

G. All demolition of, or modifications to, existing systems shall be coordinated through Owner’s Representative. Demolition drawings are based on casual field observation and existing record documents, when available. Therefore the accuracy or exactness of the drawings is not guaranteed. The Contractor shall verify that field measurements and circuiting arrangements are as shown on Drawings and abandoned wiring and equipment serve only abandoned facilities. The Contractor shall be responsible for reporting discrepancies to Engineer before disturbing existing installation. Beginning of demolition means Contractor accepts existing conditions.

**1.10 CONTINUITY OF SERVICE**

A. Utilities and service to the existing facilities shall be continuous and uninterrupted during the course of the construction, except as approved by the Owner. Where any required outage would interfere with the normal routine operation of the Owner, the Contractor shall provide temporary utilities and service, to minimize shutdown time. Shutdown time for the purpose of installation of new feeders, or work on the existing apparatus shall be prearranged and scheduled with the Owner.

B. After the new service entrance and distribution equipment is in operation and all feeders connected up complete, the temporary wiring and connections shall be removed.

C. All work on the existing apparatus shall be done at such time and in such manner as to cause minimum inconvenience to the Owner and as approved by him. Outage time for interruption of service shall be scheduled jointly with the Owner and the Utility Company.

D. Comply with NFPA 70E.

**1.11 POWER COMPANY SERVICE AND METERING:**

A. Electrical service arrangements specified herein and indicated on the Drawings, including service voltage requirements, service conductor and/or equipment requirements, actual point of service connection, and the like, shall be re-confirmed by the Contractor with the proper local representatives of the Power Company at the earliest practicable time after award of the Contract and prior to installation of service facilities. All significant differences between Power Company requirements and requirements under this Contract shall be reported immediately to the Engineer.

B. Space Separation for Power Company transformers as required by the Rules and Regulations of Safety Fire Commissioner shall be as follows:
   1. Transformer pad locations shall be a minimum of 10'-0" from any building, building overhangs, canopies, exterior walls, balconies, exterior stairs and/or walkways connected to the building.
   2. Transformer pad edge shall be no less than 14'-0" from any doorway.
   3. Transformer pad edge shall be no less than 10'-0 from any windows or other openings.
   4. If the building has an overhang, the 10'-0" clearance shall be measured from a point below the edge of the overhang.
   5. Fire escapes, outside stairs, and covered walkways attached to or between buildings, shall be considered as part of the building.

C. Revenue metering equipment, furnished by the Power Company, shall be installed by the Contractor in strict accordance with Power Company requirements at the location indicated on the Drawings. Necessary line and load side connections, raceways, supports, etc., shall be provided by the Contractor.

D. Seals or locks placed on revenue metering enclosures by the Power Company shall not be broken or otherwise disturbed without notification to and approval of the Power Company. Seals or locks shall be in place at the time of completion of the work.

**1.12 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

A. Refer to Division 1 for general requirements pertaining to delivery, storage and handling.

B. Deliver all materials to the project site in original unopened containers, where applicable, with all labels intact and legible at time of use. Store in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Protect materials before, during and after installation.

D. In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and/or replacements necessary at no additional cost.

**1.13 WARRANTY**

A. Contractor agrees to repair or replace any equipment and/or materials that fail within specified warranty period.

B. Unless exceeded by requirements in other Division 26 sections, the warranty period shall be one (1) year, and shall begin on the date of Substantial Completion.

**1.14 UTILITY ENTRANCE FACILITIES:**

A. Service entrance conduits for electric, telephone, internet, WAN, and/or cable television utility entrances, as indicated on the Drawings, shall be re-confirmed by the Contractor with the Owner and the proper local representative of the utility companies prior to installation. Verify exact service conduit and transformer pad requirements, termination locations and metering arrangement.

**PART 2 - <u>PRODUCTS</u>**

**2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**

A. All materials and apparatus required for the work shall be new, and shall be furnished, delivered, erected, connected and finished to provide complete and operating systems and shall be so selected and arranged as to fit properly into the building spaces.

B. Materials specified by reference to a specific standard such as the American Society of Testing Materials, Underwriters' Laboratories, American National Standards Institute, Federal Specifications, a trade association standard, or other similar standard shall comply with the requirements in the latest revision thereof, in effect at the time of bidding, except as limited or modified in such reference.

C. All materials, equipment and apparatus shall be Underwriters' labeled for all items where such labels are available. Items which are not Underwriters' labeled will not be acceptable if labeled equipment can be obtained from another approved manufacturer.

D. All materials and equipment shall have corrosion protection suitable for the environment in which they are installed whether located indoors or outdoors. Care shall be taken during the installation to assure the integrity of corrosion protection. Protect all field cuts and damage to corrosive resisting coatings with cold galvanizing paint.

E. Asbestos containing materials or products are not allowed on the Project site.

**2.2 REJECTION OF MATERIAL**

A. The Architect shall have the authority to reject any material, equipment, or workmanship not complying with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall replace defective work or materials immediately upon notification of rejection. Any material so rejected shall be removed from the job within twenty-four (24) hours of such rejection; otherwise, the Architect may have same removed at this Contractor's expense.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 COORDINATION AND LAYOUT**

A. The work called for under this section shall be carried on simultaneously with the work of other trades in such a manner as not to delay the overall progress of the work.

B. Furnish and install all raceways, outlet boxes, sleeves and inserts required for work by Divisions 26, 27, and 28 or for systems provided by the Owner. Coordinate exact raceway, outlet box and sleeve requirements with other divisions before the floors and walls are built. Any raceways or sleeves not installed during the construction of a wall or floor shall be inserted in a core drilled opening, and the fire-resistive rating of the wall restored in accordance with a UL listed assembly.

C. Before any piping, raceway, duct work, outlets, equipment or lighting fixtures are located in any area, coordinate the space requirements of all trades. Such shall be arranged so that space conditions will allow all trades to install their work and will also permit access for future maintenance and repair.

D. Piping, duct work, raceways, and equipment installed at variance with the above requirements shall be relocated and/or revised to conform to those requirements at no added cost to the Owner.

E. The design of circuits for electrically driven equipment is based on the product of one manufacturer (basis-of-design) and may not be representative of the products of all acceptable manufacturers. If equipment furnished has different electrical characteristics from the basis-of-design product, Contractor is responsible for making all necessary adjustments to the circuit components at no additional cost to the Owner. Circuit modifications must be approved by the Architect/Engineer through the shop drawing submittal process.

**3.2 DISPOSITION OF MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT**

A. Contractor shall Review with the Owner materials that have been removed and are no longer required, to determine any which the Owner may desire to keep. Deliver those materials that the Owner desires to retain the Owner's specified location.

B. For those materials not required by the Owner, dispose of them in accordance with applicable regulations.

**3.3 WORKMANSHIP**

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. All work under this Section shall be performed by skilled and qualified electricians under the direct supervision of competent foremen, with complete knowledge of the NFPA 70, National Electrical Code (NEC). The NEC establishes minimum standards for electrical installations. These drawings and specifications in many instances exceed the minimum requirements of the NEC and the work shall be performed accordingly.

C. Detailed descriptions of all tasks are not provided by these drawings and specifications. It is imperative that workers have thorough knowledge of proper electrical installations.

D. Work shall be subject to constant inspection and final approval by the Architect. Any inspections or approvals shall not relieve the contractor of responsibility for compliance with any and all requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Good workmanship shall be evidenced in the installation of all electrical materials and equipment. Equipment shall be level, plumb and true with the structure and other equipment; also in a horizontal or vertical position as intended. All materials shall be firmly secured in place and adequately supported and permanent. All hardware and accessory fittings shall be of a type designed, intended and appropriate for the use and complement the items with which they are used.

F. All screws, bolts, nuts, clamps, fittings or other fastening devices shall be made up tight. All bolts, screws, nuts and other threaded devices shall have standard threads and heads so they may be installed and replaced when necessary without special tools.

**3.4 PAINTING AND FINISHING:**

A. Electrical equipment shall be factory finish painted. Equipment with a factory-applied finish shall have any scratches, discoloration, chips, etc. repaired and refinished to the satisfaction of the Architect. Non-galvanized metal troughs, frames and/or support racks and wooden surfaces under this Section shall be primed and painted.

B. Paint shall be applied to backboards before switches, troughs and devices are installed. Where backboards are constructed of fire-resistive plywood, the fire rating stamp shall not be painted over.

C. Field cuts, wrench marks, etc. on galvanized conduit, threaded rod, steel channel strut, and other metal products subject to corrosion shall be protected with cold galvanizing paint. Such paint shall meet the requirements of US Navy galvanizing repair Specification Mil-P- 21035. Zep cold galvanized spray or equal is acceptable.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF APPARATUS:**

A. All conduit and other openings shall be kept protected to prevent entry of foreign matter. Fixtures, equipment and apparatus shall be covered for protection against dirt, water, cold, chemicals, or mechanical damage before and during construction. The original finish, including shop coat of paint of fixtures, apparatus or equipment that has been damaged shall be restored prior to final acceptance.

**3.6 EQUIPMENT MOUNTING AND SUPPORT**

A. The approximate locations of outlets are shown on the drawings. Exact locations shall be determined by architectural drawings, dimensions and building conditions. All outlets shall be accurately set, according to the Architect's directions. The right is reserved to change the exact location of any switch, ceiling or other outlet, in any room, before permanently installed.

B. When several items of equipment are wall mounted in the same area, care shall be taken to line them up vertically and horizontally. Raceways to and from the equipment shall be vertical and horizontal using appropriate fittings or auxiliary gutters where necessary and practical for appearance.

C. Equipment mounting and support shall be provided in accordance with Section 26 05 29 – Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.

D. Mounting Heights:

1. Mounting heights of outlets in plastered, concrete and gypsum/stud walls and partitions shall comply with accessibility codes and be at the following heights above the floor, measured to centerline of outlet, unless otherwise noted at symbol:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| a. | Wall switch | 46-48 inches |
| b. | Convenience outlet | 18 inches |
| c. | Wall telephone | 18 inches |
| d. | Thermostats, hand dryers | 46-48 inches |
| e. | Fan switches | 46-48 inches |
| f. | Call button stations | 46-48 inches |
| g. | Wall speaker | 12 inches below ceiling |
| h. | Wall Data Outlets | 18 inches |
| i. | Push button stations | 46-48 inches |

2. Mounting heights of outlets in unplastered concrete block walls shall minimize cutting and patching of masonry. Convenience outlets shall actually be mounted on top of second block course, or approximately 16" from floor to underside of box. Wall switch outlets at a nominal 48" mounting height shall be mounted with the top of the box at the top of the sixth block course, or approximately 44" from floor to underside of box.

**3.7 IDENTIFICATION:**

A. Identification of electrical work and equipment shall be provided in accordance with Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

B. Identify circuit wiring continuously or at all terminals, as to phase, neutral or ground.

C. For wires of different systems in common boxes, group each cable with its own system and identify each cable using plastic tags stamped to indicate voltage, circuit, and phase. Handwritten lettering is not acceptable.

D. Identify control devices, disconnect switches, motor starters, contactors, time switches, etc., with 1/8" 5-ply Lamacoid engraved name plates having ¼" black letters on white background. Secure nameplate with screws, rivets or permanent adhesive. Impression letters on plastic tape are not approved.

**3.8 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS**

A. Tests and inspections shall demonstrate full compliance with specifications, drawings and applicable codes. The Architect and Owner shall be notified prior to these tests so that he may observe them.

B. Upon completion of the work and prior to request for final inspection by the Architect, the Contractor shall test and inspect the individual systems, including all service, feeder and branch circuits, power outlets, lighting, lighting controls, motors and apparatus. Test and inspect electrical systems in accordance with other Division 26 specification sections, and the following:

1. Confirm that all circuits and equipment are operable. Demonstrate that all equipment requiring calibration or adjustment has been so adjusted in accordance with its intended function and the manufacturer’s recommendation.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.9 INSTALLATION**

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install power wiring and cables in raceways except within consoles, boxes cabinets, or other approved enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

**3.10 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of non-fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

**3.11 FIRESTOPPING**

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

**3.12 STARTUP**

A. All systems shall be completely assembled, tested, adjusted and demonstrated to be operable to the satisfaction of the Owner.

B. The Contractor shall provide qualified personnel to perform start up and acceptance testing of all electrical equipment. Complete the installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. The Contractor or said qualified personnel shall instruct the Owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of electrical equipment prior to acceptance by the Owner.

**3.13 ADJUSTING**

A. Adjust electrical equipment to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust and calibrate settings on electric and electronic controls for system operation as intended and/or required by the Owner or as directed by the Engineer.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting electrical system(s) to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 26 01 00
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. VFD: Variable frequency drive.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. Alpha Wire.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Cerrowire.
5. CME Wire and Cable.
6. Encore Wire Corporation.
7. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
8. Southwire Incorporated.

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN-2-THWN-2 Type XHHW-2 Type SO.

D. Metal-Clad Cable, Type MC
1. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
2. Standards:
   a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
   b. Comply with UL 1569.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
4. Circuits:
   a. Single circuit.
5. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
6. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
7. Conductor Insulation:
   a. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
   b. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
8. Armor: Steel or Aluminum, interlocked.
9. MC Cable Connectors: All fittings and connectors used on MC cable shall be as specified for FMC conduit, per specification section 26 05 33.

E. Minimum copper conductor size for power circuits shall be 12 AWG.

**2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Burndy Corp
3. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
4. Ideal Industries, Inc.
5. Ilsco; a branch of Bardes Corporation.
6. NSi Industries LLC.
7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
8. 3M; Electrical Markets Division.

9. Tyco Electronics.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

**2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS**

A. Feeders: Copper. Stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except that VFD cable shall be extra flexible stranded.

**3.2 CONDUCTOR/CABLE INSULATION, APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS**

A. Wiring methods shall be defined herein as fixed or flexible:

1. Fixed wiring method shall consist of insulated conductors installed in metal raceways or rigid nonmetallic raceways.
2. Flexible wiring methods shall consist of insulated conductors installed in flexible metal raceways or type MC cable containing an insulated equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with NEC Table 250-122.

B. Service Entrance: Type THHN-2-THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders: Type THHN-2-THWN-2 or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN or THWN-2 single conductors in raceway.

E. Feeders or Branch Circuits installed on rooftops or exposed to sunlight: XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits below Slabs-on-Grade and Underground: Type THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits where flexible wiring methods are approved: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in flexible metal raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC. Type MC cable may be used only for lighting branch circuits concealed in walls and above finished ceilings and shall be supported as required for flexible metal raceways. Flexible wiring methods or MC cable shall not be used to convey power from space to space, for any wall penetrations, or as a circuit homerun.

H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SOW, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application. Cords used in kitchen or other locations subject to exposure to oil shall be Type SOOW.

I. VFD Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit or Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

**3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. The length of conductors within cabinets and cutout boxes shall be sufficient to neatly train the conductor to the terminal point with no excess. When there are many conductors, they shall be cabled or bundled.

G. Support cables according to Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

H. Multi-wire branch circuits: Where required by the AHJ, Contractor shall provide handle-ties installed on single pole circuit breakers feeding multi-wire branch circuits.

**3.4 CONNECTIONS**

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Conductor splices shall be kept to a minimum. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Joints shall be covered with 7 mil electrical tape on branch circuit wiring connections, and 10 mil electrical tape on mechanical and indentor connectors on larger cables. Patented plastic connection covers may be used for connectors if approved by local inspector.

D. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

**3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

**3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

B. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 "General Electrical Requirements" for general provisions for electrical work.

C. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems for color coding of conductors.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section includes manufactured wiring systems (MWS) for connection of lighting fixtures on the load side of lighting controls (switches or relays).

B. MWS shall not be mandatory, but are an acceptable alternative to individual conductors installed in EMT and FMC for connections to recessed lighting fixtures where concealed by ceilings.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Where Contractor elects not to install MWS, no submittals are required.

B. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of components.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Furnish a complete set of drawings indicating where and how the manufactured wiring systems will be installed. Provide layouts for all systems drawn at a scale of not less than 1/16" = 1'0".

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS:**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For manufactured wiring systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of the system that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Reloc, an Acuity Brands product or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Cooper
2. Daybrite
3. Hubbell

**2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:**

A. Manufactured wiring systems shall not be used to convey lighting power from space to space, for any wall penetrations, or as a circuit homerun.

B. The System shall be pre-manufactured and supplied in accordance with N.E.C. Article 604 and UL Standard #183.

C. Unless otherwise noted, all wires in the system shall be #12 AWG copper with 600V, 90°C insulation.

D. All wires shall comply with Division 26 specifications and NEC for color-coding per voltage.

E. The System grounding conductor shall be either bare or insulated #12 AWG copper.

F. The System shall be totally integrated; additional conduit and wire shall not be required as a part of the system. Where local authorities restrict the use of flexible metal conduit or MC cable in partitions and the like, proper interfacing components shall be part of this System.

G. The System shall contain pin and socket contacts, solidly crimped onto the branch circuit conductors.

H. The cable heads shall be of a metal construction with a corrosion resistant finish.

I. The System shall be keyed to guarantee that no interconnection can occur between different voltages and that no connection can occur between devices not intended to be connected. This design shall be permanent and difficult to defeat.

**2.3 COMPONENTS:**

A. The System shall consist of, but not be limited to, the following basic components:

1. Quick-Flex Converter (QC)
2. Quick-flex Fixture Cable (QFC)
3. Quick-flex Extender (QE)
4. Quick-flex Splitter (QS)

**2.4 QUICK-FLEX CONVERTER (QC)**

A. The Quick-Flex Converter "converts" conventional wiring into flexible wiring.

B. The Quick-Flex Converter shall be designed to install through any 1/2" trade-size knockout.

C. The Quick-Flex Converter shall have No. 12 AWG copper conductors with 600V, 90°C insulation. Each wire shall be N.E.C. or C.S.A. voltage color-coded and stripped 5/8".

**2.5 QUICK-FLEX FIXTURE CABLE (QFC)**

A. The Quick-Flex Fixture Cable shall have a male cable head on one end, and a snap-in port module on the other.

B. The Quick-Flex Fixture Cable shall contain a #12 AWG copper wire with 600V, 90°C insulation from one end of the cable to the other, while the wire leads from the snap-in port module to the fixture shall be #18 AWG copper with 600V, 105°C insulation. Each shall terminate in a UL recognized poke-home terminal for field connection to the ballast leads.

C. The Quick-Flex Fixture Cable snap-in port module shall be designed to snap into a standard 1/2" K.O., either in the access plate or end plate of the fixture.

D. The Quick-Flex Fixture Cable shall fit into a maximum installed clearance from the fixture of approximately 1-1/8".

E. The snap-in port module of the Quick-Flex Fixture Cable shall be designed to be UL listed as an auto-grounding component, allowing the fixture to be grounded without requiring a ground lead to be attached to the fixture. The grounding of the fixture is established and maintained when the component is snapped into the fixture knockout

F. The Quick-Flex Fixture Cable allows the branch circuit to be fed to, but not through the fixture.

**2.6 QUICK-FLEX EXTENDER (QE)**

A. The Quick-Flex Extender allows the Quick-Flex Fixture Cable to be extended.

B. The Quick-Flex Extender has a male cable head on one end and a female cable head on the other.

C. Each Quick-Flex Extender shall be "keyed" so that the components may only be used for extending in the prescribed manner within the System.

**2.7 QUICK-FLEX SWITCH DROP (QSD)**

A. The Quick-Flex Switch Drop allows a switch to become an integral part of the flexible wiring system.

B. The Quick-Flex Switch Drop cable shall have one end terminating in a three-port module and the other end with exposed wires approximately 6" long for connection to a switch box.

C. The Quick-Flex Switch Drop shall consist of solid #12 AWG copper conductors with 600V, 90°C insulation encased in a module and flexible metal conduit. The component shall be totally and permanently enclosed.

D. The "IN" port and "OUT" ports of the module end shall be designed so that the key arrangement will only interconnect with components of the same key design.

E. Each Quick-Flex Switch Drop shall be properly identified as to electrical configuration and shall provide an output of switched and unswitched power at each switch location.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 GENERAL:**

A. The wiring system manufacturer shall provide the services of a trained factory representative to assist and instruct the electrical contractor in the proper installation of the components and system.

**3.2 SUPPORTS:**

A. The wiring system shall be supported so that the clearance of all components from the ceiling grid is a minimum of 2".

B. Provide spring steel multifunction drop wire clips to support cables. Attach clips to steel drop wires supporting lighting fixtures.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19.23
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
   1. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
   2. Grounding and bonding for electronic equipment and surge protection devices.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

B. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
   1. Test wells.
   2. Ground rods.
   3. Ground rings.
   4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
   5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.

C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
   1. Approved Testing Agencies are:
      a. ABM; Electrical Power Solutions,
      b. Cleveland Electric Company,
      c. Electrical Testing, Inc.,
      d. General Electric Co., Apparatus Service
      e. Hood-Patterson & Dewar, Inc.
      f. Power Testing and Energization, Inc.

B. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
   1. As specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
   2. ERICO International Corporation.
   3. Fushi Copperweld Inc.
   4. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
   5. ILSCO.
   6. O-Z/Gedney; A Brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
   7. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
   8. Siemens Power Transmission & Distribution, Inc.
   9. Thomas and Betts, Corp.
   10. Ideal Industries, Inc.

**2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

**2.3 CONDUCTORS**

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:
   1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.

2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
6. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

**2.4 GROUNDING & BONDING BUSBARS:**

A. Intersystem Bonding Busbar: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

B. Telecommunications busbars:
1. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB): At main data closet or telecommunication service entrance room, terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-4-by-12-inch grounding bus. Provide Harger part number GBI14412TMGB, or equal.
2. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB): At secondary data closets and telecommunications rooms, terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus. Provide Harger part number GBI14212TGB, or equal.

**2.5 CONNECTORS**

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Bus-Bar Connectors:
1. For telecommunications systems: Irreversible compression, long barrel, two-bolt.
2. For other electrical systems: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze lugs.

E. Grounding Bushings:
1. Material: Hot-dipped galvanized Malleable Iron. Die cast fittings are not acceptable.
2. Nylon insulated throat.

**2.6 GROUNDING ELECTRODES**

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet. The copper jacket shall not be less than .010" thick at any point.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 APPLICATIONS**

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

D. Grounding Bus: Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 16 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated. Install in the following locations:
1. Electrical equipment rooms housing service equipment.
2. Elsewhere as indicated.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel:
   a. Welded connectors for building steel to ground ring conductor.
   b. Bolted connectors for building steel connections located indoors.
5. Telecommunications Bonding:
1. All telecommunications bonding conductors shall be terminated with two-hole, long barrel compression lugs, and bolted to telecommunications bonding busbars.

**3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE**

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

**3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

A. Pad-Mounted Transformers: Comply with utility company grounding installation requirements.

**3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING AND BONDING:**

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits. Bond equipment grounding conductor to metallic equipment and enclosures.

B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond equipment grounding conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

E. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

F. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor (e.g.c.) in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors. Bond electrode conductor to branch circuit e.g.c. within pole handhole.

G. Telecommunications Grounding And Bonding:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA 607B, except where specifications supersede the standard.
2. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone: For telephone, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 2 AWG minimum (or as calculated below) insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location. Bonding Backbone conductor size shall be increased according to its length. Copper conductor cross section shall be at least 2kcmil per linear foot, up to a maximum conductor size of 500 kcmil.
3. Telecommunications Bonding Conductor: Provide individual bonding conductors from grounding busbars (TMGB and TGB) to racks, cabinets, enclosures, cable trays, ladder racks, primary and secondary surge protection, building steel and other data/telecommunications equipment located in data closets. Bonding conductor size shall be insulated #6 AWG Cu for lengths up to 100 ft. Where conductors are installed within data closets, exposed installation is acceptable. Otherwise install in raceway.
4. All telecommunications systems grounding conductors shall be connected with two-bolt irreversible compression lugs.

H. Surge Protection Devices: Provide insulated copper bonding conductor, sized according to SPD manufacturer and based on the installed conductor length from ground bus bar to SPD location.

**3.5 INSTALLATION**

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods, using driving sleeve, until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least 10 feet from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through open bottom handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches x 12 inches x 12 inches, with cover.

1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
   1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
   2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
   3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
   4. Building Expansion Joints: Install bonding jumper at each expansion joint for electrical continuity between building steel separations.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
   1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
   2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
   3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 2 AWG.
   1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.

**3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Labels shall be machine or computer printed, adhesive backed vinyl type.
   1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
   2. Label each Telecommunications Bonding Backbone Conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR TO [MDF/IDF-xx]. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!" where “xx” is the designation of the distribution frame where the far end of the bonding conductor is terminated.
   3. Label each grounding electrode conductor and bonding conductor according to its purpose, for example: “GROUND ROD CONDUCTOR”, “WATER PIPE BONDING CONDUCTOR”, “LIGHTNING PROTECTION BONDING CONDUCTOR”, “BUILDING STEEL BONDING CONDUCTOR.”

**3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at each service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
      a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
      b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
      c. If resistance to ground exceeds the following specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
         1) Service entrance main ground: 10 ohms.
         2) Secondary transformer ground: 25 ohms.
   4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Division 26 Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
   2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

**1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Steel slotted support systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations where any of the following are to be used:
   1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
   2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.7 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified together with concrete Specifications.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories."

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
      b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
      c. ERICO International Corporation.
      d. GS Metals Corp.
      e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
      f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
   2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4 or electro-galvanized according to ASTM B633.
   3. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
   1. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.
   2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   3) Hilti, Inc.
   4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   5) MKT Fastening, LLC.

2. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
3. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
4. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
5. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

**2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES**

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

**2.3 LOW VOLTAGE CABLE SUPPORTS:**

A. Manufacturers: : Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Cooper, B-Line.
   2. Erico.
   3. Mono-Systems.

B. J-HOOKS:
   1. J-hooks shall provide a bearing surface of sufficient width to comply with required bend radii of high-performance cables in accordance with UL, EIA/TIA-569.
   2. J-hooks shall have flared edges to prevent damage while installing cables.
   3. J-hooks sized 1 5/16” and larger shall have a cable retainer strap to provide containment of cables within the hanger. The cable retainer strap shall be removable and reusable and be suitable for use in air handling spaces.
   4. J-hooks constructed of steel shall have an electro-galvanized or G60 finish and shall be rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments.
   5. J-Hooks shall be Erico CableCat series, or approved equal with the following characteristics:

| Erico Model No. | Loop Diameter | Hook Width | Cat 5e Capacity | Cat 6 Capacity |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CAT12 | ¾” | 7/8” | 16 | 10 |
| CAT21 | 1-5/16” | 1-3/8” | 50 | 32 |
| CAT32 | 2” | 1-3/8” | 80 | 50 |
| CAT64 | 4” | 1-29/32” | 300 | 185 |

   6. The standard J-Hook shall be a 2" diameter loop. Where the number of cables to be installed along a particular path Is lesser or greater than the capacity of a 2" loop, the contractor shall substitute a J-Hook of the appropriate size or provide additional J-Hooks as required to accommodate the cable bundle. Sizes shall be selected to hold the number of cables installed, plus an additional 25% spare capacity.
   7. Tiered hooks shall be provided on corridor walls. Tiered hooks shall be 2" hook size, 4 tier 1-sided, catalog number BCH32-4S as manufactured by Cooper B-Line or equal.

**2.4 PLYWOOD BACKBOARDS:**

A. Provide plywood backboards for mounting of equipment and devices such as panelboards, disconnect switches, lighting contactors to be installed under this section of the work, and for use by others for installing equipment, such as motor starters, control panels and telephone equipment.

B. Provide void-free, fire rated interior grade plywood, 3/4" thick, 4' by 8'. Fastened to wall with 1/4" or larger bolts held in expansion shields or toggles. Do not cover or paint the fire stamp on the backboard.

C. Backboards in electrical rooms shall be painted two coats of gray enamel. Backboards in data closets shall be painted with two coats of the wall color paint.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 APPLICATION**

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

**3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
2. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
3. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
4. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts, Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69, or Spring-tension clamps as appropriate for the application.
5. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
6. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

F. Where hanger wires are used for support of equipment or cabling, they shall be independent from the ceiling grid support, secured at both ends, and shall be distinguishable by color, tagging, or other effective means from the ceiling grid support wires.

**3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS**

A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

**3.4 CONCRETE BASES**

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.5 PAINTING**

A. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 9 sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Division 26 Section 26 01 00 "General Electrical Requirements" for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, standard outlet boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving systems specified in Divisions 23, 27 and 28, and/or Owner furnished systems shall be provided by Division 26. Coordinate all raceway and box requirements with systems to be furnished prior to rough-in.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

D. FMC: Flexible metallic conduit.

E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metallic conduit.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For raceways, surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

**1.5 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Allied Tube & Conduit.
3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
4. Electri-Flex Company.
5. O-Z/Gedney.
6. Republic Conduit.
7. Robroy Industries.
8. Southwire Company.
9. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
10. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
11. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

D. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

E. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.

F. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

G. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Fittings for GRC:
   a. Threaded, hot-dip galvanized.
2. Fittings for EMT:
   a. Material: Steel or die cast.
   b. Type: Compression. Set screw fittings are not acceptable.
3. Fittings for LFMC:
   a. Material: Steel or malleable iron.
   b. Type: Bonding type.
4. Fittings for FMC shall comply with the following:
   a. Material: Zinc electroplated steel and malleable iron.
   b. Cable connection: Utilize a screw-tightened gripping saddle to secure the cable. Snap on type fittings are not acceptable.

c. Box/device connection: Utilize a threaded, nylon insulated throat with a lock-ring. Products using a snap-in or spring type connector are not acceptable.

5. Expansion Fittings: Steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.

H. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

**1.6 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corporation.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. Electri-Flex Company.
8. Kraloy.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
11. RACO; Hubbell.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

**1.7 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

C. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

**1.8 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS**

A. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product specified herein or indicated on the Drawings, or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. FSR, Inc.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated.
6. Mono-Systems, Inc.
7. O-Z/Gedney.
8. RACO; Hubbell.
9. Robroy Industries.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD or FS, with gasketed cover. Cast aluminum outlet and device boxes shall not be acceptable.

D. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

E. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb.

1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

I. Outlet Boxes:
   1. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
   2. Provide galvanized flat rolled sheet steel interior outlet wiring boxes, of types, shapes and sizes, including box depths, to suit each respective location and installation; construct with stamped knockouts in back and sides, and with threaded screw holes with corrosion-resistant screws for securing box covers and wiring devices.
   3. Outlet boxes in ceilings, in plastered and gypsum stud walls, and in poured columns and walls, shall be 2" deep, 4" octagonal, 4" square, or 4 -11/16" square boxes.
   4. Outlet boxes recessed in masonry walls and partitions shall be 4" or 4 -11/16" square boxes fitted with square tile covers of proper depths for concrete block shall be used where two or more conduit runs enter a box.

J. Outlet Box Accessories: Provide outlet box accessories as required for each installation, including mounting brackets, wallboard hangers, extension rings, fixture boxes, which are compatible with outlet boxes being used and fulfilling requirements of individual wiring situations. Choice of accessories is installer's option.

K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor dry locations, Type 4 for outdoor or wet locations with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
   2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
   3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

L. Cabinets:
   1. NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor, dry locations, Type 3R for outdoor or wet locations, unless otherwise noted, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
   2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
   3. Key latch to match panelboards.
   4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
   5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
   6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

**1.9 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING**

A. Manufacturers: Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Armorcast Products Company.
   2. Carson Industries LLC.
   3. CDR Systems Corporation
   4. Highline
   5. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
   6. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
   7. Synertech Moulded Products.

B. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
   1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
   2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two. Boxes may also be constructed of fiberglass with reinforced polymer ring.
   1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77, Tier 15.
   2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
   4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
   5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, “ELECTRIC”, “COMMUNICATIONS”, “GROUND”.
   6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
   7. Handholes 24 Inches Wide by 36 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

**1.10 CONDUIT BODIES**

A. Manufacturers:
1. For power circuits: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Bridgeport.
   b. Cooper
   c. O-Z/Gedney.
   d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
2. For Telecommunications systems cabling: Conduit bodies installed shall be Smart Pathways Smart Conduit Bodies, or equal complying with requirements.

B. General Requirements for Conduit Bodies:
1. Materials for power circuit conduit bodies: Galvanized or zinc-plated malleable iron or steel body. Stainless steel or galvanized steel cover with corrosion resistant screws and neoprene gasket.
2. Material for communications circuit conduit bodies: Cast aluminum with cast aluminum cover with corrosion resistant screws and neoprene gasket.
3. Conduit entries shall be threaded for connection to GRC or EMT raceways.

**1.11 INNERDUCT**

A. Textile (or Fabric) Innerduct & Fittings:
1. Materials:
   a. White Polyester and Nylon resin polymer
2. Innerduct Description
   a. Standard Outdoor Textile Innerduct: Micro (33mm), 2-inch, 3-inch and 4-inch single or multi-cell polyester/nylon textile innerduct containing 1250lb polyester flat woven pull tape in each cell.
   b. Plenum-Listed Textile Innerduct: Micro (33mm), 2-inch and 3-inch single or multi-cell nylon textile innerduct containing 200lb nylon-resin flat woven pull tape which meets UL2024A for flame propagation and smoke density values for use in air handling spaces.
3. Textile Innerduct Fittings
   a. Conduit Plugs: Compression-type conduit plugs with locking nuts for sealing and securing one or more textile innerducts within a 4-inch inside diameter conduit, e.g.: a 4-inch plug with nine holes for cables in a 3 pack (9-cell) configuration
   b. Termination Bags: Inflation-type bags for sealing and securing around one or more textile innerducts and cables within 2-inch outside diameter or larger conduit.
   c. Pull Tape: A measuring and pulling tape constructed of synthetic fiber, printed with accurate sequential footage marks. Color-coded.
   d. Duct Water Seal: products suitable for closing underground and entrance conduit openings where innerduct or cable is installed, to prevent entry of gases, liquids, or rodents into the structure.

B. HDPE Innerduct & Fittings
1. General
   a. ASTM F 2160 Solid Wall High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit Based on Controlled Outside Diameter (OD).
   b. ASTM D 2239 Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter.
2. Material
   a. Duct shall be manufactured from a suitable thermoplastic polymer conforming to the minimum standard of PE334470E/C as defined in ASTM D3350.
3. Product Description
   a. Polyethylene duct and innerduct shall be an extruded, coilable tubing for use as a single or multiple raceway.
   b. Where used below grade or in wet locations, innerduct shall be suitable for direct burial. Where used indoors, innerduct shall be plenum rated.

**1.12 DISPLAY RECESSED WALL BOX:**

A. Manufacturers: Basis-of-Design Product: The display recessed wall box shall be a Hubbell NSAV62M, installed in a NSAV6BW block wall adapter. Subject to compliance with requirements, equal products by one of the following manufacturers are also acceptable:
1. Chief Manufacturing
2. FSR, Inc.
3. Legrand
4. Leviton
5. Peerless

B. Provide one for each display indicated on the Drawings. For each box furnished, also provide:
1. (1) HDMI female bulkhead adapter.
2. (1) USB Type A female bulkhead adapter.

**PART 2 - EXECUTION**

**2.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION**

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
   2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC or EMT.
   3. Underground Conduit:
      a. Beneath parking or drive areas: GRC or RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
      b. Other locations: GRC or RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
   4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
   5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
   2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: GRC
   3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT, except that RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC shall be acceptable when conduits turn up within masonry walls and continue to the first outlet box.
   4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
   5. Wet Locations: GRC
   6. Damp Locations: GRC or EMT with raintight fittings.
   7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size, unless otherwise noted.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
   1. Rigid Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
   2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
   3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

**2.2 INSTALLATION**

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Conceal conduit within finished walls, above ceilings, and below floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

G. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

H. Raceways shall not be embedded in slabs. Conduit installed below floors on grade shall be run beneath the gravel. For slabs above grade, route conduits in ceiling cavity below, then turn up and penetrate vertically through slab.
   1. For conduits turned up within masonry walls, change from RNC to EMT at the first outlet box. Provide terminal coupling and box adapters for each outlet box termination.
   2. For conduits turned up exposed, change from RNC to GRC before rising above floor.

I. Stub-ups to Above Ceilings:
   1. Use EMT for raceways.
   2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

J. Conduit bends shall be made so that the interior diameter of the conduit will not be effectively reduced. Bends shall be made only with equipment identified for the purpose.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated throat metal bushings conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

M. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

N. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

O. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

P. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

Q. Installation of outlet boxes:

1. Generally, outlet boxes for switches and for receptacles shall be mounted with the long axis vertical. Three or more gang boxes shall be mounted with the long axis horizontal. The boxes shall be so located that the covers or device plates will not span different types of building finishes either vertically or horizontally. Boxes for switches near doors shall be located on the side opposite the hinge and close to the door trim.
2. Fasten boxes rigidly to substrate or structural surfaces to which attached, or solidly embed electrical boxes in concrete or masonry. Boxes set in concrete or masonry construction shall be secured in place with cement mortar.
3. In walls or ceilings of concrete, tile or other non-combustible material, boxes and fittings shall be so installed that the front edge of the box or fitting will not set back of the finished surface more than 1/4 inch.
4. Provide knockout closures to cap unused knockout holes where blanks have been removed.

R. Install boxes and conduit bodies in locations to ensure ready accessibility of electrical wiring.

S. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

T. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

U. Provide corrosion-resistant punched-steel, conduit locknuts, conduit bushings, knockout closures and offset connectors, of types and sizes to suit respective uses and installation.

V. Pull lines, Jet Line No. 232, or equal, shall be installed in all empty raceways. At each end, leave 12" of slack coiled in box or at end of raceways.

W. Where raceways are indicated to be terminated in telecommunications closets, they shall be turned up out of floor under wood backboards, and terminated 12" above floor. (Or if run in ceiling, they shall be turned down over wood backboards and terminated). Raceways ends shall be fitted with insulated bushings.

X. Where raceways penetrate masonry walls, the wall shall be core drilled for the installation of raceway. The opening between core drilled hole and raceway shall filled with sealant.

Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
3. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
4. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

AA. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations.

BB. Mount boxes at heights specified in Division 26 Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” or as indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment.

DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

EE. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

GG. Exposed conduits installed in finished spaces shall be painted to match the wall or structure finish.

**2.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT**

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
   a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
   b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

**2.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES**

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth. Bed shall be at least 8 inches thick and extend beyond the perimeter of the box at least 4”.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

**2.5 PROTECTION**

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 SLEEVES**

A. Wall Sleeves:
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
   a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
   b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

**2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
   b. CALPICO, Inc.
   c. Metraflex Company (The).
   d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   e. Proco Products, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

**2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**

A. Description: Manufactured, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Presealed Systems.
   b. Holdrite.
   c. Or equal.

**2.4 GROUT**

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

**2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS**

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

3. Size pipe sleeves to provide between 1/4-inch and 1/2-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

**3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

**3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 26 05 44

01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Division 26 Section 26 01 00 "General Electrical Requirements" for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control conductors and cables.
3. Underground-line warning tape.
4. Warning labels and signs.
5. Instruction signs.
6. Equipment identification labels.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

**1.5 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 GENERAL:**

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

**2.2 RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS**

A. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to raceway.

1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed or hand written, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

B. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted or write-on, 3-mil thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend.

C. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

**2.3 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS**

A. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

C. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.

1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

**2.4 FLOOR MARKING TAPE**

A. 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

**2.5 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE**

A. Tape:

1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

B. Color and Printing:
1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE.
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.

C. Nonconducting Tape
1. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Thickness: 4 mils.
3. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft..
4. 3-Inch Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf, and 2500 psi.

D. Detectable Tape:
1. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.
3. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
4. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft..
5. 3-Inch Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf, and 4600 psi.

**2.6 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS**

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

C. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.

D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends: Revise text to fit actual installation and conditions.
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Other Service Disconnects: “WARNING – SERVICE DISCONNECT 1 OF 2. OTHER DISCONNECT IS LOCATED IN ELECTRICAL ROOM 102.”

**2.7 INSTRUCTION SIGNS**

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

**2.8 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS**

A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

C. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

D. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

**2.9 CABLE TIES**

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
   1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
   2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
   4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
   1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
   2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
   4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
   1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
   2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
   3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
   4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
   5. Color: Black.

**2.10 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Attach signs and plastic labels with adhesive or mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

E. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

F. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
   1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
   2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

G. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of the trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

H. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

**3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE**

A. Raceways installed for Communications Systems cables and conductors:
   1. Metal tag, stamped with raceway designation and location of opposite end of raceway: “FUTURE COMMUNICATION RACEWAY TO WING B”.

B. Accessible Raceways, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 60 A: Identify the feeding equipment and circuit number with write-on tags applied in bands. Install labels at 50-foot maximum intervals.

C. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings:
   1. Identify the covers of each junction and pull box with circuit designation of circuits contained within the box. In concealed areas, use permanent marker on exterior surface of box cover. In exposed locations, use permanent marker on interior surface of box cover.
   2. Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels or field-applied, stenciled paint with system type and circuits installed within the box:
      a. Emergency Power.
      b. Standby Power.
      c. Fire Alarm.

D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
   1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
      a. Color shall be factory applied the entire length of the conductor for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller, field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
      b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
         1) Phase A: Black.
         2) Phase B: Red.
         3) Phase C: Blue.
      c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
         1) Phase A: Brown.
         2) Phase B: Orange.
         3) Phase C: Yellow.
      d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

E. System Voltage Legend: Install an engraved instruction sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using epoxy adhesive or mechanical fasteners. Locate instructional sign at service disconnecting means for each building.

F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

G. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
   1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
   2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
   3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

H. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
   1. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in nonmetallic raceway.

I. Workspace Indication: At panelboard and switchboard locations, install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
   2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
   3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
   4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Power transfer switches.
      b. Controls with external control power connections.
      c. Emergency or standby panelboards or transformers.

K. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

L. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer or other emergency operation.

M. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, panelboards, switchboards, transformers, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
   1. Labeling Instructions:

a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
d. Fasten labels with epoxy adhesive or appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

2. Equipment Identification Labels shall include gear designation, voltage and phase of the supply, and where the circuit feeding panel originates, i.e.:

| |
|---|
| SWITCHBOARD MSB<br>277Y/480V<br>FED FROM UTILITY |

3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
   a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
   c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
   d. Motor-control centers.
   e. Enclosed switches, circuit breakers and controllers.
   f. Push-button stations.
   g. Contactors.
   h. Monitoring and control equipment.
4. For new service equipment, when indicated on the Drawings, or provide a label indicating the available fault current, as indicated on the drawings.

| |
|---|
| AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT: XX,XXX AMPS<br>CLEARING TIME: 0.XX SECONDS<br>CALCULATED ON: XX/XX/2018 |

END OF SECTION 26 05 53
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Indoor, basic occupancy sensors, power packs and accessories.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Lighting contactors.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers and manual light switches.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Plans: Dimensioned lighting plans clearly marked by manufacturer showing proper product selection, location and orientation of each occupancy and light-level sensor.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components, within each product category, from a single source and from a single manufacturer.

**1.7 WARRANTY**

A. Special Warranty for Occupancy Sensor System: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace occupancy sensor devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. The warranty shall include paid postage, repair or replacement, and testing without charge to the Owner, all or any parts of equipment which are found to be damaged, defective or non-conforming and returned to the supplier.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 INDOOR BASIC OCCUPANCY SENSORS & ACCESSORIES**

A. Manufacturer: Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the equipment (Wattstopper) specified herein and indicated on the drawings, or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Building Automatic, Inc.
2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3. Sensor Switch, Inc.

B. Performance Requirements:
1. The Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate which spaces are to be provided with sensors. Therefore, the manufacturer shall be responsible for reviewing all of the project’s electrical lighting floor plans, lighting fixture schedule, detail drawings, the architectural drawings and building sections to determine and include in the bid price all devices, materials, equipment necessary to provide adequate occupancy sensor coverage.
2. Where indicated, the Contractor shall furnish wiring from occupancy sensors to HVAC system controls for occupancy based control of the HVAC by the building management system.
3. To insure continuous light while people are present or just stepping in and out of offices, the time delay range on each sensor shall be adjustable from 30 seconds up to 30 minutes to maintain lights ON. The initial sensor timing shall be set to hold the load ON for 15 minutes.
4. Sensors shall detect occupancy within 2 feet of entrance into the room and shall not trigger ON from movement seen outside the room through doors or through windows.
5. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to ensure proper operation and settings for all occupancy sensor devices, to make all proper adjustments, and to assure Owner's satisfaction.

C. Technology Requirements:
1. Passive Infrared Sensors:
   a. Passive Infrared sensors shall have a multiple segmented Fresnel lens, in a multiple-tier configuration, with grooves to eliminate dust and residue build-up.
2. Ultrasonic Sensors:

a. Ultrasonic sensors shall not operate at frequencies less than 32Khz.
b. Ultrasonic operating frequency shall be crystal controlled to within plus or minus 0.005% tolerance to assure reliable performance and eliminate sensor cross-talk. Sensors using multiple frequencies are not acceptable.
c. Ultrasonic detectors shall provide adequate coverage regardless of whether carpeting, wall fabric covering or irregularities in wall construction exist.

3. Dual Technology Sensors:
   a. Dual technology sensors shall combine passive infrared with ultrasonic sensors into one unit for greater sensitivity and coverage.

D. General Requirements:
1. Where any occupancy sensor is to be connected to a lighting control panel, HVAC control panel, or for data logging, each sensor shall have an internal additional isolated relay with Normally Open, Normally Closed and Common outputs for use with HVAC control, Data Logging and other control options.
2. All sensors shall be capable of operating normally with any electric ballast, PL lamp system and rated motor loads.
3. Coverage of sensors shall remain constant after sensitivity control has been set. No automatic reduction shall occur in coverage due to the cycling of air conditioner or heating fans.
4. All sensors shall have readily accessible, user adjustable controls for time delay and sensitivity. Controls shall be concealed to limit tampering.
5. In the event of failure, a bypass manual "override on" shall be provided on each sensor. When bypass is utilized, lighting shall remain on constantly or control shall divert to a wall switch until sensor is replaced. This control shall be recessed to prevent tampering.
6. All sensors shall have no leakage current to load, in manual or in Auto/Off mode, for safety purposes and shall have voltage drop protection.
7. All sensors shall have UL rated, 94V-0 plastic enclosures.
8. All sensors shall provide a method of indication, such as an LED, to verify that motion is being detected during testing and that the unit is working.
9. Wall switch sensors shall be the same color as light switches, specified in Section 26 27 26 “Wiring Devices.”

E. AUTOMATIC PIR WALL SWITCH: (PW-100 - single relay, PW-200 - dual relay)
1. Wall switch sensors shall be decorator style able to fit behind a standard decorator type wall plate. Sensors shall be a 3-wire completely self-contained control system designed to replace the standard toggle switch. Sensors shall be designed to fit in a standard single-gang outlet box. Mount in multi-gang box when adjacent to other switches.
2. Wall switch sensors shall have a vandal-resistant lens, and be unconditionally warranted for the full 5 years term.
3. Wall switch sensors shall be capable of switching loads from 0 to 600 watts or 1/6 HP at 120 volts, 60 Hz; 0 to 1200 watts or 1/3 HP at 277 volts, 60 Hz, and shall have 180 degree coverage capability. Sensors shall have no leakage current to the load, in manual or in Auto/Off mode, for safety purposes and shall have voltage drop protection.
4. Wall switch sensors shall be capable of detection of motion at desk top level up to 300 square feet, and gross motion up to 1000 square feet.
5. Bi-level wall switch sensors shall accommodate up to two loads from 0 to 800 watts at 120 volts; 0 to 1200 watts at 277 volts, for each load.

F. DIMMABLE PIR WALL SWITCH: (WD-170 for 120V, WD-180 for 277V)
1. Dimmable wall switch sensors shall be decorator style able to fit behind a standard decorator type wall plate. Sensors shall be a 3-wire completely self-contained control system designed to replace the standard toggle switch. Sensors shall be designed to fit in a standard single-gang outlet box. Mount in multi-gang box when adjacent to other switches.
2. Dimmable wall switch sensors shall have a vandal-resistant lens, and be unconditionally warranted for the full 5 years term.
3. Dimmable wall switch sensors shall be capable of switching and dimming electronic dimmable ballasts with a line voltage phase control input and incandescent loads from 10 Watts to 500 Watts.
4. Dimmable wall switch sensors shall be capable of detection of motion at desk top level up to 1500 square feet, and gross, motion up to 300 square feet.

G. 0-10v DIMMABLE PIR WALL SWITCH: (PW-311)
1. Decorator style wall switch for control of 0-10V Dimming & Multi-Way ballasts and drivers.
2. Specifications:
   a. IR Range On Axis: 525 SqFt
   b. LightOutput 1FCD: Auto-ON To 50%

c. Load: 0-1000 E 1/6 Hp @ 120VAC, 0-1200 W 1/6 Hp @ 277VAC, 0-1500 W 1/6 Hp @ 347VAC
d. Response Time: 3 To 30 Minutes
e. Volts: 120/277 VAC, 50/60Hz, 347 VAC 50/60Hz

H. DUAL TECHNOLOGY WALL SWITCH (DW-100)

1. Dual Tech Wall Switch sensors shall be decorator style able to fit behind a standard decorator type wall plate. Sensors shall be a 3-wire completely self-contained control system designed to replace the standard toggle switch. Sensors shall be designed to fit in a standard single-gang outlet box. Mount in multi-gang box when adjacent to other switches.
2. Dual Tech Wall Switch sensors shall have a vandal-resistant lens, and be unconditionally warranted for the full 5 years term.
3. Dual Tech Wall Switch sensors shall be capable of switching loads from 0 to 800 watts or 1/6 HP at 120 volts, 60 Hz; 0 to 1200 watts or 1/3 HP at 277 volts, 60 Hz, and shall have 180 degree coverage capability. Sensors shall have no leakage current to the load, in manual or in Auto/Off mode, for safety purposes and shall have voltage drop protection.
4. Dual Tech Wall Switch sensors shall be have the following coverages:
   a. PIR Major motion 35’x 30’
   b. PIR Minor motion 20’ x 15’
   c. Ultrasonic Major motion 20’x 20’
   d. Ultrasonic Minor motion 15’ x 15’

I. DUAL TECHNOLOGY OCCUPANCY SENSOR: (DT-200)

1. Dual tech occupancy sensor shall be provided with a swivel mounting bracket for wall or ceiling mounting.
2. Device shall utilize pulse count processing and digital signature analysis to eliminate false activations while maintaining ability to detect minor motions.
3. Unit shall contain an isolated relay with N/O and N/C outputs rated at 1 amp for 24VDC/VAC.

J. ULTRASONIC CEILING MOUNTED SENSOR:

1. Each ultrasonic sensor shall contain an isolated relay with N/O and N/C outputs rated at 1 amp for 24VDC/VAC.
2. Small area ultrasonic sensor (WT-1100) shall be a ceiling mounted device with a 44 feet x 28 feet, or roughly 1100 square feet coverage pattern.
3. Large area ultrasonic sensor (WT-2200) shall be a ceiling mounted device with a 50 feet x 42 feet, or roughly 2200 square feet coverage pattern.
4. Hallway ultrasonic sensor (WT-2250) shall be a ceiling mounted device with a linear coverage pattern which allows an individual sensor to detect half-step walking motion at any point within an unobstructed, enclosed 90 feet x 10 feet

K. PASSIVE INFRARED CEILING MOUNTED SENSOR: (CI-200)

1. PIR ceiling sensor shall be available with a choice of two lens patterns: an extended range lens with a 360 x 44 feet coverage pattern; a reduce range, high density lens with a 360 x 24 feet coverage pattern.
2. Each unit shall contain an isolated relay with N/O and N/C outputs rated at 1 amp for 24VDC/VAC.

L. PASSIVE INFRARED WALL MOUNTED SENSOR: (CX-100)

1. PIR wall mounted sensor shall be provide a coverage pattern of at least 90 degrees for half-step walking motion detection coverage of up to 2000 square feet.
2. Each unit shall contain an isolated relay with N/O and N/C outputs rated at 1 amp for 24VDC/VAC.

M. HIGH BAY SENSORS (HB-300, HB-L4, HB-NB3)

1. High bay sensors shall utilize passive infrared technology to detect motion. Coverage pattern shall be a 360 x 68 feet coverage pattern at 40 feet high mounting height.
2. Provide 24V sensor, lens, and back box.

N. POWER PACKS: (BZ-50, BZ-150)

1. Power packs installed in corridors, hallways, passageways, lobbies, stairs and commons areas shall include an input contact for fire alarm system override.
2. Power pack shall be a self-contained power supply and relay module.
3. For ease and speed of installation, power pack shall have a 1/2" snap-in nipple for 1/2" knockouts and mounting on outside of enclosure.
4. Power pack shall have dry contacts capable of switching 20-amp ballast and incandescent load @ 120 VAC, 60 Hz; 20-amp ballast @ 277 VAC, 60 Hz; 1 hp @ 120-250 VAC, 60Hz.
5. Power pack shall have primary voltage and frequency inputs of 120/230/277 VAC, 50/60Hz.
6. Power pack shall provide a 24 VDC, 225 mA output with the relay connected.
7. Power pack can be used as a stand-alone, low-voltage switch, or can be wired to sensor for auto control.
8. Power pack shall have an LED to indicate status of relay.

9. Power pack shall have over-current protection if the low voltage current drawn exceeds 225 mA. In the event of an over-current, the low voltage +24VDC output shuts down to prevent permanent damage and the LED will blink continuously to indicate a fault condition.
10. Power pack shall be UL 2043 plenum rated and shall have low-voltage Teflon-coated leads rated for 300 volts.
11. Power pack shall be UL and CUL listed.

O. PROTECTIVE CAGES:(WC-1,2,3 or 4)
1. Provide protective wire cages to enclose occupancy sensors in a safe cage that prevents the units from being tampered with or damaged. Cages shall be a strong, durable, web-like design and are constructed with 3/16" coated steel wire. Cages shall be provided on installation in gymnasiums or any area susceptible to vandalism.

P. EXTREME-TEMPERATURE OCCUPANCY SENSOR:
1. Description: Ceiling-mounted, solid-state, extreme-temperature occupancy sensor.
2. Operating Ambient Conditions: From minus 40 to plus 125 deg F.
3. Mounting:
   a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
   b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
   c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind cover.

**2.2 LIGHTING CONTACTORS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
3. Cutler/Hammer, Eaton Corporation.
4. General Electric Company.
5. Siemens.
6. Square D.

B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, lighting contactors, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current). Lighting contactors switching exterior LED lighting fixtures shall be rated 60A, minimum.
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation or upstream electrical equipment.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250, and suitable for the location installed.
4. Provide with on-off control devices, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

**2.3 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.
4. Paragon.
5. Tyco Electronics; ALR Brand.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

**2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

B. Power Wiring for Lighting Controls: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Occupancy Sensor Control Wiring:
1. Control wiring between sensors and power packs shall be Class II, 18-24 AWG, stranded UL. Classified, jacketed cable. Size conductors according to manufacturer instructions.

2. Wiring shall be properly supported from building structure.
3. Where occupancy sensor control wiring is to be installed exposed, all wiring shall be installed in conduit or raceway. Otherwise, plenum rated cabling concealed above ceilings shall be permitted to be installed not in conduit or raceway.

D. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SENSOR AND SENSOR ACCESSORY INSTALLATION**

A. Locate and aim sensors as required for complete and proper volumetric coverage within the range of coverage(s) of controlled areas per the manufacturer's recommendations. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Provide additional sensors if required to properly and completely cover any room.

B. Proper judgment must be exercised in executing the installation so as to ensure the best possible installation in the available space and to overcome local difficulties due to space limitations or interference of structural components.

C. Wall switch sensors shall be adjusted, if requested by the Owner or Architect, to function in an “automatic on” mode.

D. Where indicated on the drawings, provide cabling from occupancy sensor(s) in each space to the HVAC systems control location for occupancy based control of the HVAC systems. Coordinate wiring requirements with HVAC control systems contractor.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

F. Where lighting installed in stairs, corridors, hallways, passageways, lobbies and commons areas is controlled by occupancy sensors, provide automatic override connection to fire alarm system which closes power pack output relay when the fire alarm system is in alarm mode.

**3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION**

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

**3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuit(s) or contactor(s) controlled by photoelectric sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

A. Program time switches according to Owner’s desired schedule.

B. Adjust photoelectric sensor sensitivity for proper control of exterior lighting fixtures.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

**3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.

B. SPD: Surge Protection Device.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

A. Surge Protection: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449, fourth edition SPD Type 1 for service entrance panelboards, Type 2 otherwise.

**1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show exact locations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Panelboard drawings shall have exact same circuit numbering as shown on contract drawings in order to preserve circuit identification on building plans for Owner’s future use. Panelboard drawings with different circuit numbering will be returned for correction and re-submittal.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit in electronic form.

**1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

**1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

**1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate typical dimensions for panelboards, considering clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Contractor shall be responsible for confirming that panelboards selected meet required clearances and dedicated electrical equipment space.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards. If panelboard is to be stored outdoors or in an unheated area, install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

**1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
   b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions.

**1.11 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. For floor mounted panelboards, coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

C. Where new panelboards are replacing existing panelboards, Contractor shall coordinate requirements and layouts of new devices to be compatible with existing conduit and conductor size, quantity and locations.

**1.12 WARRANTY**

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 - <u>PRODUCTS</u>**

**2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ABB-GE.
   2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards shall be dead front type panelboards with switching and overcurrent protective devices as indicated.

C. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets, as indicated on the drawings.
   1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
      a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
      c. Other Areas: As indicated on the drawings.
      d. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
   2. Finishes:
      a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
      b. Back Boxes: For surface mounted panelboards installed in finished spaces, back box shall have same finish as panels and trim. Otherwise, galvanized steel.
   3. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
   4. Each enclosure of panelboards of multiple sections shall be equal height.

D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
   1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, tin-plated or silver plated.
   2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
   3. Neutral bus shall be full capacity, equal to the ampacity of the phase buses.
   4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.

E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
   1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
   2. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
      a. Style: Mechanical or compression for connections to copper conductors, Compression for connections to aluminum conductors.
   3. Feed-Through Lugs: Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.

F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Series rated equipment and devices are not acceptable.

I. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. External Control-Power Source: 24-V control circuit, or as indicated on the Drawings.

**2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS**

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

B. Doors: Where Distribution Panelboards are installed in spaces not designated as electrical rooms, they shall be provided with doors. Doors shall be secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 48 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

**2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS**

A. Enclosure: Size shall be 5-3/4” deep, 20” wide.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; all panelboards keyed alike.

E. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses. Acceptable only where indicated on the drawings.

**2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 400 A and larger.
2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
3. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features:
   a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
   b. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
      1) Style: Mechanical or compression for connections to copper conductors, Compression for connections to aluminum conductors
   c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
   a. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
4. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB) Accessories/Options, where indicated on the Drawings:
   a. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
   b. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
   c. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.

**2.5 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES (SPD)**

A. Manufacturer: Surge protection devices shall be a standard product offered by the panelboard manufacturer and shall be factory installed.

B. General:

1. SPD shall be listed and components recognized in accordance with UL 1449 4th edition and UL 1283.
2. SPDs located within service entrance equipment shall be tested and designed for applications within ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C environments.
3. SPD shall be installed by and shipped from the panelboard manufacturer’s factory.
4. SPD shall provide surge current diversion paths for all modes of protection; L-L, L-N, L-G, N-G in wye systems and L-L and L-G in delta systems.
5. SPD shall be modular in design. Suppression elements shall be individually fused MOVs connected to copper busses for precise current sharing. Fuses shall be UL 248-1 listed.
6. SSD shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| a. | Operating Voltage Range | +/-15% |
| b. | MCOV | 115% of nominal system voltage |
| c. | Surge Capacity per Mode | 100kA |
| d. | Surge Capacity per Phase | 200kA |
| e. | Nominal Discharge Current Rating (In) | 20kA |

f. Response Time: faster than 1 nanosecond

g. ANSI/UL 1449 4th Edition Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) - The maximum ANSI/UL 1449 4th Edition VPR for the device shall not exceed the following:

| Modes | L-N; L-G; N-G | L-L |
|---|---|---|
| 208Y/120V | 700 | 1200 |
| 480Y/277V | 1200 | 2000 |

7. Monitoring Diagnostics – Each SPD shall provide the following integral monitoring options:

a. Protection Status Indicators - Each unit shall have a solid-state indicator light that reports the status of the protection on each phase. For wye configured units, the indicator lights must report the status of all protection elements and circuitry in the L-N and L-G modes.

b. Provide an on-off switch to silence the alarm and a pushbutton switch to test the alarm. SPD monitoring devices shall be mounted on the front of the enclosure. SPD shall be provided with 1 set of NO/NC dry contacts for remote annunciation.

c. Surge Counter - The SPD shall be equipped with an LCD display that indicates to the user how many surges have occurred at the location. The surge counter shall trigger each time a surge event with a peak current magnitude of a minimum of 50 ± 20A occurs. Provide a reset button.

d. The SPD shall not limit the use of through-feed lugs, sub-feed lugs, and sub-feed breaker options.

C. SPD shall have a warranty period of five years, incorporating unlimited replacements of suppressor parts if they are destroyed by surges during the warranty period. Warranty shall be the responsibility of the panelboard manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Anchor panelboard to the structural surface or members or to a plywood backboard behind the panelboard.

C. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated. Reduce mounting height as necessary to ensure that the operating handle of top-most switch or circuit breaker, in on position, is not higher than 79 inches.

D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

G. From each flush mounted panelboard, stub four 1-inch empty conduits from into accessible ceiling space.

H. For flush mounted panelboards, maintain at least 8 inches between adjacent panel cans for block to be installed between them and for the door trim overlaps to not interfere with each other.

I. Where NEMA 250 Type 3R or Type 4 panelboards are indicated to be flush mounted, they shall actually be installed semi-flush to allow clearance for door hinges or drip lips. In these situations, it may be necessary to provide a deeper can to prevent the face shell of CMU block from interfering with conduits entering the can.

J. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.

C. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable. Spares shall be marked in pencil.

D. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate. Nameplate shall include the panel designation, voltage and phase of the supply, and where the circuit feeding panel originates.

E. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with an engraved nameplate.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.

2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial actions taken, and observations after remedial actions.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as directed by the Engineer.

**3.6 PROTECTION**

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Receptacles
2. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
3. Pendant cord-connector devices.
4. Cord and plug sets.
5. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 26 09 23 “Lighting Control Devices” for wall switch occupancy sensor devices.
2. Section 26 28 16 “Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers” for motor rated switches.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. TR: Tamper resistant.

F. WR: Weather resistant.

**1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

A. Coordination:
1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match equipment plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

**1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field quality-control reports.

**1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers’ Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
1. Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

**2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS**

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

**2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

A. Duplex Receptacles:
1. 125 V, 20 A: Ivory color, unless otherwise noted. One-piece brass backstrap. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
2. GFCI Receptacles: Comply with UL943 Class A. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned.
3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

| **Manufacturer** | **Convenience** | **GFCI** | **GFCI/WR** | **IG (orange)** | **GFCI/TR** | **TR** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Cooper | AH5362I | VGF20V | WRVGF20GY | IG5362RN | TRVGF20I | TR8300I |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hubbell | 5362I | GF20ILA | GFTR20GY | IG5362 | GFTR20I | HBL5362ITR |
| Pass & Seymour | PS5362I | 2097I | 2097TRWRGRY | IG5362 | 2097TRI | TR5362I |

B. Single Receptacles:
1. 250V, ampacity as indicated. Provide heavy-duty single receptacles, 3-pole, 4-wire, grounding type as required.

| **Manufacturer** | **14-20R** | **14-30R** | **14-50R** |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cooper | 5759 | 5744N | 5754N |
| Hubbell | HBL8410 | HBL9430A | HBL9450A |
| Pass & Seymour | 3820 | 3864 | 3894 |

**2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

B. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
2. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

**2.5 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES**

A. Description:
1. Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector.
2. NEMA WD 6 Configuration as required, heavy-duty grade, and FS W-C-596.
3. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
4. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

**2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS**

A. Description:
1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Thermoset rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

**2.7 TOGGLE SWITCHES**

A. Requirements:
1. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896. Flush type, totally enclosed, specification grade, Color: Ivory, unless otherwise noted.
2. 120/277 V, 20 A, unless otherwise noted.

B. Standard Toggle Switches:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

| **Manufacturer** | **SPST** | **SPDT (3-way)** | **DPST (2-pole)** | **DPDT (4-way)** | **SPDT Momentary** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Cooper | AH1221 | AH1223 | AH1222 | AH1224 | 1995 |
| Hubbell | HBL1221I | HBL1223I | HBL1222I | HBL1224I | HBL1557I |
| Pass & Seymour | PS20AC1 | PS20AC3 | PS20AC2 | PS20AC4 | 1251 |

C. Key-Operated Switches: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

| **Manufacturer** | **SPST** | **SPDT (3-way)** | **DPST (2-pole)** | **DPDT (4-way)** | **SPDT Momentary** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Arrow-Hart | AH1221L | AH1223L | AH1222L | AH1224L | AH1995L |
| Hubbell | HBL1221LI | HBL1223LI | HBL1222LI | HBL1224LI | |
| Pass & Seymour | PS20AC1L | PS20AC3L | PS20AC2L | PS20AC4L | |

**2.8 WALL PLATES**

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
1. Plate-Securing Screws: Stainless steel.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Jumbo sized, 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel or Type 302 stainless steel.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

**2.9 FINISHES**

A. Device Color:
1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Ivory unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Protect installed devices and their boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.

D. Device Installation:
1. Replace devices that have been damaged during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 10 AWG are installed on 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
10. Receptacle orientation shall be consistent throughout the Project.

E. Device Plates: Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

F. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on bottom. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.

G. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings. Coordinate exact locations prior to rough-in.

**3.2 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

**3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles, applied to 100% of installed devices:
1. Test for proper connection and continuity of phase, neutral and grounding conductor.
2. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
3. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.

C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, panelboards, switchboards, enclosed controllers and motor-control centers.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 3 spare fuses of each size and type.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.7 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Busman, Inc.; Edison Fuse, Inc.; Littlefuse, Inc.; Mersen.

**2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES**

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXAMINATION**

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions that may affect performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS**

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Service Entrance: Class T, fast acting.
2. Branch circuits larger than 100A: Class T, fast acting.
3. Branch Circuits 60A to 100A: Class RK1, dual element time-delay.
4. Branch Circuits smaller than 60A: Class RK1 or RK5, dual-element time delay.

**3.3 INSTALLATION**

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

**3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Install labels machine printed vinyl labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Division 26 Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Motor Rated Switches.
2. Fusible & Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Enclosures.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
1. Enclosure types and details.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field quality-control reports.
1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

**1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate typical dimensions for enclosed switches, circuit breakers and other electrical equipment. Contractor shall field verify exact dimensions of available space and install equipment with adequate clearances between enclosed switches or circuit breakers and adjacent surfaces and other items.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under conditions where the equipment is installed.

**1.9 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB-GE.
2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.

3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

**2.2 MOTOR RATED SWITCHES**

A. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
1. Configuration: Non-reversing, unless otherwise noted.
2. Flush mounted in finished spaces, surface mounted otherwise.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor, dry locations. NEMA 4 for wet or damp locations. Enclosure or faceplate shall have provisions for padlocking the device in the off position.
4. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 30 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; bimetallic or melting alloy type.

B. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers:
1. Rating: 16A; 1hp at 120V-277V.

C. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers:
1. Rating: 30A; 2hp at 120V, 7.5hp at 208V, 10hp at 480V.

**2.3 FUSIBLE & NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES**

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, Ampere rating as indicated: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Fusible switches shall have clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses. Provide fuse holders as required to accommodate fuses sized per equipment manufacturer’s nameplate MOCP.

C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: (For circuits with neutral conductor) Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit (Where appropriate): Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Switches for elevator machine disconnection shall have One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), The contact shall open when the switch arm is moved to the open position, but remain closed if power is removed from the line side.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

**2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

A. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

B. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

C. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and $I^2t$ response.

D. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
   a. Style: Mechanical or compression for connections to copper conductors, Compression for connections to aluminum conductors
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
4. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

E. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB) Accessories/Options, where indicated on the Drawings or required by Code:
1. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

2. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP): With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip). Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
3. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.
4. Service-Rated: Labeled for use as service equipment, where fed from utility.

**2.5 ENCLOSURES**

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location, unless otherwise noted.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Kitchen or Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

**PART 3 - <u>EXECUTION</u>**

**3.1 EXAMINATION**

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
D. Comply with NECA 1.
E. Other trades will furnish and install motors and will furnish motor starters. Install motor starters, safety switches, and wiring and make power connections to starters and motors. Provide separate raceways for line side and load side conductors.
F. Install disconnect switches used with motor-driven appliances, and motors and controllers within sight of controller position unless otherwise indicated.
G. Attach equipment grounding conductor to manufacturer furnished ground lug kit and not to enclosure mounting fasteners.
H. Close all unused openings in NEMA 3 R switches and mechanical equipment to prevent entry of water.

**3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Perform tests and inspections.
B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include notation of deficiencies detected, any remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as directed by the Project Engineer.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16
01-697-027

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 26 01 00 “General Electrical Requirements” for general provisions for electrical work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:
1. Interior lighting fixtures.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.
4. Lighting fixture supports.
5. Exterior lighting fixtures mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, emergency lighting relays, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color-rendering index.

C. LED: Light Emitting Diode.

D. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on manufacturer, catalog number, features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
2. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
3. Energy-efficiency data.
4. For LED luminaires, submit LM-79 and LM-80 test results for each fixture type.
5. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.

**1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

**1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides or by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.8 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

**1.9 WARRANTY**

A. Special Warranty for LED luminaires: Manufacturer’s standard form in which manufacturer of LED luminaires agrees to repair or replace any components that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for LED luminaires: Five years from the date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries, Ballasts, and Exit Signs: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining years.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS**

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures. Contractor shall provide trims designed for the type of ceiling in which they will be installed.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
   a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.156 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
   b. UV stabilized.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

**2.2 EXIT SIGNS**

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
   a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
   c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
   d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
   e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
3. Optional Features/Accessories, provided when indicated on Lighting Fixture Schedule.
   a. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
   b. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
   a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply and battery for power connection to remote unit.
   b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

**2.3 LED LUMINAIRES:**

A. Manufacturers: As indicated on Lighting Fixture Schedule.

B. General Requirements for LED Luminaires:

1. Test method and measurement shall comply with IESNA LM-79, as performed by an independent, NRTL testing laboratory.
2. Test method for the LED lifetime shall comply with IESNA LM-80, as performed by an independent, NRTL testing laboratory.
3. LED Luminaire manufacturer shall be a Lighting Facts member, and publish Lighting Facts data for each luminaire provided.
4. Each LED luminaire shall be a complete lighting unit consisting of a light source (single LED or array) driver, and other components to distribute light, and to position and protect the source(s).

5. LED drivers, modules, and reflector shall be accessible, serviceable, and replaceable from below the ceiling.

C. LED drivers shall include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
1. Minimum efficiency: 85% at full load.
2. Minimum Operating Ambient Temperature: -20˚ C. (-4˚ F.)
3. Input Voltage: 120 - 277V (±10%) at 60 Hz.
4. Integral short circuit, open circuit, and overload protection.
5. Power Factor: ≥ 0.95.
6. Total Harmonic Distortion: ≤ 20%.
7. Unless otherwise noted, dimming LED drivers shall be controllable from 100% down to 1% using the control method indicated. Control method shall be 0-10V, unless otherwise noted.

D. LED modules shall include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
1. Comply with IES LM-79 and LM-80 requirements.
2. Minimum CRI 80 and color temperature 3500˚ K unless otherwise indicated in the LIGHTING FIXTURE SCHEDULE.
3. Minimum Rated Life: 60,000 hours per IES L70.
4. Light output lumens as indicated in the LIGHTING FIXTURE SCHEDULE.

E. Requirements for LED Luminaires equipped with battery power units:
1. Battery power unit and luminaire assembly shall comply with the requirements of UL 924.
2. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without entering ceiling space.
   a. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
   b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, high-temperature, nickel-cadmium type, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
5. Battery power units shall be factory installed. Where factory installation is not practicable, battery pack shall be UL Classified for field installation specifically with the intended luminaire. Where field installation is performed, the Contractor shall submit manufacturer data indicating compatibility with the intended luminaire and performance characteristics of the combined power unit/luminaire.

**2.4 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

A. Comply with Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.

C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

E. Rod Hangers: 1/4-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

F. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

G. Aircraft cables: ASTM A603 galvanized or ASTM A492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel or malleable iron with thimbles, brackets, swivel, toggle or bolts designed for the application.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Lighting fixtures:
1. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install lamps in each luminaire, where applicable.
3. Lighting fixtures in mechanical rooms shall be chain hung or wall mounted. Coordinate exact locations with mechanical contractor.

B. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer.

C. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports:
1. Install at least two independent support rods or wires from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Locate wires or rods at opposite corners. Supports shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
2. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees. Provide at least one support rod or hanger wire from each fixture to structure.
3. Fixture supports above ceilings shall be tagged or colored to differentiate them from ceiling supports.

D. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
   1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
   2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
   3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
   4. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

E. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

F. At the time of Substantial Completion, replace any lamps that are not functioning or that are noticeably dimmed after Contractor's use during construction.

**3.2 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

**3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.

B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

**3.4 STARTUP SERVICE**

A. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

**3.5 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING**

A. Clean lighting fixtures of dirt and debris at the completion of construction.

B. Adjust aimable luminaires as directed by the Owner or the Architect.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [**12**] months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance, and tools or lifts as required, in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide one visit to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
   1. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 51 00
01-697-027

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
   2. Removing existing vegetation.
   3. Clearing and grubbing.
   4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
   5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
   6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utility services, construction and support facilities, security and protection facilities, and temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
   2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for field engineering and surveying.
   3. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for partial demolition of buildings or structures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.

D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.

E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated.

F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
   1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
   2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at location designated by Owner.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
   1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.

C. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.

D. Utility Locator Service: Notify Utility Protection Center, Inc. 1-800-282-7411 for area where Project is located before site clearing.
E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
I. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS
A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION
A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
B. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag or wrap a 1-inch blue vinyl tie tape flag around each tree trunk at 54 inches above the ground.
C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL
A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION
A. General: Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.

3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES
A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed.
1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect not less than **three** days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
E. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
F. Removal of underground utilities is included in earthwork sections and with applicable fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communications, electronic safety and security and utilities sections and Section 02 41 16 "Structure Demolition" and Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition."

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING
A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.

2. Grind down stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
3. Use only hand methods for grubbing within protection zones.
4. Chip up removed tree branches and coordinate whether to stockpile on-site in areas approved by Architect OR dispose of off-site.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered and/or as indicated in the Subsurface Geotechnical Report in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.

B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.8 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

**END OF SECTION 31 10 00**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. **Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia and Permit No. GAR 100001**: Section 31 10 19 is intended to be a basic outline and general reference only and must **not** be considered a substitute for reading the "Permit No. GAR 100001" in its entirety or reading and following the "Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia". The Contractor should be aware that the permit has many specific requirements which may not be outlined in this document but are nonetheless required by law. Furthermore, this document is not a legal analysis of the permit but rather a practical overview of the structure and requirements outlined here are for all construction activities on standalone and common development projects that disturb 1 to 250 acres.

C. **Notice of Intent** (NOI): Included in the drawings with the Owner and Engineer information filled in, must be completed and signed by the [**Contractor**] [**Construction Manager**] and submitted to the Georgia EPD at the address indicated in the instructions which also can be found on the drawings. The Notice of Intent form, the Notice of Termination form and additional forms, regulations and technical assistance can be found at; http://www/gaepd.org/Documents/epdforms_wpb.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes sequencing, products, procedures and monitoring measures required to stabilize the site, control erosion and sample run-off leaving the site.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing"
2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving"
3. Division 31 Section "Storm Drainage"
4. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. **Owner** – The legal title holder to the real property.

B. **Operator** – The entity that has the primary day-to-day operational control of those activities at the facility necessary to ensure compliance with Erosion, Sedimentation and Pollution Control Plan requirements and permit conditions.

C. **Secondary Permitee** – An individual builder, utility company or utility contractor that conducts a construction activity within a common development.

D. **Qualified Personnel** – A person who has successfully completed an Erosion and Sediment control short course approved by EPFD and SS&WCC.

E. **Licensed Professional** – Licensed by the State of Georgia in the field of: Engineering, Architectural, Landscape Architect, Forestry, Geology, or Land Surveying.

F. **Notice of Intent** – (NOI) A notice to begin construction must be submitted at least **14 days** before commencement of construction activities.

G. **Best Management Practices** – (BMP) Structure practices designed, installed and maintained to prevent and control erosion and sedimentation during the construction process.

H. **Notice of Termination** – (NOT) A notice that construction activity has been completed and that the site is stabilized, according to Permit No. GAR 100001.

I. **Comprehensive Monitoring Plan** – (CMP) A plan that details how, where and when BMP's rain and storm water discharged will be inspected, monitored, sampled and reported.

J. **National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System** – (NPDES) A Georgia State Act authorizing storm water discharge associated with construction activity in accordance with requirements set forth in the Permit No GAR 100001.

K. **PAM** – Anionic polyacrylamide as a temporary soil binding agent to reduce soil erosion.

L. **Stabilized** – Stabilized shall mean for unpaved areas and areas not covered by permanent structures, 100% of the soil surface is uniformly covered in permanent vegetation with a density of 70% or greater, or equivalent permanent stabilization measures (such as rip rap, permanent mulches) have been used.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following records/logs as required by the NPDES Permit to the appropriate Georgia EPD Regional/District Office **and** to Southern A & E (attention: Becky Kirk) by the **15th. of the month** for every month that the project is active, unless otherwise noted. Local and/or state authorities may require separate inspection reports on construction sites. The Contractor is responsible for any such additional reports or certifications that may be required.

1. Notice of Intent (NOI) – minimum **14 days** before construction begins.
2. Daily Rainfall Monitoring Data
3. Storm Water Monitoring Data
4. Erosion & Sedimentation Inspection and Maintenance Report
5. Notice of Termination – after construction activities have ceased and site is stabilized.

B. Secondary Submittals/Notifications: Submit the following to Southern A & E (attn.: Becky Kirk)
   1. Subcontractor List – any and all Subcontractors that will be working at the site, involved in any form of site work. Submit names, addresses, and phone numbers at Preconstruction Meeting.
   2. Notify Southern A & E on the exact day that mobilization will occur on the site.
   3. Notify Southern A & E as to the name of the qualified person(s) who will be responsible for daily and weekly on-site inspection and reporting.
   4. Notify Southern A & E as to any field additions or modifications made to the overall Erosion & Sediment Control Program. These revisions will be noted on the plans and resubmitted to the proper authority.
   5. Erosion control blanket sample.
   6. Jute mesh sample.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor shall comply with:
   1. The Georgia State Water Quality Act
   2. The Federal Clean Water Act as enforced by the Georgia Environmental Protection Division
   3. Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia
   4. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (GAR 100001)
   5. Department of Transportation, State of Georgia, Standard Specifications, 1993 Edition.
   6. Local city and/or county requirements, including inspections, certifications, and reports.

B. Payment for additional structural measures required by the Georgia Environmental Protection Division or inspections from qualified persons beyond the requirements or the Contact Documents shall be processed as a Change Order to the Documents.

C. Contractor shall engage a qualified firm or person specializing in the monitoring, sampling and record keeping necessary to comply with the NPDES CMP requirements on the collection and testing of storm water run off. The testing frequency requirements from the NPDES permit are as follows:
   1. Samples must be taken within 45 minutes of discharge.
   2. Sample the first rain event equal to or greater than ½" and allow for monitoring during normal business hours* (Monday thru Friday, 8:00am to 5:00pm and Saturday 8:00am to 5:00pm when construction activity is being conducted by the Primary permittee) that occurs after all clearing and grubbing operations have been completed in the drainage area of the location selected as the sampling location;
      In addition to above, for each area of the site that discharges to a receiving stream, the first rain event that reaches or exceeds 0.5 inch and allows for monitoring during normal business hours* that occurs either 90 day after the first sampling event or after all mass grading operations have been competed in the drainage area of the location selected as the sampling location, whichever comes first;
      At the time of sampling performed pursuant to above, if BMP's are found to be properly designed, installed and maintained, no further action is required. If BMP's in any area of the site that discharges to a receiving stream are not properly designed, installed and maintained, corrective action shall be defined and implemented within 2 business days, and turbidity samples shall be taken from discharge from that area of the site for each subsequent rain event that reaches or exceeds 0.5 inch during normal business hours* until the selected turbidity standard is attained, or unit post-storm event inspections determine that BMP's are properly designed, installed and maintained.
      a. *Note that the permittee may choose to meet the requirements above by collecting turbidity samples from any rain event that reaches or exceeds 0.5 inches and allows for monitoring at any time of the day or week.
   3. Submit monthly monitoring results to proper agency.
   4. Copies of all sampling and testing of storm water run-off shall be forwarded to Southern A & E attention: Becky Kirk.

D. Inspection of the site shall be conducted on a regular basis as outlined in the permit requirements:
   1. Week One – Within one week after initial construction activities commence, the licensed professional, (SA&E) who prepared the Plan, must inspect the installation of BMP's, determine if they have been properly installed and maintained and notify the permittee (Contractor) of any deficiencies. The permittee (Contractor) must correct noted deficiencies within two business days after inspection.
   2. Weekly – The Contractor must have a qualified person inspect the site at least every 7 days and within 24 hours of the end of every ½" or greater rainfall event.
   3. Daily – The Contractor must conduct daily inspections of all Construction Exits, where Petroleum Products are stored, used or handled, and measure rainfall once each twenty-four hour period at the site.
   4. The Contractor must conduct inspections and report to any local or state authority requiring additional reporting beyond that required by NPDES or state legislation. The frequency of these inspections and reporting will be established by the agency requiring the inspections and reporting.

E. Sampling Requirements:
   1. All sampling shall be collected by "grab samples" and the analysis of these samples must be conducted in accordance with methodology and test procedures established by 40 CFR Part 136, the guidance

document titled "NPDES Storm Water Sampling Guidance Document, EPA 833-B-92-001" and guidance documents that may be prepared by the EPD.

2. This project requires the monitoring of nephelometric turbidity in receiving water(s) or outfalls in accordance with permit GAR 100001. All sampling shall be done in accordance with the EPD's guidelines for sampling. Sampling Requirements shall include the following:
   a. USGS topographic map of a scale equal to or more detailed than 1:24000 showing:
      1) Site location
      2) Location of perennial and intermittent streams
      3) Sampling location
   b. Written narrative of analytical methods used to collect, handle and analyze samples
   c. Rationale for NTU limit(s) selected
   d. Any additional information EPD determines necessary

F. Duty to Comply:
1. Each permittee must comply with all applicable conditions of this permit. Any noncompliance constitutes a violation of the Georgia Water Quality Control Act and is grounds for enforcement actions; for permit termination; or for denial of a permit renewal application.
2. Each permittee must document in their records any and all known violation of this permit at his/her site within seven (7) days of his/her knowledge of the violation. A summary of these violations must be submitted to EPD by the permittee within fourteen (14) days of his/her discovery of the violation.

G. Contractor will retain the following items on site:
1. Copy of Notice of Intent (NOI) plus a receipt of delivery.
2. Copy of the Plan.
3. Written receipts from any Secondary Permitees verifying their receipt of Plan.
4. Initial Inspections Report from design professional.
5. Daily Inspection Logs of Construction Exits, Petroleum Storage areas, and rainfall measurements.
6. Weekly Inspection Log
7. Daily Rainfall Monitoring Data
8. Storm Water Monitoring Data
9. Rain Water Gauge (for the Contractor's use, other than connected to the sampling apparatus)
10. Copy of current NPDES legislation permit GAR 100001 and copy of The Georgia Erosion and Sedimentation Act of 1975.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary erosion control measures are designed to control soil erosion at its potential source with downstream sediment barriers used as a backup.

B. Temporary erosion control is considered incidental to all land disturbing operations. The Contractor is responsible for erosion control over the entire site as well as damage to adjacent property caused by failure to properly install or properly maintain erosion control measures shown in the Contract Documents.

C. The Drawings indicate permanent and temporary grassing required under this contract.

D. The Comprehensive Monitoring Program (CMP) implementation, monitoring and reporting throughout the life of the project is required under this contract.

E. All temporary erosion and sediment control measures, (silt fence, check dams, brush berms, etc.) must be removed after final stabilization of the site unless otherwise directed by the Owner, Architect or Engineer.

F. If the Site has been graded under a previous contract, then the Contractor for the current phase of construction must maintain the existing erosion control measures and add new erosion control measures when necessary after the original grading contractor has submitted his/her Notice of Termination.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEDIMENT BARRIERS

A. Silt Fence
1. Filter fabric and posts complying with Georgia D.O.T. Specification Section 171 – Temporary Silt Fence (1993 Edition) and the Manual for Soil and Erosion Control in Georgia – Type C, as outlined in design criteria in the Manual for Soil and Erosion Control in Georgia.
2. Alternate Silt Fence 2" x 2" x 4′-0" oak posts with DOT approved polypropylene support mesh sewn to polypropylene fabric and stapled to oak posts.

2.2 EROSION CONTROL BLANKET

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. American Excelsior Company (AMXCO)
   a. Curlex II
   b. Curlex HV
2. Synthetic Industries
   a. Landlok TRM 1060

b. Landlok TRM 450
3. Bonterra America
a. C2
4. Erosion Control Systems
a. Heavy High Impact Excelsior Mat
5. Erosion Control Products
a. Xcel SD3

B. Product Characteristics: Minimum Specifications for Erosion Control Blanket
1. Product will perform on slopes of up to 2:1.
2. Product encased between two layers of photodegradable plastic netting, top and bottom.
3. Weight: at minimum, 0.6 lbs per square yard.
4. Product will handle velocities of 7 fps or more.
5. Minimum shear strength of 2.0 or greater.

2.3 JUTE MESH EROSION CONTROL

A. A mesh matting fabricated of jute yarn, placed over previously prepared grassed areas as called out on the plans.
1. Unit weight of the yarn shall be at least 0.90 pounds per square yard, but not more than 1.5 pounds per square yard.
2. A 48 inch width shall show between 76 and 80 warping and a one yard length shall show between 39 and 43 weftings.
3. The woven mesh shall be furnished in strips at least 45 inches wide.
4. Anchor staples shall be cold draw wire not smaller than 14-gage, formed into a “U” shape from a wire not less than 12 inches in length.

2.4 POLYACRYLAMIDE EROSION CONTROL EMULSION, POWDER & BLOCKS

A. Product: Anionic form of polyacrylamide (PAM), in powdered, emulsion or semi-hydrated gel blocks.
1. In pure form shall have less than or equal to 0.05% acrylamide monomer by weight.
2. Only the anionic form of PAM shall be used. **DO NOT** use cationic PAM.
3. PAM and PAM mixtures shall be environmentally harmless and non-combustible.
4. Manufacturer shall provide Material Safety Data Sheets, written application procedures and written instructions for storage and mixing of the product.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EROSION CONTROL SEQUENCE

A. Contractor shall follow the sequence of erosion control activities listed here:
1. **Prior** to performing any site clearing work, install al construction entrance/exits and install sediment barriers at bottom of slopes and along any adjacent paved areas, or property lines in critical areas.
2. Clear for and install detention/sediment ponds complete with all required structures including stilling basins and rip-rap at all pond out-falls. **Do not** clear more area than is required for installation of detention/sediment ponds until ponds are completely installed and stabilized.
3. Install monitoring equipment as required by NPDES.
4. Stabilize and seed all pond dams and slopes.
5. Clear and grub remainder of site. Install ground cover consisting of grass, much, and/or polyethylene sheets over exposed soil within 7 days after site clearing begins. Install repeated applications as necessary to maintain ground cover.
6. Install diversion ditches to direct storm water to detention ponds.
7. Install brush berms and check dams.
8. Grade site and stabilize cut and fill slopes sequentially as grading progresses.
9. Install storm piping and drainage structures.
10. Install sediment control measures around inlets and rip-rap at headwalls.
11. Install permanent grassing on remainder of exposed site.
12. Inspect and repair silt fence and erosion control devices every week, minimum.
13. When rainfall is predicted or probable, any disturbed, ungrassed areas on site must be covered with temporary mulch. Repeat this coverage on a daily basis if necessary.
14. Maintain erosion control measures until all site construction work is complete, permanent grass is established over all disturbed areas and a Certificate of Substantial Completion is issued.
15. Contractor shall clean up all washouts and repair and/or replace sediment barriers promptly. Remove accumulated sediment when it reaches mid-height of barrier.
16. Washouts and ruts which develop during the course of the Work shall be repaired immediately using suitable fill materials, compacted, topsoiled, fertilized, limed, seeded and mulched.
17. Runoff shall not be concentrated in any one area unless so indicated on the drawings. If localized erosion occurs, Contractor shall repair damaged area and adjust grades to promote uniform sheet flow and to prevent localized erosion.
18. Contractor is responsible for maintaining construction entrance access.

1) Prevent soil from washing or being tracked onto existing paving.
2) Contractor shall remove any mud deposited onto public roads by vehicles leaving the site.

19. At completion, remove all sediment and silt from all pipes and ponds.

3.2 EROSION CONTROL BLANKET

A. Install erosion control blanket on all disturbed slope 4:1 or greater, and as shown on plans.
B. Prepare, fertilize and seed area to be covered in compliance with Section 02 93 0.
C. Apply blanket to slope vertically. Upper end shall be buried a minimum of 6 inches below grade.
D. Anchor blanket with sod staples to comply with manufacturers suggested pattern and spacing.

3.3 JUTE MESH EROSION CONTROL

A. Prior to placing jute mesh, the grassing operations shall have been completed and the area left smooth, uniform condition, free from stones, lumps, roots or other material which would prevent the Mesh from snug contact with the underlying soil.
B. Immediately after grassing operations are complete in an area sufficiently large enough, the Jute Mesh shall be placed. In any areas where erosion has occurred after the required surface area and contour have been attained, necessary repairs shall be made prior to placing mesh.
C. Jute Mesh shall be rolled out in the direction of flow except for the downstream end section connecting to a drainage structure or paved ditch.
D. Adjacent strips shall overlap at least 6". Adjoining ends shall overlap at least 6". For all overlaps, the upstream section shall be on top.
E. A Type 2 Check Slot shall be used at the downstream end of Jute Mesh that does not connect to a structure.
F. Each strip of the matting shall be held firmly in place by means of staples, one row along each edge and one row along the middle. Refer to manufacturer recommendations and Section 714 of the GDOT Standard Specification, 1993 edition.
G. Rolling: after the Jute Mesh has been placed and stapled, it shall be firmly embedded in the soil surface by tamping or rolling with approved smooth rollers or tampers so that the mesh will be in contact with the ground surface.

3.4 POLYACRYLAMIDE APPLICATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for safety, storage, mixing and application of Erosion Control Emulsion (PAM).
B. Apply Polyacrylamide (PAM) Emulsion using hydroseeders, water trucks or other spraying devices. Spraying devices having a mechanical agitator or mixing apparatus or hydraulic recirculation will work best.
C. Apply Polyacrylamide (PAM) Powder using hand spreader, mechanical disc or mixed with water and applied with spraying device.
D. Install Polyacrylamide (PAM) Gel Blocks in storm drainage structures, swales and diversion ditches as noted on the erosion control plan. Do not use Gel Blocks in detention/retention ponds, or live streams.
E. Thoroughly mix emulsion with water for minimum of two minutes before application. Add seed, fertilizer or mulch to hydroseeders after emulsion has been mixed with water.
F. Recommended Mixture: 0.75 to 1.5 gallons emulsion per 1500 gallons of water. Do not exceed 1.5 gallons per 1500 gallons of water.
G. Polyacrylamide Erosion Control products are soil specific. Contractor shall consult with local distributor for proper analysis and match with soils on site.

3.5 CLEAN-UP

A. Upon approval from the Architect, remove temporary erosion control measures, including accumulated sediment, and restore affected areas.
B. Remove accumulated silt from detention ponds and sediment basins immediately prior to Substantial Completion.
C. Contractor shall restore and regrade detention ponds and sediment basins to comply with design grades shown on Contract Documents and shall restore grassing in affected areas.
D. Prior to leaving the Site, the Contractor shall replace/refresh all rip-rap shown on construction documents, including, but not limited to, headwalls, stilling basins, channels and level spreaders.

END OF SECTION 31 10 19
01-697-027

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, sports fields and plants.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
5. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
7. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
8. Topsoil placement.
9. Providing as-built surveys of site modifications and improvements.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 01 22 00 “Unit Prices” for recording of unit prices related to this section.
2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for recording preexcavation and earth moving progress.
3. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities; also for temporary site fencing if not in another Section.
4. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
5. Section 31 10 00 “Site Clearing” for clearing, grubbing, vegetation protection, topsoil stripping, and disconnecting utilities.
6. Section 32 92 00 “Turf & Grasses” for seeding and sodding.
7. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
8. Section 32 92 00 "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading in turf and grass areas, including preparing and placing planting soil for turf areas.
9. Section 33 46 00 "Subdrainage" for drainage of foundations, slabs-on-grade, walls and landscaped areas.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices for earth moving specified in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices."

B. Quantity allowances for earth moving are included in Section 01 21 00 "Allowances."

C. Rock Measurement: Volume of rock actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following. Unit prices for rock excavation include replacement with approved materials.
1. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
2. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
3. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
4. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
5. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
6. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site or on-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work. Exception: Work (excavation, drying, compaction, etc.) to attain required compaction of the top 2 feet of subgrade will not be considered additional excavation.
2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.

3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation shall be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Trench Rock (Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits): Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf with extra-long reach boom; measured according to SAE J-1179.
2. Mass Rock (Bulk Excavation): Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.

I. Rootzone: The combination of topsoil, subsurface soil, sand, lime and fertilizer lightly blended into a loose homogenous mixture. The sand being approximately 85% of the mixture.

J. Sand: United States Golf Association (USGA) Greens sand or sand meeting the USGA specifications per particle size analysis.

K. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

L. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

M. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

N. Topsoil: Topsoil shall be a natural, friable, topsoil characteristic of representative soils in the vicinity that produce heavy growths of crops, grass or other vegetation. It shall be free from tree roots, stones and other materials over 1 inch in diameter, that hinder grading, planting and maintenance operations, and free from noxious and other objectionable weed seeds and toxic substances.

O. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Geotextiles.
2. Warning tapes.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:

1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
2. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698.
3. Field Density Tests performed in place for each two foot layer of structural fill.
4. Topsoil Analysis from a reputable laboratory with reference to grass species specified and the report shall contain fertilization and soil amendment recommendations.
5. Detention Pond As-Built Surveys: For both conventional and underground detention facilities, showing, but not limited to, grades, undercuts, pipes, sizes, inverts, outlet structure location & details, headwalls, spillways and rip-rap fields. To be submitted as soon as ponds are completed. Not at the end of site prep or project completion. Submit four (4) hard copies and one cadd file in dwg format.
6. Final Site Topographic & As-Built Survey: Submit four (4) hard copies and one cadd file in dwg format.

C. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, state waters, wetlands, ponds and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Blasting: Comply with applicable requirements in NFPA 495, "Explosive Materials Code," and prepare a blasting plan reporting the following:

1. Types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.

2. Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.

B. Seismic Survey Agency: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, experienced in seismic surveys and blasting procedures to perform the following services:

1. Report types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.
2. Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.

C. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.

D. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract. Applies, but not limited to Local city or county jurisdictions and Georgia Department of Transportation.

C. Existing Site Conditions: The accuracy of the site information as shown in the original survey drawings including, but not limited to, topography, obstructions, trees, utilities and site improvements is not guaranteed. The Contractor must visit the site to verify the accuracy of the existing conditions as shown. The Contractor shall review plan dimensions, alignments and elevations to check for compatibility with existing site conditions and shall make all adjustments necessary to fit the proposed project including site improvements into the existing site conditions.

D. Existing Utilities: Where site utilities serve existing facilities, do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements.

E. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service "Call Before You Dig" for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.

F. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner’s written permission.

G. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active. For utilities remaining in place, provide adequate support and protection during earthwork operations.

H. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, specified in Section 31 10 19 or Section 31 10 23 are in place.

I. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.

J. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Erection of sheds or structures.
4. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
5. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

K. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: The Contract Documents do NOT intend for earthwork to balance on site. In the event of an imbalance: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

2. Unsatisfactory soils listed may be utilized upon written approval of the Geotechnical Engineering Consultant. Written approval should list any remedial measures necessary and quantity of Unsatisfactory Soil that is authorized for use.

D. Backfill and Fill: Satisfactory soil materials.

E. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

F. Base Course/Underslab Base: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

G. Engineered Stone Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

H. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

I. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

J. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

K. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate.

L. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

M. Base Drainage Aggregate for Artificial Turf Sports Fields:

1. Base Course: Caltrans permeable Class II crushed stone compacted to 95% standard proctor and graded to within +/- ½" of design grade.
2. Top Course: Washed 89 stone compacted to 95% standard proctor and graded to within +/- ¼" of design grade.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

A. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
2. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
4. Tear Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
7. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
8. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
2. Install a dewatering system as necessary to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect/Geotechnical Engineer. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to allowances and unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.
   1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
      a. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.
   2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
      a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
      b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
      c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
      d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
      e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
      f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
   1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
   2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
   3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
   1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
   2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
   1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
   1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trenches in Tree and Plant Protection Zones:
   1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
   2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.

3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Architect or Geotechnical Engineering Consultant determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction**,** repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect or Geotechnical Engineering Consultant, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.

E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect or Geotechnical Engineering Consultant .

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
2. Provide and maintain erosion control measures including, but not limited to, silt fence, temporary grassing and diversion ditches.

3.10 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
4. Removing concrete formwork.
5. Removing trash and debris.
6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete"

D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete"

E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

F. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

H. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.12 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
   1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
   2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
   3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
   4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
   5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
   1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
   2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight. Assist drying by dicing, harrowing or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to a satisfactory value as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer.
   3. Moisture control operations are considered part of the work required to achieve compaction under the base bid contract.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
   1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, walkways and pavements, scarify and recompact to a minimum of 95% of the maximum dry density. The top 24 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98% of the maximum dry density as determined by the Standard Proctor Test.
   2. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 90% (percent).
   3. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 90% (percent).
   4. Georgia Department of Transportation areas and other County or City jurisdictional areas including, but not limited to, state roads, county roads, driveways, curb cuts and work within the Right-of-way, refer to the "*Standard Specifications of Construction of Roads and Bridges*", latest edition.

3.15 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
   1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
   2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
   1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.16 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Section 33 46 00 "Subdrainage."

B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
   1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
   1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade. Follow compaction specification.

3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
1. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
2. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
3. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
4. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
5. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 100 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

D. Under Artificial Sports Turf Fields place subbase course on prepared subgrade and as follows:
1. Place perforated drainage pipe on subbase or as indicated on plans and details.
2. Place base course material over subbase.
3. Compact subbase and base courses at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
4. Shape subbase and base to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
5. When thickness of compacted subbase or base course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.
6. When thickness of compacted subbase or base course exceeds 6 inches, place material in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick when compacted.

3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
1. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
2. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
3. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
2. Determine that fill material and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
3. Determine, at the required frequency, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.20 PROTECTION

A. Protection of Persons: Barricade open excavations occurring as part of this work and post with warning signs.

B. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

C. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Geotechnical Engineer; reshape and recompact.

D. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Remove waste materials, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Soil and wood treatment with termiticide.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of termite control product.

1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Product Certificates: For termite control products, from manufacturer.

C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

D. Wood Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
3. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
4. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
5. Areas of application.

E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located**,** and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products, and who is accredited by manufacturer.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Formulate and apply termiticides and termiticide devices according to the EPA-Registered Label.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

C. Apply wood treatment after framing, sheathing, and exterior weather protection is completed but before electrical and mechanical systems are installed.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Wood Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied wood termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite damage is discovered during warranty period, repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation and treat replacement wood.

1. Warranty Period: 12 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Continuing Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' continuing service including monitoring, inspection, and re-treatment for occurrences of termite activity. Provide a standard continuing service agreement. State services, obligations, conditions, terms for agreement period, and terms for future renewal options.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL TREATMENT

A. Termiticide: Provide an EPA-Registered termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. BASF Corporation, Agricultural Products; Termidor.
   b. Bayer Environmental Science; Premise 75.
   c. FMC Corporation, Agricultural Products Group; Biflex TC, or Talstar.
   d. Syngenta; Demon TC, Probuild TC.
2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

2.2 WOOD TREATMENT

A. Borate: Provide an EPA-Registered borate termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution for spray application and a gel solution for pressure injection, formulated to prevent termite infestation in wood. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum diffusible borate concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Nisus Corp.; Bora-Care, Jecta, Tim-Bor.
   b. NovaGuard Technologies, Inc.; Armor-Guard, Shell-Guard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label requirements, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.

B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.

B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.

1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for products.

3.4 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.

1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Underground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
2. Foundations: Adjacent soil, including soil along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing. Avoid soil washout around footings.

3. Crawlspaces: Soil under and adjacent to foundations as previously indicated. Treat adjacent areas including around entrance platform, porches, and equipment bases. Apply overall treatment only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.
4. Masonry: Treat voids.
5. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.

B. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.

C. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

D. Post warning signs in areas of application.

E. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.5 APPLYING WOOD TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix wood treatment solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of borate, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, so that wood framing, sheathing, siding, and structural members subject to infestation receive treatment.

1. Framing and Sheathing: Apply termiticide solution by spray to bare wood for complete coverage.
2. Wood Members More Than 4 inches Thick: Inject termiticide gel solution under pressure into holes of size and spacing required by manufacturer for treatment.
3. Exterior Uncoated Wood Trim and Siding: Apply termiticide solution to bare wood siding. After 48 hours, apply a seal coat as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting".

END OF SECTION 31 31 16

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Soil and wood treatment with termiticide.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of termite control product.

1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Product Certificates: For termite control products, from manufacturer.

C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

D. Wood Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
3. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
4. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
5. Areas of application.

E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located**,** and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products, and who is accredited by manufacturer.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Formulate and apply termiticides and termiticide devices according to the EPA-Registered Label.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

C. Apply wood treatment after framing, sheathing, and exterior weather protection is completed but before electrical and mechanical systems are installed.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Wood Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied wood termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite damage is discovered during warranty period, repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation and treat replacement wood.

1. Warranty Period: 12 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Continuing Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' continuing service including monitoring, inspection, and re-treatment for occurrences of termite activity. Provide a standard continuing

service agreement. State services, obligations, conditions, terms for agreement period, and terms for future renewal options.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL TREATMENT

A. Termiticide: Provide an EPA-Registered termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. BASF Corporation, Agricultural Products; Termidor.
   b. Bayer Environmental Science; Premise 75.
   c. FMC Corporation, Agricultural Products Group; Biflex TC, or Talstar.
   d. Syngenta; Demon TC, Probuild TC.
2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

2.2 WOOD TREATMENT

A. Borate: Provide an EPA-Registered borate temiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution for spray application and a gel solution for pressure injection, formulated to prevent termite infestation in wood. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum diffusible borate concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
   a. Nisus Corp.; Bora-Care, Jecta, Tim-Bor.
   b. NovaGuard Technologies, Inc.; Armor-Guard, Shell-Guard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label requirements, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.

B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.

B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.

1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for products.

3.4 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.

1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Underground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
2. Foundations: Adjacent soil, including soil along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing. Avoid soil washout around footings.
3. Crawlspaces: Soil under and adjacent to foundations as previously indicated. Treat adjacent areas including around entrance platform, porches, and equipment bases. Apply overall treatment only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.
4. Masonry: Treat voids.
5. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.

B. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.

C. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

D. Post warning signs in areas of application.

E. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.5 APPLYING WOOD TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix wood treatment solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of borate, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, so that wood framing, sheathing, siding, and structural members subject to infestation receive treatment.

1. Framing and Sheathing: Apply termiticide solution by spray to bare wood for complete coverage.
2. Wood Members More Than 4 Inches Thick: Inject termiticide gel solution under pressure into holes of size and spacing required by manufacturer for treatment.
3. Exterior Uncoated Wood Trim and Siding: Apply termiticide solution to bare wood siding. After 48 hours, apply a seal coat as specified in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting".

END OF SECTION 31 31 16

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Cold milling of existing asphalt pavement.
2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
3. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
4. Hot-mix asphalt overlay.
5. Asphalt surface treatments.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 02 41 16 "Structure Demolition" and Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of existing asphalt pavement.
2. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
3. Section 32 13 73 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at pavement terminations.
4. Section 32 14 00 "Unit Paving" for bituminous setting bed for pavers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
2. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.

B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following product, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
1. Paving Fabric: 12 by 12 inches minimum.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.

B. Material Certificates: For each paving material. Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.

C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material, by a qualified testing agency.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Stand Specifications – Construction of Transportation Systems of the Georgia Department of Transportation for asphalt paving work.
1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
4. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.

B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692/D 692M, sound; angular crushed stone or crushed gravel.

C. Fine Aggregate: Section 801 of the GDOT Standard Specifications. Sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone or gravel, or combinations thereof as allowed by specification.
1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 10 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.

D. Mineral Filler: AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material, and as specified by GDOT.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320, PG 64-22.

B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381/D 3381M for viscosity-graded material.

C. Cutback Prime Coat: ASTM D 2027, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30 or MC-70 MC-250. Reference GDOT Spec. Section 412.

D. Tack Coat: As specified by GDOT Specification Section 413.

E. Fog Seal: ASTM D 977 or emulsified asphalt, or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

F. Water: Potable.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Recycled Materials for Hot-Mix Asphalt Mixes: Reclaimed asphalt pavement; reclaimed, unbound-aggregate base material; and recycled tires asphalt shingles or glass from sources and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations, equal to performance of required hot-mix asphalt paving produced from all new materials.

B. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA, and not classified as "restricted use" for locations and conditions of application. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.

C. Sand: AASHTO M 29, Grade No. 2 or No. 3.

D. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288 paving fabric; nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.

E. Joint Sealant: AASHTO M 324, Type II or III, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant. Reference GDOT.

2.4 MIXES

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and adhering to GDOT Specifications and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Base Course: GDOT - 19mm Superpave.
3. Surface Course: GDOT – 9.5mm Superpave, Type II.

B. Emulsified-Asphalt Slurry: ASTM D 3910, Type 2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PATCHING

A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.

1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

C. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

D. Placing Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

E. Placing Patch Material: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3.3 REPAIRS

A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
   1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.

B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
   1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
   2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
   3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.

B. Cutback Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd.. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
   1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
   2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
   1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
   2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.5 PLACING HOT-MIX ASPHALT

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
   1. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
   2. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
   3. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
   1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about 1 to 1-1/2 inches from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
   2. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.6 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
   1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
   2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
   3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
   4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
   5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
   6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.7 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
   1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.

B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.
2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

C. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Compact and form asphalt to produce the contour indicated and within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/8 inch of height indicated above pavement surface.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.

C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979.

1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
   a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.
   b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.

F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.10 WASTE HANDLING

A. General: Handle asphalt-paving waste according to approved waste management plan required in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Driveways.
2. Roadways.
3. Parking lots.
4. Curbs and gutters.
5. Walks.
6. Concrete Detectable Warning Pavers set in mortar setting beds.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
2. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in isolation (expansion) and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product, ingredient, or admixture requiring color selection.

C. Other Action Submittals:
1. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.

B. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
1. Cementitious materials.
2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
3. Admixtures.
4. Curing compounds.
5. Applied finish materials.
6. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
7. Joint fillers.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities".

B. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials or 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMS

A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.

B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

B. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.

C. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.

D. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
E. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.
F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.
G. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars; assembled with clips.
H. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn.
I. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
J. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, deformed.
K. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs. For installation of wheel stops.
L. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars.
M. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
N. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
O. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
P. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
Q. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS
A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray portland cement Type I. Supplement with the following:
a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or Class F.
b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4M, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
C. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
E. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material. No admixtures containing calcium chloride.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
3. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
4. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
6. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
7. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS
A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
C. Water: Potable.
D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; Caltexol CIMFILM.
b. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Confilm.
c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.

e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; VaporAid.
i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group; MONOFILM.
n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
r. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
s. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
d. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX.
e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
f. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
g. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M CURE R.
h. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR SERIES.
i. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
j. SpecChem, LLC; PaveCure Rez.
k. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
l. Tamms Industries, Inc., Euclid Chemical Company (The); TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
m. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 4819, UV resistant, zero water absorption, closed cell foam expansion/isolation joint filler in preformed strips. Foam filler strips shall be covered with joint sealant.

B. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.6 DETECTABLE WARNING MATERIALS

A. Detectable Warning Panels: Solid homogenous glass and carbon reinforced composite which is colorfast and UV stable. Truncated domes shall be fiberglass reinforced. Color shall be throughout panel (no paint or coating to achieve color stability). Panels shall be based on the ADA Solutions detectable warning surfaces for pedestrian crossings cast-in-place and replaceable panel. Panels shall extend the full width of ramp or landing. Panels shall not be cut, install panels in the standard 3’, 4’, and 5’ widths adding additional panels as required to achieve ramp or landing width.
1. Color: Federal Yellow
2. Warranty: 5 years
3. Replaceable: Yes, panels shall be replaceable
4. Cast-In-Place: Yes, panels shall be cast into concrete, unless otherwise specified.
5. Bolts: Stainless Steel
6. Concrete Anchors: Corrosion resistant inserts.

2.7 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N; colors complying with FS TT-P-115F.
1. Color: White and Yellow and Blue. As indicated on drawings or on Construction Details.

2.8 WHEEL STOPS

A. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 3500-psi minimum compressive strength, 4 inches high by 5 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.

1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch in diameter, 10-inch minimum length.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.

B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi: Driveways, Roadways and Aprons. 3500 psi: Curbs, Gutters and Wheel Stops. 3000 psi: Walks, Steps and other non-vehicular concrete pavements.
2. Slump Limit: 4 inches.

C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:

1. Air Content: 5 percent plus or minus 1.0 percent for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.10 percent by weight of cement.

E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.

F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 25 percent.
3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 33 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

G. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
3. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch according to requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.

C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

E. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.

1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.

B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.

1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
3. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints (expansion joints) of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet unless otherwise indicated.
2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint. After removal of cap, joint shall be filled with joint sealant.

D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas not to exceed a ratio of 1-1/2 to 1 and a maximum dimension of 12’-0”. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
   a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
2. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.

B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.

G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.

1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels and joint devices.

H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.

I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.

K. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.

L. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.

1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.

C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.

D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.

E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these as follows:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period. DO NOT USE curing compound on surfaces to be covered by unit pavers, tiles or other materials set in mortar.

3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:

1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.

4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.
11. Slope: min. 1/8 inch per foot to prevent puddling or ponding of water.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
B. Allow concrete paving to cure for a minimum of 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
   1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.

3.11 WHEEL STOPS

A. Securely attach wheel stops to paving with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels located at one-quarter to one-third points. Install dowels in drilled holes in the paving and bond dowels to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
   1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
      a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
   2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
   3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
   4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
   5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
   6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
      a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.

B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.

C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes painted markings applied to asphalt and concrete pavement.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for painting exterior concrete surfaces other than pavement.
2. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting interior concrete surfaces other than pavement.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

B. Shop Drawings: For pavement markings.

1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of “State of Georgia Standard Specifications Construction of Roads and Bridges” (current edition) of Georgia Department of Transportation for pavement-marking work.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials, 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Aexcel Inc.
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
4. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
5. Conco Paints.
6. Coronado Paint; Division of INSL-X Products Corporation.
7. Diamond Vogel Paints.
8. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
9. Ennis Traffic Safety Solutions, Inc.
10. Frazee Paint.
11. General Paint.
12. Kwal Paint.
13. M.A.B. Paints.
14. McCormick Paints.
15. Miller Paint.
16. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.
17. PPG Industries.
18. Pratt & Lambert.
19. Rodda Paint Co.
20. Rohm and Haas Company; a subsidiary of The Dow Chemical Company.
21. Scott Paint Company.
22. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
23. US Specialty Coatings (USSC)

2.2 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type S; colors complying with FS TT-P-115.

1. Color: White, Yellow or Blue, or as indicated on plans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that pavement is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of **15 mils**.

1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to pavement. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond the stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23

SECTION 323223 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes single- and multiple- depth segmental retaining walls with and without soil reinforcement.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for segmental retaining wall footings.
2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for decorative concrete masonry units with faces required to match segmental retaining wall units.
3. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavation for segmental retaining walls.
4. Section 334600 “Subdrainage” for drainage of segmental retaining walls.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design segmental retaining wall (SRW), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified & registered professional engineer on walls, licensed in the state the project is located, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1. The segmental retaining wall system shall have a positive mechanical connection between the block face and the geogrid reinforcement.
2. The Contractor or the Contractor’s Engineer shall obtain all soils testing required to adequately design the segmental wall system.

B. Structural Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and be according to NCMA's “Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."

1. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades indicated on plans and sloped and non-sloped backfill as indicated on plans.
2. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum **factors of safety** (FS) for base sliding, overturning and internal shear, **1.5**.
4. Site specific soil properties shall be used in the design of the segmental retaining wall system.

C. Seismic Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and factors and be according to NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."

1. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades and sloped backfill indicated.
2. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum **factors of safety** (FS) for base sliding, overturning and internal sliding, **1.1**.
4. Retained and reinforced soils are placed to a depth corresponding to the full height of the SRW facing units (i.e. wall design height, *H*).
5. Cap units shall be ignored in the stability analysis and assumed to be securely attached such that they cannot be dislodged during ground shaking.
6. Horizontal Peak Ground Acceleration (PGA): **0.168** (ASCE 7 11.8.1)
7. Sds: 0.321
8. Sd1: 0.174
9. Building Importance Category: II
10. Seismic Design Category (SDC): C

1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following preconstruction testing:

1. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for pullout resistance according to ASTM D 6706.
2. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for coefficient of friction according to ASTM D 5321.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For concrete units.

C. Samples for Verification: For each color and texture of concrete unit required. Submit sections of units not less than 3 inches square and not greater than 12 square inches.

1. Include one full-size unit for each type of concrete unit required.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For segmental retaining walls to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer (P.E.) responsible for their preparation. The qualified professional engineer shall be licensed in the state the project is located.

1. Compliance Review: Qualified professional engineer responsible for segmental retaining wall design shall review and approve submittals and source and field quality-control reports for compliance of materials and construction with design.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified & registered **professional engineer and testing agency**.

B. Product Certificates: For segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement, from manufacturer.

Retain first subparagraph below if Contractor selects retaining wall units.

1. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units according to ASTM D 6916.

2. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement according to ASTM D 6638.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement.

1. Include test data for freeze-thaw durability of segmental retaining wall units.

2. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units according to ASTM D 6916.

3. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement according to ASTM D 6638.

D. Preconstruction test reports.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 DESIGN SUBMITTAL

A. The Contractor shall submit a minimum of 6 sets of detailed design calculations and final retaining wall plans for approval at least two (2) weeks prior to the beginning of all construction. All calculations and drawings shall be prepared and sealed by a professional engineer licensed to do work in the state the project is located.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at **Project site**.

1. Review methods and procedures related to segmental retaining walls including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Structural load limitations.

b. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

c. Field quality-control procedures.

d. Utility Coordination

e. Site Safety.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store and handle concrete units and accessories to prevent deterioration or damage due to contaminants, breaking, chipping, or other causes.

B. Store geosynthetics in manufacturer's original packaging with labels intact. Store and handle geosynthetics to prevent deterioration or damage due to sunlight, chemicals, flames, temperatures above 160 deg F or below 32 deg F, and other conditions that might damage them. Verify identification of geosynthetics before using and examine them for defects as material is placed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALL UNITS

A. Concrete Units: ASTM C 1372, Normal Weight, except that maximum water absorption shall not exceed 7 percent by weight and units shall not differ in height more than plus or minus 1/16 inch from specified dimension.

See Editing Instruction No. 1 in the Evaluations for cautions about naming manufacturers. Retain one of first two subparagraphs and list of manufacturers below. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by a licensee of one of the following:
   a. Anchor Wall Systems, Inc.
   b. Keystone Retaining Wall Systems, Inc.; a Contech company.
   c. Rockwood Retaining Walls, Inc. Classic 8 & HD System
   d. Mesa Retaining Wall Systems, Tensar International Corp.
   e. Versa-Lok Retaining Wall Systems; a division of Kiltie Corporation.
   f. Earth Wall Products
2. Provide units that comply with requirements for freeze-thaw durability.
3. Provide units that interlock with courses above and below by means of **integral lugs or lips**, **pins**, or **clips**.

B. Color: **As selected by Architect or Owner from manufacturer's full color range**.

C. Shape and Texture: Provide units of basic shape and dimensions indicated with **machine-split textured** exposed faces.

D. Shape and Texture: Provide units matching basic shape, dimensions, and face texture indicated by referencing manufacturer's pattern designation.

E. Shape and Texture: Provide units of any basic shape and dimensions that will produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated without interfering with other elements of the Work and with machine-split textured, **flat exposed face with beveled vertical edges**.

F. Batter: Provide units that offset from course below to provide **1:8** batter.

G. Cap Units: Provide cap units of same shape as other units with smooth, as-cast top surfaces without holes or lugs.

H. Special Units: Provide corner units, end units, and other shapes as needed to produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated and to provide texture on exposed surfaces matching face.

2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Pins: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

B. Clips: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

C. Cap Adhesive: Product supplied or recommended by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for adhering cap units to units below. Rigid adhesives or mortar are not acceptable.

D. Leveling Base: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for base material and Section 334600 "Subdrainage" for drainage fill.

Lean concrete leveling course allows the base to be quickly and accurately leveled. Concrete should not be very strong or very thick so that differential settlement can produce many cracks with slight elevation differences rather than fewer cracks with larger elevation differences.

1. Leveling Course: Lean concrete with a compressive strength of not more than 500 psi.

E. Drainage Fill: Comply with requirements in Section 334600 "Subdrainage."

F. Reinforced-Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for satisfactory soils.

Retain paragraph above or first paragraph below to suit height of walls, availability of material, and office practice. Revise either as recommended by geotechnical engineer.

G. Reinforced-Soil Fill: ASTM D 2487; GW, GP, SW, SP, and SM soil classification groups or a combination of these groups; free of debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter; meeting the following gradation according to ASTM C 136: 20 to 100 percent passing No. 4 sieve, 0 to 60 percent passing No. 40 sieve, 0 to 35 percent passing No. 200 sieve, and with fine fraction having a plasticity index of less than 20.

H. Nonreinforced-Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for satisfactory soils.

I. Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent.

1. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 to 100 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
2. Minimum Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lb; ASTM D 4632.
3. Minimum Weight: 4 oz./sq. yd..

J. Subdrainage Pipe and Filter Fabric: Comply with requirements in Section 334600 "Subdrainage."

K. Soil Reinforcement: Product specifically manufactured for use as soil reinforcement and as follows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Colbond Inc.
   b. Huesker, Inc.
   c. Luckenhaus Technical Textiles, Inc.
   d. Mirafi Construction Products; Ten Cate Nicolon.
   e. Propex Fabrics Inc.; Civil Engineering Fabrics.
   f. Strata Systems, Inc.
   g. Synteen Technical Fabrics, Inc.
   h. Tenax Corporation; Subsidiary of Tenax Group.
   i. Tensar Earth Technologies, Inc.
   j. Versa-Lok Retaining Wall Systems; a division of Kiltie Corporation.
   k. Webtec, Inc.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Testing in this article confirms that soil-reinforcement quality does not vary so much among runs that design values, based on testing previous runs of product, are not valid for product used.

A. Direct manufacturer to test and inspect each roll of soil reinforcement at the factory for minimum average roll values for geosynthetic index property tests, including the following:

1. Weight.
2. Roll size.
3. Grab or single-rib strength.
4. Aperture opening.
5. Rib or yarn size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for excavation tolerances, condition of subgrades, and other conditions affecting performance of segmental retaining walls.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 RETAINING WALL INSTALLATION

A. General: Place units according to NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lay units in **running bond**.
2. Form corners and ends by using special units.

B. Leveling Base: Place and compact base material to thickness indicated and with not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

1. Leveling Course: At Contractor's option, unreinforced lean concrete may be substituted for upper 1 to 2 inches of base. Place unreinforced lean concrete over leveling base 1 to 2 inches thick. Compact and screed concrete to a smooth, level surface.

C. First Course: Place first course of segmental retaining wall units for full length of wall. Place units in firm contact with each other, properly aligned and level.

1. Tamp units into leveling base as necessary to bring tops of units into a level plane.

D. Subsequent Courses: Remove excess fill and debris from tops of units in course below. Place units in firm contact, properly aligned, and directly on course below.

1. For units with lugs designed to fit into holes in adjacent units, lay units so lugs are accurately aligned with holes, and bedding surfaces are firmly seated on beds of units below.
2. For units with lips at front of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact with lips of units below.
3. For units with lips at bottom rear of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact of lips with units below.
4. For units with pins, install pins and align units.
5. For units with clips, install clips and align units.

E. Cap Units: Place cap units and secure with waterproof cap adhesive.

3.3 FILL PLACEMENT

Consult geotechnical engineer or soil report for necessary revisions to this article.

A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide," and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill. Place fill as each course of units is laid.

C. Place, spread, and compact drainage fill and soil fill in uniform lifts for full width and length of embankment as wall is laid. Place and compact fills without disturbing alignment of units. Where both sides of wall are indicated to be filled, place fills on both sides at same time. Begin at wall and place and spread fills toward embankment.

1. Use only hand-operated compaction equipment within 48 inches of wall, or one-half of height above bottom of wall, whichever is greater.

Revise compaction requirements in subparagraphs below as required by soil report. Information is based on NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."

2. Compact reinforced-soil fill to not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
   a. In areas where only hand-operated compaction equipment is allowed, compact fills to not less than 90 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

b. In areas where fill height exceeds 15 feet compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than 15 feet below finished grade to not less than 98 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

c. In areas where fill height exceeds 30 feet compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than 30 feet below finished grade to not less than 100 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3. Compact nonreinforced-soil fill to comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

D. Place drainage geotextile against back of wall and place layer of drainage fill at least **12 inches** wide behind drainage geotextile to within 12 inches of finished grade. Place another layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.

Delete paragraph above and retain first paragraph below if drainage geotextile is not needed to keep fines in drainage fill from washing out between segmental retaining units.

E. Place a layer of drainage fill at least **12 inches** wide behind wall to within 12 inches of finished grade. Place a layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.

F. Wrap subdrainage pipe with filter fabric and place in drainage fill as indicated**,** sloped not less than 0.5 percent to drain.

G. Place impervious fill over top edge of drainage fill layer.

H. Slope grade at top of wall away from wall unless otherwise indicated. Slope grade at base of wall away from wall. Provide uniform slopes that will prevent ponding.

Retain paragraph below if using soil reinforcement.

I. Place soil reinforcement in horizontal joints of retaining wall where indicated and according to soil-reinforcement manufacturer's written instructions. Embed reinforcement a minimum of 8 inches into retaining wall and stretch tight over compacted backfill. Anchor soil reinforcement before placing fill.

1. Place additional soil reinforcement at corners and curved walls to provide continuous reinforcement.
2. Place geosynthetics with seams, if any, oriented perpendicular to segmental retaining walls.
3. Do not dump fill material directly from trucks onto geosynthetics.
4. Place at least 6 inches of fill over reinforcement before compacting with tracked vehicles or 4 inches before compacting with rubber-tired vehicles.
5. Do not turn vehicles on fill until first layer of fill is compacted, and second layer is placed over each soil-reinforcement layer.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

Delete this article if segmental retaining walls are not close to buildings, roads, etc. Revise tolerances to suit Project. Remember that because of roughness of unit faces, most tolerances cannot be measured precisely.

A. Variation from Level: For bed-joint lines along walls, do not exceed 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet, 3 inches maximum.

B. Variation from Indicated Batter: For slope of wall face, do not vary from indicated slope by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.

C. Variation from Indicated Wall Line: For walls indicated as straight, do not vary from straight line by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for field quality control.

1. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least 1 field in-place compaction test for each **24 inches** of fill depth and each **50 feet** or less of segmental retaining wall length.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Remove and replace segmental retaining wall construction of the following descriptions:

1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged units. Units may be repaired if Architect approves methods and results.
2. Segmental retaining walls that do not match approved Samples.
3. Segmental retaining walls that do not comply with other requirements indicated.

B. Replace units so segmental retaining wall matches approved Samples and mockups, complies with other requirements, and shows no evidence of replacement.

END OF SECTION 323223
01-697-027

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Seeding.
   2. Hydroseeding.
   3. Sodding.
   4. Related Erosion-control material(s).

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for topsoil stripping and stockpiling.
   2. Section 31 10 23 “Erosion, Sedimentation & Pollution Control”. for sites under 1 acre.
   3. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling and backfilling, and rough grading.
   4. Section 32 84 00 "Planting Irrigation " for turf irrigation.
   5. Section 33 46 00 "Subdrainage" for subsurface drainage.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.

B. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

C. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

D. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

E. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

F. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

G. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

H. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

I. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil, but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to this Project.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
   1. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod. Include identification of source and name and telephone number of supplier.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Grassing Contractor/Landscape Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, from manufacturer.

D. Material Test Reports: For standardized ASTM D 5268 topsoil, existing native surface topsoil, existing in-place surface soil and imported or manufactured topsoil.

E. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required initial maintenance periods.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.
   1. Experience: Three years' experience in turf installation in addition to requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
   2. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
   3. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.

1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.
2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling, with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Architect. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.
3. Report suitability of tested soil for turf growth.
   a. Based on the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.

C. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Planting Restrictions: Coordinate planting dates with Seeding Table located on the drawings. Depending on the season, Temporary and Permanent Seeding may be required.

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf **(100% coverage @ 70% density)** is established but for not less than the following periods:

1. Seeded Turf: 180 days from date of Substantial Completion of the entire project.
   a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.
2. Sodded Turf: 60 days from date of Substantial Completion of the entire project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

B. Seed Species: Seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:

1. Refer to Seeding Table located in the drawings. Table contains information on seed types, rates per acre, planting dates, fertilizer and amendments.

2.2 TURFGRASS SOD

A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted. Harvested in 30 inch wide rolls.

B. Turfgrass Species:

1. Lawns:
   a. Species: Tifway Bermuda grass (419)
   b. Size: Harvested in 30 inch wide rolls.

2.3 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 sieve.

2.4 FERTILIZERS

A. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: Refer to chart on drawings for Fertilizer requirements in first and second year growing seasons plus maintenance year cycles.

2.5 PLANTING SOILS

A. Planting Soil: Existing, in-place surface soil. Verify suitability of existing surface soil to produce viable planting soil. Remove stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix surface soil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers in the following quantities to produce planting soil:

1. Ratio of Loose Compost to Surface Soil by Volume: 1:4.
2. Weight of Lime: See Chart on drawings.
3. Weight of Commercial Fertilizer: See Chart on drawings.

2.6 MULCHES

A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.

B. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 2 to 5 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

C. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

D. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.7 PESTICIDES & HERBICIDES

A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.8 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior blanket enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh, on both sides. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 8 inches long.

B. Polyacrylamide Erosion Control Emulsion – Specifically suited to soil type on project and reapplied on any area disturbed after initial application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

A. In general, limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted. Provide additional prep work as needed when transitioning from disturbed construction area into existing grassed/undisturbed areas to provide smooth transition.

B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
   a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
   b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
2. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
   a. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.

C. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface-soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:

1. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
2. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches. Apply soil amendments and fertilizers according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 6 inches of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.
3. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.
4. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, off Owner's property.

D. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

F. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.

B. For erosion-control mats, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness of erosion-control mats. Install erosion-control mat and fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.

C. Fill cells of erosion-control mat with planting soil and compact before planting.

D. For erosion-control blanket or mesh, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

3.5 SEEDING

A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.

1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
2. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.

B. Sow seed at a total rate indicated on the Seeding Table on the drawings.

C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

D. Protect seeded areas with slopes of, or exceeding 1:4, or as designated on the drawings with erosion-control blankets installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying compost mulch or planting soil within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch, and roll surface smooth.

3.6 HYDROSEEDING

A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

1. Mix slurry with nonasphaltic or fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.

2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.

3.7 SODDING

A. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks/joints between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.

1. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs or steel staples spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.

C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

3.8 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare, lumpy or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth and mowable turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
3. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.

B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.

1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:

1. Mow bermudagrass to a height of 1/2 to 1 inch.
2. Mow zoysiagrass to a height of 1 to 2 inches.
3. Mow annual ryegrass to a height of 1-1/2 to 2 inches.
4. Mow turf-type tall fescue to a height of 2 to 3 inches.

D. Turf Postfertilization: Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.

1. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.

3.9 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage of **100% of the area with a density of 70% or greater** as defined by the Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia.
2. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities, with coverage of 100% of the area with a density of 70% or greater as defined by the Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory. The “Notice of Termination” cannot be filed until grassing meets the minimal coverage requirements. Projects under one acre of disturbed area must meet the same criteria before Final Payment Request is approved.

3.10 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

C. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 32 92 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Nonpressure transition couplings.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Drains.
5. Encasement for piping.
6. Manholes.
7. Catch basins.
8. Stormwater inlets.
9. Stormwater detention structures.
10. Pipe outlets.
11. Stormwater disposal systems.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for as-built survey(s).

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, and covers.
2. Catch basins, stormwater inlets and dry wells. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.
3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

D. Handle catch basins and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Site Information: Survey site and verify existing utility locations.

B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed.

C. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering comparable products may be used.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON, CULVERT PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe: ASTM A 716, for push-on joints.

B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.

C. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated-Steel Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 760/A 760M, Type II with fittings of similar form and construction as pipe.
1. Gauge: Up to and including 48 inch diameter: 16 gauge; larger than 48 inch diameter: 14 gauge.
2. Special-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel with O-ring seals.
3. Coating: Aluminum.

2.4 ALUMINUM PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated Aluminum Pipe and Fittings: ASTM B 745/B 745M, Type I with fittings of similar form and construction as pipe.

1. Special-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel with O-ring seals.

2.5 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 60 : AASHTO M 294M, Smooth Interior, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.

1. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:

1. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints or with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
3. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC socket-type fittings.
4. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.7 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76 .

1. Bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443 , rubber gaskets
2. Class III, Wall B.

2.8 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:

1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

D. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

E. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

2.9 CLEANOUTS

A. Plastic Cleanouts

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

2.10 DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Area Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: ASME A112.6.3 gray-iron round body with anchor flange and round secured grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
3. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.

B. Cast-Iron Trench Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
2. Description: ASME A112.6.3, 6-inch- wide top surface, rectangular body with anchor flange or other anchoring device, and rectangular secured grate. Include units of total length indicated and quantity of bottom outlets with inside calk or spigot connections, of sizes indicated.
3. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.

C. Steel Trench Drains:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trench Drain System by ACO or comparable product.

2. Description: Factory fabricated from ASTM A 242/A 242M, welded steel plate, to form rectangular body with uniform bottom downward slope of 2 percent toward outlet, anchor flange, and grate. Include units of total length indicated, bottom outlet of size indicated, outlet strainer, acid-resistant enamel coating on inside and outside surfaces, and grate with openings of total free area at least two times cross-sectional area of outlet.
3. Plate Thicknesses: 1/8 inch and 1/4 inch.
4. Overall Widths: 7-1/2 inches and 12-1/3 inches.
   a. Grate Openings: 3/8-by-3-inch slots.

2.11 MANHOLES

A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:
1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Diameter: 48 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section as required to prevent flotation.
4. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated, and top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 , bitumen or butyl rubber.
8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
9. Steps: Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 48 inches deep.
10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

B. Manhole Frames and Covers:
1. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch- minimum width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
2. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron unless otherwise indicated.

2.12 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
   a. Invert Slope: 1 percent through manhole.
2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
   a. Slope: 4 percent.

D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

2.13 CATCH BASINS

A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins:
1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
3. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, 48-inch diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.

4. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
5. Gaskets: ASTM C 443, rubber.
6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
7. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch- diameter frame and grate.
8. Steps: Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 48 inches.
9. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.14 STORMWATER INLETS

A. Curb Inlets: Made with vertical curb opening, of materials and dimensions indicated.
B. Grate Inlets: Made with horizontal gutter opening, of materials and dimensions indicated. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
C. Grate Inlets / Combination Inlets: Made with vertical curb and horizontal gutter openings, of materials and dimensions according to GDOT 1019A Type E. Non-mountable hood. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
D. Weir Type Inlets: Dimensions, openings and materials as indicated. Include heavy duty ring and cover. Construct concrete collar (24” minimum width) around entire structure at weir invert (flow line) elevation.
E. Frames and Grates: Heavy duty. Dimensions, opening pattern, free area approximately percent unless otherwise indicated, and other attributes indicated. ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading.

2.15 STORMWATER DETENTION STRUCTURES

A. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Stormwater Detention Structures: Constructed of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete as required to prevent flotation.
2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch- diameter frame and cover.
3. Steps: Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of structure to finished grade is less than 48 inches.

B. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."

2.16 PIPE OUTLETS

A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.
B. Energy Dissapating Head Walls: Reinforced concrete with apron, tapered sides and dissapators as indicated.
C. Flared End Sections: GDOT specification.
D. Safety Slope End Section: GDOT specification.
E. Stilling Basins: Broken, irregularly sized and shaped, graded stone as indicated and according to the *“Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control in Georgia”*. Latest Edition.
F. Riprap Stone: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded.
1. Stone Dumped Riprap, Type 1. Average weight 75 lbs. Minimum 35% of the mass shall be comprised of pieces weighing 125 lbs. or more.
G. Stone Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.
H. Construction Entrances: NSA No.2, 1.5” to 3.5”.

2.17 STORMWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEMS

A. Pipe Systems: Perforated manifold, header, and lateral piping complying with AASHTO M 252M for NPS 10 and smaller, AASHTO M 294M for NPS 12 to NPS 60. Include proprietary fittings, couplings, seals, and filter fabric.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
a. Advanced Drainage Systems.

b. Hancor Inc.
2. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch washed, crushed stone or gravel.
3. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in one or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 4 oz./sq. yd.
4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. Extend storm drainage piping and connect to building's storm drains, of sizes and locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.

F. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.

G. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install ductile-iron piping and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
4. Install corrugated steel piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
5. Install corrugated aluminum piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
6. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
7. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
8. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
2. Join ductile-iron piping and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
3. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
4. Join corrugated aluminum sewer piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
5. Join corrugated PE piping according to ASTM D 3212 for push-on joints.
6. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasketed joints.
7. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
8. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
1. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth, paved and unpaved foot-traffic areas.
2. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
3. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.

B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.

C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.5 DRAIN INSTALLATION

A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
1. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification drains in earth, unpaved and paved foot-traffic areas.
2. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in vehicle-traffic service areas.
3. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in roads.

B. Embed drains in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
C. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.
D. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.
E. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
F. Embed trench sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.6 MANHOLE INSTALLATION
A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
C. Where specific manhole construction is not indicated, follow manhole manufacturer's written instructions.
D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION
A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.8 STORMWATER INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION
A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT
A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

3.10 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION
A. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
B. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.
C. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
D. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.
E. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.
F. Embed channel sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.11 STORMWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEM INSTALLATION
A. Chamber Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install system and backfill according to chamber manufacturer's written instructions. Include storage and leaching chambers, filtering material, and filter mat.
B. Piping Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install piping system, filter fabric, and backfill, according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.12 CONNECTIONS
A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
C. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Section 22 13 23 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."
D. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
    a. Unshielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
    b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

3.13 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
    1. Close open ends of piping with at least **8-inch** thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
    2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.

B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
    1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.

C. Backfill to grade according to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
    1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
    2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
    1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
    2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
        a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
        b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
        c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
        d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
        e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
    3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
    4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
    1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
    2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
    4. Submit separate report for each test.
    5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
        a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
        b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
        c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.16 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
2. Drainage conduits.
3. Drainage panels.
4. Felts.
5. Geotextile filter fabrics.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
1. Drainage conduits, including rated capacities.
2. Drainage panels, including rated capacities.
3. Geotextile filter fabrics.
4. Stone Analysis

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:
1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
2. NPS 8 and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
3. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.

B. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

2.2 DRAINAGE CONDUITS

A. Flat Panel Drainage Conduits (horizontal strip drain): Prefabricated geocomposite with cuspated, molded-plastic drainage core wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. American Wick Drain.
b. Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc. - *Advanedge*
c. JDR Enterprises, Inc.
d. TenCate Geosynthetics.
2. Nominal Size: 12 inches high by approximately 1 inch thick.
a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: **30 gpm** at hydraulic gradient of **1.0** when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
3. Filter Fabric: PP geotextile.
4. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.

B. Multi-Pipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with interconnected, corrugated, perforated-pipe core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 1248 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
a. Varicore Technologies, Inc.
3. Nominal Size: 12 inches high by approximately 1-1/4 inches thick.
a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: **30 gpm** at hydraulic gradient of **1.0** when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
4. Nominal Size: 18 inches high by approximately 1-1/4 inches thick.
a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: **45 gpm** at hydraulic gradient of **1.0** when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
5. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile.
6. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.
7. Couplings: HDPE.

C. Single-Pipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with perforated corrugated core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 3350 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
a. Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.
b. Hancor, Inc.
3. Nominal Size: 4 inches diam and 6 inches diam.

4. Filter Fabric: PP geotextile.
5. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.
6. Couplings: Corrugated HDPE band.

2.3 DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Prefabricated geocomposite, **36 to 60 inches** wide with drainage core faced with geotextile filter fabric.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. American Wick Drain.
b. Cosella-Dorken Products, Inc.
c. Eljen Corporation.
d. Greenstreak.
e. JDR Enterprises, Inc.
f. Midwest Diversified Technologies Incorporated.
g. TenCate Geosynthetics.
h. Trace-LINQ Inc.
2. Drainage Core: Three-dimensional, nonbiodegradable, molded PP.
a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **18,000 lbf/sq. ft.** when tested according to ASTM D 1621.
b. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: **7 gpm/ft.** of unit width at hydraulic gradient of [**1.0**] and compressive stress of **25 psig** when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
3. Filter Fabric: **Nonwoven** needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with the following properties determined according to AASHTO M 288:
a. Survivability: **Class 2**
b. Apparent Opening Size: **No. 60** sieve, maximum.
c. Permittivity: **0.2** per second, minimum.
4. Filter Fabric: **Woven** geotextile fabric, manufactured for subsurface drainage, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with the following properties determined according to AASHTO M 288:
a. Survivability: **Class 2**.
b. Apparent Opening Size: **No. 60** sieve, maximum.
c. Permittivity: **0.2** per second, minimum.
5. Film Backing: Polymeric film bonded to drainage core surface. (for protection of soft waterproofing membranes)

2.4 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Soil materials are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

2.5 WATERPROOFING FELTS

A. Material: Comply with ASTM D 226, Type I, asphalt or ASTM D 227, coal-tar saturated organic felt.

2.6 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS – (Not for Synthetic Turf Athletic Fields Usage)

A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2
2. Styles: Flat and sock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.
B. If subdrainage is required for landscaping, locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services.
C. Verify that drainage panels installed as part of foundation wall waterproofing is properly positioned to drain into subdrainage system.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.3 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

A. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide.
B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.

D. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
E. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation subdrainage.
F. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
G. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.
H. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
I. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
J. Install drainage panels on foundation walls as follows:
1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing. Install as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article.
3. Separate 4 inches of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
4. Attach panels to wall beginning at subdrainage pipe. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall.
K. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION
A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
1. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping level and with a minimum cover of **36 inches** unless otherwise indicated.
2. Underslab Subdrainage: Install piping level.
3. Plaza Deck Subdrainage: Install piping level.
4. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping level and with a minimum cover of **36 inches** unless otherwise indicated.
5. Landscaping Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of **0.5** percent and with a minimum cover of **36 inches** unless otherwise indicated.
6. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
7. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.
C. Install thermoplastic piping according to ASTM D 2321.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION
A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
B. Join perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose bell-and-spigot, push-on joints.
C. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

3.6 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION
A. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 33 41 00 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
B. Install horizontal backwater valves in header piping downstream from perforated subdrainage piping.
C. Backwater valves shall be accessible for maintenance.
D. Install horizontal backwater valves in piping in manholes or pits where indicated.

3.7 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION
A. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 33 41 00 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
B. Cleanouts for Foundation, Retaining-Wall and Landscaping Subdrainage:
1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
2. In vehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, **18 by 18 by 12 inches** deep. Set top of cleanout flush with grade.
3. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 PVC pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, **12 by 12 by 4 inches** deep. Set top of flush type cleanout plug **1 inch** above grade.
4. Comply with requirements for concrete specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
C. Cleanouts for Underslab Subdrainage:

1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from piping to top of slab. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
2. Use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout flush with top of slab.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 33 41 00 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to site's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.

C. Where required, connect low elevations of foundation and underslab subdrainage to stormwater sump pumps. Comply with requirements for sump pumps specified in Section 22 14 29 "Sump Pumps."

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping. Comply with requirements for underground warning tapes specified in specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

1. Install PE warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Install detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.

B. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 33 46 00

UNIVERSAL
ENGINEERING SCIENCES
Consultants In: Geotechnical Engineering • Environmental Sciences
Geophysical Services • Construction Materials Testing • Threshold Inspection
Building Inspection • Plan Review • Building Code Administration

LOCATIONS:
- Atlanta
- Daytona Beach
- Fort Myers
- Fort Pierce
- Gainesville
- Jacksonville
- Kissimmee
- Leesburg
- Miami
- Ocala
- Orlando (Headquarters)
- Palm Coast
- Panama City
- Pensacola
- Rockledge
- Sarasota
- Tampa
- West Palm Beach

February 12, 2019

Union County Schools
124 Hughes Street
Blairsville, GA 30512

Attention: Mr. Chris Crow

Reference: **Geotechnical Exploration**
Union County Field House
165 Elementary Way
Blairsville, Georgia
UES Project No. 1630.1900002.0000
UES Report No. 1646655

Dear Mr. Crow:

Universal Engineering Sciences, Inc. (Universal) has completed a geotechnical exploration at the above referenced site in Blairsville, Georgia. The scope of our exploration was planned in conjunction with and authorized by you. This exploration was performed in accordance with generally accepted soil and foundation engineering practices. No other warranty, express or implied, is made.

The following report presents the results of our field exploration with a geotechnical engineering interpretation of those results with respect to the project characteristics as provided to us. We have included soil and groundwater conditions at our boring locations and geotechnical recommendations for site preparation and foundation design.

We appreciate the opportunity to have worked with you on this project and look forward to a continued association. Please do not hesitate to contact us if you should have any questions, or if we may further assist you as your plans proceed.

Respectfully Submitted,
**UNIVERSAL ENGINEERING SCIENCES, INC.**

Scott Thomson, P.E.
Principal Engineer

3040 Business Park Drive, Suite F • Norcross, GA 30071 • (770) 242-6438 • Fax (770) 242-6980
www.UniversalEngineering.com

Universal
ENGINEERING SCIENCES

# GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION

UNION COUNTY FIELD HOUSE
165 ELEMENTARY WAY
BLAIRSVILLE, GEORGIA
UES PROJECT NO. 1630.1900002.0000
UES REPORT NO. 1646655

**PREPARED FOR:**

**Union County Schools**
124 Hughes Street
Blairsville, Georgia 30512

**PREPARED BY:**

Universal Engineering Sciences
3040 Business Park Drive, Suite F
Norcross, Georgia 30071
(770) 242-6438

**February 12, 2019**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDIX

- Site Location Map
- Boring Location plan
- Boring Logs (4)
- Key to Boring Logs Sheet
- GBC Document

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

We have prepared this executive summary solely to provide a general overview of the geotechnical considerations which may affect the development of the project site. Do not rely on this executive summary for any purpose except that for which it was prepared. Rely on the full report for information about findings, recommendations, and other concerns.

*Based on the completed subsurface exploration, UES did not find adverse geotechnical considerations that would affect the design or construction of the proposed development on shallow foundations. In general, the site is developable. Geotechnical considerations that will impact the planned development and may add some additional costs to the land development include the following:*

- Previously placed fill soils were encountered at Borings B-01, B-02 and B-03. The previously placed fill was limited to the upper 5 feet. The extent and quality of the fill soils may not become apparent until construction. Currently, based on the borings these soils can remain in place depending on the finding during construction. However, we recommend that an allowance be made for potential remediation of these fill soils. Remediation may include densification in place, undercutting of footings and replacement with #57 stone, or stabilization with rock (GAB) or geotextile fabrics for the slabs should be anticipated.

- Soils generally found in this geologic zone are moisture sensitive. Dewatering measures and positive drainage will be necessary in this area during grading operations. Given the previously placed fill, any wet or soft soils encountered after a rain event or otherwise may require some undercutting or drying before use as structural fill. These soils may also need to be wasted if drying time is not available.

- Auger Refusal and Partially Weathered Rock were not encountered in borings across the site.

- Provided our suggested site preparation procedures are followed, we recommend designing foundations with a maximum allowable soil bearing pressure of 2,000 psf

# 1.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

We understand that the project consists of a newly constructed Field House on the campus of the Union County Elementary School. Detailed building structural loads have not been provided to us, therefore we have assumed maximum wall and column loads will not exceed 4 kips per linear foot (k/ft) and 150 kips, respectively. Detailed grading information has not been provided at this time, therefore we assume grade changes in the general area, will not exceed two to five feet. The geotechnical exploration was planned and executed according to UES proposal No. 1630.0119.0003 dated January 11, 2019.

Should any of the above information or assumptions made by UES be inconsistent with the planned development and construction, we request that you contact us immediately to allow us the opportunity to review the new information in conjunction with our report and revise or modify our engineering recommendations accordingly, as needed.

**UES must review the final site and grading plans and structural design loads to validate all recommendations rendered herein. Without such a review, our recommendations may not be applicable, resulting in potentially unacceptable performance of site improvements for which UES will not be responsible or liable. Depending on the finalized details of the development, alterations to the recommendations provided herein and/or additional field work may be warranted.**

**No site or project facilities/improvements, other than those described herein, should be designed using the soil information presented in this report. Moreover, UES will not be responsible for the performance of any site improvement so designed and constructed.**

# 2.0 SITE DESCRIPTION

## 2.1 GENERAL

The site is located on the Union County Elementary School campus immediately south of the existing stadium. At the time of drilling, the site consisted of a grass area and existing slab which had previously been part of an existing structure that has been demolished. An existing fence line bisected the areas around borings B-03 and B-04 necessitating these boring being moved to the east and south of the fence line, respectively.

## 2.2 GEOLOGY

The project site is located in the Blue Ridge and Piedmont Physiographic Province of Georgia. The Piedmont is a relatively broad strip extending from central Alabama across Georgia and the Carolinas into Virginia. Rocks of this province occur in belts that are some of the oldest formations in the United States. The rock types are primarily metamorphic gneiss and schist with some granite intrusions.

The major portion of the bedrock in this province is covered with a varying thickness of residual soil that has been derived by chemical decomposition and physical weathering of the underlying parent rock. Residual soils developed during the weathering of this bedrock consist predominately of micaceous sandy silts and silty sands, which grade to clayey silts and clays with nearness to the ground surface. The thickness of the residual soils can vary from only a few feet to in excess of 100 feet.

The boundary between the residual soil and the underlying bedrock is not sharply defined. Generally, a transition zone consisting of very hard soil to soft rock, appropriately classified as "partially weathered rock", is found. For engineering purposes, “partially weathered rock” is defined as any residual soils which exhibit blow counts greater than 100 blows per foot. Within the transition zone, large boulders or lenses of relatively "fresh" rock that are generally much harder than the surrounding material often exist. The irregular bedrock surface is essentially a consequence of differential weathering of the various minerals and joint patterns of the rock mass.

## 3.0 PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF SERVICES

### 3.1 PURPOSE

The purposes of this exploration were:

- to explore and evaluate the subsurface conditions at the site with special attention to potential problems that may impact the proposed development, and
- to provide geotechnical engineering recommendations for site preparation and foundation.

### 3.2 SCOPE OF SERVICE

This report presents an evaluation of site conditions on the basis of geotechnical procedures for site characterization. The recovered samples were not examined, either visually or analytically, for chemical composition or environmental hazards. We would be glad to provide you with a proposal for these services at your request.

The services conducted by Universal during our geotechnical exploration are as follows:

- Drill a total of four (4) Standard Penetration Test (SPT) borings to a depth of 15 feet below the existing ground surface (bgs).
- Secure samples of representative soils encountered in the soil borings for review, laboratory testing/analysis and classification by a Geotechnical Engineer.
- Measure the existing site groundwater levels and provide an estimate of the seasonal high groundwater level at the boring locations.
- Assess the existing soil conditions with respect to the proposed construction.
- Prepare a report which documents the results of our exploration and analysis with geotechnical engineering recommendations.

### 3.3 LIMITATIONS

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of ***Union County Schools and Southern A&E*** and their affiliates, successors, and assigns. This report should aid the architect/engineer in the design of the proposed industrial structure. The scope is limited to the specific project and locations described herein. Our description of the project's design parameters represents our understanding of the significant aspects relevant to soil and foundation characteristics. In the event that any changes in the design or location of the structures as outlined in this report are planned, we should be informed so the changes can be reviewed and the conclusions of this report modified, if required, and approved in writing by UES. UES cannot be held responsible for problems arising from changes about which we are not informed.

The recommendations submitted in this report are based upon the data obtained from the soil borings performed at the locations indicated on the Boring Location Plan and from other information as referenced. This report does not reflect any variations which may occur between the boring locations. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident until the course of construction. If variations become evident, it will then be necessary for a re-evaluation of the recommendations of this report after performing on-site observations and/or testing during the construction period and noting the characteristics of the variations.

All users of this report are cautioned that there was no requirement for UES to attempt to locate any man-made buried objects or identify any other potentially hazardous conditions that may exist at the site during the course of this exploration. Therefore, no attempt was made by UES to locate or identify such concerns. UES cannot be responsible for any buried man-made objects or subsurface hazards which may be subsequently encountered during construction that are not discussed within the text of this report. We can provide this service if requested.

Borings for a typical geotechnical report are widely spaced and generally not sufficient for reliably detecting the presence of isolated, anomalous surface or subsurface conditions, or reliably estimating unsuitable or suitable material quantities. Accordingly, UES does not recommend relying on our boring information to negate presence of anomalous materials or for estimation of material quantities unless our contracted services ***specifically*** include sufficient exploration for such purpose(s) and within the report we so state that the level of exploration provided should be sufficient to detect such anomalous conditions or estimate such quantities. Therefore, UES will not be responsible for any extrapolation or use of our data by others beyond the purpose(s) for which it is applicable or intended.

For a further discussion of the scope and limitations of a typical geotechnical report please review the document attached within the Appendix, "*Important Information About This Geotechnical Engineering Report*" prepared by GBC.

## 4.0 FIELD EXPLORATION

SPT borings were performed in general accordance with the procedures of ASTM D 1586 (Standard Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils). The SPT drilling

technique involves driving a standard split-barrel sampler into the soil by a 140-pound hammer, free falling 30 inches. The number of blows required to drive the sampler 1 foot, after an initial seating of 6 inches, is designated the standard penetration resistance, or N-value, an index to soil strength and consistency. All borings were advanced using hollow stem auger drilling techniques. SPT sampling was performed on 2.5 feet intervals to a depth of 10 feet, and on 5 feet intervals thereafter.

The SPT soil borings were performed with a truck mounted drilling rig. Horizontal and vertical survey control was not provided for the test locations prior to our field exploration program. Universal located the test borings by using the provided site plan, measuring from existing on-site landmarks shown on an aerial photograph. The indicated test locations should be considered approximate and are shown in the Appendix. If more exact locations are necessary, we recommend that a professional surveyor be engaged to field locate our boring locations.

## 5.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

### 5.1 GENERALIZED SOIL PROFILE

The results of our field exploration and laboratory analysis, together with pertinent information obtained from the SPT borings, such as soil profiles, penetration resistance and groundwater levels are shown on the boring logs included in Appendix B. The Key to Boring Logs, Soil Classification Chart is also included in Appendix B. The soil profiles were prepared from field logs after the recovered soil samples were examined by a Geotechnical Engineer. The stratification lines shown on the boring logs represent the approximate boundaries between soil types, and may not depict exact subsurface soil conditions. The actual soil boundaries may be more transitional than depicted. For detailed soil profiles, please refer to the attached boring logs.

Surface Materials: Surface materials generally consisted of grass and topsoil and concrete. Concrete at borings B-01 and B-02 was 4.5 and 5 inches thick, respectively. Topsoil and grass at borings B-03 and B-04 was about one (1) inches.

Previously Placed Fill Soils: Fill soils are any soils that have been transported by man. Fill soils were encountered in borings B-01, B-02, and B-03 at depths ranging from directly below the surface materials to 5 feet bgs. These soils were classified as soft to firm sandy silts and loose to medium dense silty sand with N - Values of between 4 and 12 blows per foot (bpf).

Residual Soils: Beneath the surficial materials and fill soils, soils of the *Blue Ridge and Piedmont Physiographic Province of Georgia* were encountered extending to a depth of up to 15 feet below the ground surface. These soils were classified as stiff to firm sandy silts to loose to medium dense silty sands. The N -Values of these soils ranged from 6 to 17 bpf.

Auger Refusal: Auger refusal materials were not encountered during this exploration.

### 6.2 GROUNDWATER

Groundwater was not encountered in any of the borings at the time of drilling. Fluctuations in groundwater levels should be anticipated throughout the year, primarily due to seasonal variations in rainfall, surface runoff, and other factors that may vary from the time the borings were conducted.

## 6.0 LABORATORY TESTING

The soil samples recovered from the field exploration program were placed in sealed plastic bags and returned to our soils laboratory, where a member of our geotechnical staff visually classified the samples in general accordance with ASTM D 2488 (Unified Soil Classification System). Laboratory soil tests are performed to aid in the classification of the soils, and to help in the evaluation of pertinent geotechnical engineering characteristics of the soils. Representative soil samples were selected for percent fines determination, and moisture content.

## 7.0 FOUNDATION DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

The following recommendations are made based upon a review of our understanding of the proposed construction, and experience with similar projects and subsurface conditions. The applicability of geotechnical recommendations is very dependent upon project characteristics such as improvement locations, and grade alterations. UES must review the final site and grading plans to validate all recommendations rendered herein.

Additionally, if subsurface conditions are encountered during construction, which were not encountered in the borings, report those conditions immediately to us for observation and recommendations.

### 7.1 ANALYSIS

Based on the results of the soil borings, it is our opinion that proposed structures can be supported on properly designed and constructed shallow foundation systems. Provided that the site preparation recommendations outlined in this report are followed, the parameters outlined below may be used for foundation design.

If low consistency soils are identified at the time of excavation, remediation will be required. A selection of adequate remediation method will greatly depend on weather conditions during construction. Remediation may include selective undercut, moisture conditioning, placement in lifts and compaction, or complete removal and replacement with the compacted structural fill. Any soils containing organic materials (with more than four (4) percent organics) will be required to be replaced with structural fill free of deleterious materials or graded stone.

### 7.2 BEARING PRESSURE

There were lower consistency fill soils encountered in our borings. Since these soils were primarily encountered in the first few feet of the borings, we believe that most of these soils will be undercut during the construction of the footings. However, it should be anticipated that some localized undercutting of foundations may be required if low consistency or unsuitable material is encountered during foundation excavation. The undercut areas can be backfilled with #57 sized

crushed stone. We recommend all footing excavations are thoroughly evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer prior to concrete placement at the time of construction.

Provided our suggested site preparation procedures are followed, we recommend designing shallow footing foundations for a maximum allowable net soil bearing pressure of 2000 psf for building column and wall loads. The recommended bearing pressure is to accommodate settlement tolerances. The allowable net bearing pressure is that pressure that may be transmitted to the soil in excess of the minimum surrounding overburden pressure. The allowable bearing pressure should include dead load plus sustained live load.

### 7.3 FOUNDATION SIZE

For continuous wall foundations, the minimum footing width should comply with the current local building code, but under no circumstances should be less than 12 inches. The minimum width recommended for an isolated column footing is 24 inches. Even though the maximum allowable soil bearing pressure may not be achieved, these width recommendations should control the size of the foundations.

### 7.4 BEARING DEPTH

The base of all footings should be below the frost depth determined by the local building code. We recommend the bearing depth at least 18 inches below finished grade elevation. We recommend stormwater and surface water be diverted away from the building exterior, both during and after construction, to reduce the possibility of erosion beneath the exterior footings.

### 7.5 SETTLEMENT ESTIMATES

Post-construction settlement of the structure will be influenced by several interrelated factors, such as (1) subsurface stratification and strength/compressibility characteristics of the bearing soils to a depth of approximately twice the width of the footing; (2) footing size, bearing level, applied loads, and resulting bearing pressures beneath the foundation; (3) site preparation and earthwork construction techniques used by the contractor, and (4) external factors, including but not limited to vibration from off-site sources and groundwater fluctuations beyond those normally anticipated for the naturally-occurring site and soil conditions which are present.

Our settlement estimates for the structure are based upon adherence to our recommended site preparation procedures presented in Section 9.0 of this report. Any deviation from these recommendations could result in an increase in the estimated post-construction settlement of the structures. Furthermore, should building loads change from those assumed by us, greater settlements may be expected.

Using the recommended maximum allowable bearing pressure, the assumed maximum structural loads, and the field test data which we have correlated into the strength and compressibility characteristics of the subsurface soils, we estimate the total post-construction vertical settlement of the proposed structures to be on the order of 1 inch or less.

Differential settlement results from differences in applied bearing pressures and the variations in the compressibility characteristics of the subsurface soils. Assuming our site preparation recommendations are followed, we anticipate post-construction differential settlement of less than ½ inch.

### 7.6 FOOTING EVALUATIONS

All footings excavations should be evaluated by a Geotechnical Engineer prior to placement of concrete at the time of construction. It should be anticipated that localized undercutting of select areas may be required because of variations in the soil matrix, fill quality and/or contractor means and methods. If undercut, the unsuitable soils may be replaced with No. 57 crushed stone, over-poured with concrete or placed back with clean compacted structural fill.

### 7.7 FLOOR SLABS

Conventional floor slabs may be supported upon the compacted fill and should be structurally isolated from other foundation elements or adequately reinforced to prevent distress due to differential movements. For the slab design, we recommend using a subgrade modulus (k) of 100 pounds per cubic inches, which can be achieved by compacting the subgrade soils as recommended in this report. We recommend using a sheet vapor barrier of at least 10 millimeters in thickness

### 7.8 SEISMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Based on the site specific geotechnical subsurface data, and IBC 2012 site class definitions, section 1615, the seismic site classification will be site class D (stiff soil profile).

## 8.0 PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

### 8.1 GENERAL

We were not provided traffic loading data; however, we have prepared the pavement design based on our experience with similar soils and projects, and an assumed CBR value of 4 percent. Further, for light duty pavements we have assumed primarily car and light pickup trucks and for heavy duty pavements we have assumed truck traffic will consist of 3 to 4 delivery or trash collection trucks per week. If these traffic assumptions are not valid then a revised pavement section will be required. Design procedures are based on the AASHTO “Guide for Design of Pavement Structures” and associated literature. The materials recommended for the pavement design are referenced to the Georgia Department of Transportation’s (GDOT) Standard Specifications for Construction of Transportation Systems manual (2001 Edition, Page 217, Section 400 for Asphaltic Concrete and Page 969, Section 815 for Graded Aggregate Base). Based on the subsurface conditions, and assuming our grading recommendations will be implemented as specified, the following presents our recommendations regarding typical pavement sections and materials.

We recommend that a proofroll be performed with a fully-loaded tandem axle dump truck or similar rubber-tired equipment to determine if there is any unsuitable material located throughout the proposed building area. Any areas that deflect excessively under proofrolling should be undercut, as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer, to confirm that all unsuitable materials are removed and to prevent unnecessary undercutting of suitable materials. Remediation may include undercutting and replacement with compacted structural fill, installation of geogrid, or the use of additional graded aggregate base.

## 8.2 FLEXIBLE PAVEMENTS

It is our opinion that the flexible pavement should consist of a surface course of asphaltic concrete and a base course of granular material. Granular material is necessary for structural support and to help drain rainwater that seeps below the pavement. The thicknesses of our design are summarized in the following table.

**TABLE II - FLEXIBLE PAVEMENT DESIGN**

| FLEXIBLE PAVEMENT DESIGN | (Minimum Compacted Thickness) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Standard Duty (inches) | Heavy Duty (inches) |
| Asphalt Surface Course 9.5 mm SuperPave Mix | 1.5 | 2.0 |
| Asphalt Binder Course 19 mm SuperPave Mix | 2.0 | 2.0 |
| Aggregate Base Course | 6.0 | 8.0 |

## 8.3 RIGID PAVEMENT

Based on our past experience with similar type developments, we recommend the following rigid pavement design:

**TABLE III – RIGID PAVEMENT DESIGN**

| RIGID PAVEMENT DESIGN | (Minimum Thickness) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Standard Duty (Inches) | Heavy Duty (Inches) |
| Portland Cement Concrete | 5 | 6 |
| Graded Aggregate Base | 4 | 4 |

## 8.4 PAVEMENT MATERIALS

### Flexible Pavements

The aggregate base course should consist of graded aggregate base (Refer to GDOT's Standard Specifications for Construction of Transportation Systems manual, Page 969, Section 815). This base course should be compacted to at least 98 percent of the maximum dry density, as determined by the Modified Proctor compaction test (ASTM D1557, Method C). To confirm that the base course has been uniformly compacted, in-place field density tests should be performed by a qualified engineering technician, and the area should be methodically proof-rolled under his evaluation. In addition, all asphalt material and paving operations should meet applicable specifications of the Asphalt Institute and Georgia Department of Transportation.

All materials and workmanship should meet the requirements of GDOT's Standard Specifications for Construction of Transportation Systems manual. Also, sufficient tests and inspections should be performed during pavement installation to confirm that the required thickness, density, and quality requirements of the specifications are followed.

Our experience indicates that an overlay may be needed in approximately 8 to 10 years due to normal weathering of the asphaltic concrete. Additionally, some areas could require repair and maintenance in a shorter time period.

### Rigid Pavements

The concrete mix design should result in a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi at 28 days and a minimum flexural strength of 600 psi at 28 days. It is recommended that a minimum of 4 inches of crushed stone base underlie the concrete pavement. This granular layer will help provide additional support, provide drainage, and will help with the long-term performance of the concrete pavements. All materials, designs, and workmanship for rigid pavements should meet the applicable requirements of the GDOT's Standard Specifications for Construction of Roads and Bridges manual.

### General

The performance of the flexible and rigid pavements will be influenced by a number of factors including the actual condition of subgrade soils at the time of pavement installation, installed thicknesses and compaction, and drainage. The subgrade soils should be reevaluated by thorough proofrolling immediately prior to base placement and paving and any unstable areas repaired. This recommendation is very important to the long-term performance of the pavements and slabs. Areas adjacent to pavements (embankments, landscaped island, ditching, etc.) which can drain water (rainwater or sprinklers) should be designed so that water does not seep below the pavements. This may require the use of french drains or swales.

### Curbing

Use of extruded curb or elimination of curb entirely, can allow lateral migration of irrigation water from the abutting landscape areas into the base and/or interface between the asphaltic concrete and base. This migration of water may cause base saturation and failure and/or separation of the asphaltic concrete wearing surface from the base with subsequent rippling and pavement deterioration. For extruded curbing, we recommend that an underdrain be installed behind the curb wherever anticipated storm, surface, or irrigation waters may collect. In addition, landscape islands should be drained of excess water buildup using an underdrain system. Alternatively, we recommend that curbing around the landscape sections adjacent to the parking lots be constructed using full depth curb sections.

## 9.0 SITE PREPARATION

### 9.1 GENERAL

Site preparation will include: demolition and removal of any and all existing structures in the proposed building area, clearing any surface vegetation, trees and grass, stripping topsoil, organics, roots and other deleterious materials, followed by surface densification, proof-rolling, compaction of existing subgrade, and filling with structural fill or cutting to construction grade.

Special care should be exercised to completely remove all existing buried structures, underground utilities, and buried remains from the areas of planned development where required. All structural fill placed in these excavations should be carefully monitored and meet or exceed the standards and recommendations outlined in this report. We recommend a Geotechnical Engineering Technician monitor the subterranean demolition process as well as all site preparation on a full time basis to ensure provided recommendations are followed and care is taken to completely remove the afore mentioned structures and materials.

Special attention should be given to the subgrade after demolition, stripping, and lowering of site grades where necessary, prior to placement of structural fill, foundations, slabs, or pavements. Due to the existing fill it should be assumed that some remediation will be required. We recommend that an allowance be made in the contract documents for this remediation. The extent of this remediation may not be evident until the construction of the proposed structures. During the construction phase, selection of adequate remediation methods will greatly depend on weather conditions. Remediation may include selective undercut, moisture conditioning, placement in lifts and compaction, or complete removal and replacement with the compacted structural fill.

The exposed subgrade should be evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer to confirm that all unsuitable materials have been removed. To aid the Engineer during this evaluation, the exposed subgrade should be methodically proof-rolled with a heavily loaded tandem axle dump truck or similar rubber-tired equipment throughout the subgrade area to identify if unsuitable soils that require remediation are encountered. Proof-rolling not only helps reveal the presence of any unstable or otherwise unsuitable surface materials, but will densify the exposed subgrade for new fill placement and building support.

Any areas that deflect excessively under proof-rolling or that are deemed soft/loose or wet should be undercut, as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer, and backfilled with a select fill or stone. Material for replacement of loose, soft, organic, or wet soils is typically a graded aggregate base, no. 57 sized crushed stone, compacted structural fill, or geogrid. All undercutting should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer to confirm that all unsuitable materials are removed and to prevent unnecessary undercutting of suitable materials. Geotextile separation fabrics such as Mirafi 140N or equivalent.

Although auger refusal and PWR were not encountered in the locations explored, this does not completely eliminate the possibility of existing rock or PWR in unexplored areas that may impact the planned development of the site, as we currently understand it, using conventional construction practices. If rock is encountered during mass grading which was not revealed by the boring survey, difficult excavation conditions (heavy ripping and blasting) will be required to achieve proposed grades, for trench excavations, or installation of utility lines.

## 9.2 Fill Placement and Compaction

All fill placed in pavement and embankment areas outside the building pad should be free of deleterious materials and uniformly compacted to at least 95 percent of the soil's maximum dry density, as compared to a laboratory Standard Proctor compaction test (ASTM D-698). We

recommend that the building pad area fills and upper 12 inches of fill placed in the pavement area subgrade be compacted to at least 98 percent of the soil's maximum dry density, as compared to a laboratory Standard Proctor compaction test (ASTM D-698). The fill should be uniformly spread and compacted in lift thicknesses of 6 to 8 inches (loose measure), and the moisture content should be controlled to within plus or minus 3 percent of optimum.

**It is very important that all fill is uniformly well-compacted. Accordingly, a qualified engineering technician working under the direction of the Geotechnical Engineer should monitor fill placement. In addition to this visual evaluation, the technician should perform a sufficient number of in-place field density tests to confirm compaction.**

### 9.3 Use of Excavated Soils as Structural Fill

Based on our visual observations and testing data from the soil test borings, we believe that generally, with the exception of the surficial topsoil and vegetation, the onsite soils classified according to the United Soil Classification System as SM, ML and CL such as those encountered in the borings may be reused as structural fill but they will require careful moisture control. clay and silt content within the soil profile**.**

### 9.4 Underground Utility Lines

All fill placed in underground utility trenches should be placed and compacted as outlined in this section. However, our experience indicates that compacting soils in utility trenches is difficult to perform and achieving the required degree of compaction is difficult, especially below the spring-line of pipes. Accordingly, we recommend that if the required compaction of the utility trench backfill cannot be achieved, flowable fill or crushed stone (No. 57) should be used to backfill the trench up to at least the pipe spring-line. Rock, boulders, whether crushed or not, should not be used as trench backfill.

### 9.5 Excavated Slopes and Fill Embankments

All fill placed in embankments should be uniformly compacted to a similar requirement as discussed previously. It is difficult to compact soil at the face of slopes. Therefore, it will be necessary to construct the slopes outside their design limits, and then cut them back, leaving the exposed face well compacted. This is very important to the performance of the slopes and we advise special care be used. Also, existing grade that will underlie new fill embankments should be benched in order for soil compaction to be accomplished in a horizontal plane. The benching will tie the new fill into the existing grade and reduce the potential for slippage or slope stability failure at the interface of existing grade and new fill embankment.

We recommend that the face of slopes and embankments be protected by establishing vegetation or mulching as soon as practical after grading. Rainwater runoff should be diverted away from the crest of slopes. It is very important that all factors associated with slopes be constructed in accordance with plans and specifications.

Construction of the slopes should be specifically monitored by the Geotechnical Engineer or his designated representative, and the Engineer should closely review field density reports for the embankments.

Based on the subsurface data gathered as part of this geotechnical exploration and our experience, if these recommendations are followed, slopes no steeper than 2H:1V and less than 10 feet maximum vertical height for this project site should have a global stability factor of safety of at least 2.

### 9.6 GROUNDWATER CONTROL

If groundwater table is encountered at the time of construction, the groundwater must be lowered and continuously maintained at a minimum depth of 3 feet below the working elevation to permit subgrade preparation, excavations activities and construction. The dewatering systems should be installed and operational prior to excavation below the water table and should remain in continuous operation until construction is completed.

Design of temporary dewatering systems is usually the responsibility of the contractor. Conventional construction dewatering system of trenches, sumps and pumps and/or well points should be practical to control groundwater and rainfall during trench excavation and pipe

### 9.7 EXCAVATIONS

Excavations should be sloped as necessary to prevent slope failure and to allow backfilling. As a minimum, temporary excavations greater than 4 feet depth should be sloped in accordance with OSHA regulations (29 CFR Part 1926) dated October 31, 1989. Where lateral confinement will not permit slopes to be laid back, the excavation should be shored in accordance with OSHA requirements. During excavation, excavated material should not be stockpiled at the top of the slope within a horizontal distance equal to the excavation depth. Provisions for maintaining workman safety within excavations is the sole responsibility of the contractor.

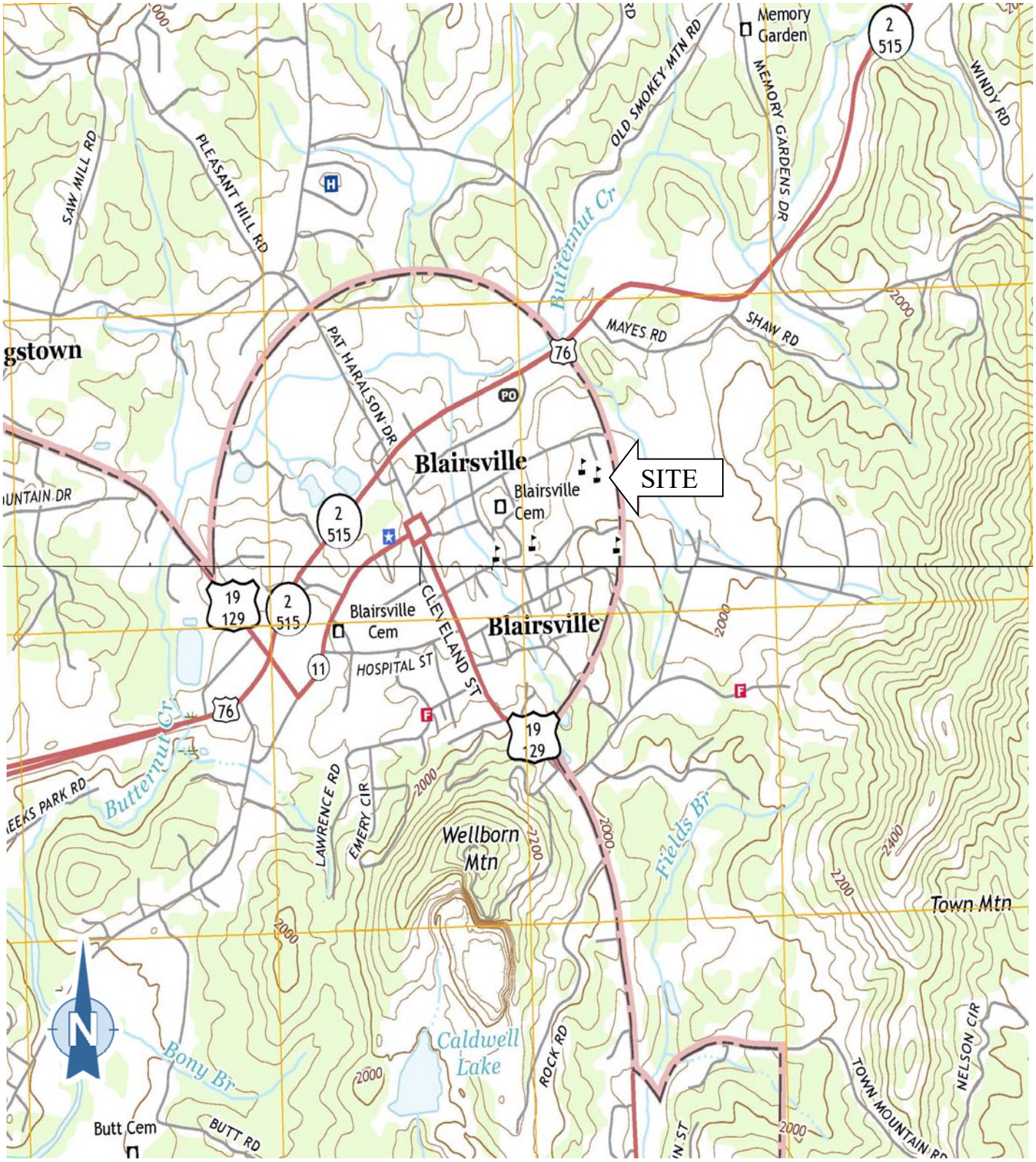
## 10.0 CLOSURE

Our interpretation of the site soil and groundwater conditions is based on our general knowledge of the area and the subsurface borings performed. Universal should provide the inspection services during the site preparation procedures to confirm that the earthwork operations meet the intent of the recommendations presented in this report.

An important aspect of the success of the construction process is the transfer of information between all concerned parties to start of any activities on-site. As such, ***Universal Engineering Sciences strongly recommends that a pre-construction meeting be held with the following representatives in attendance at a minimum: General contractor, site (earthwork) contractor, civil and structural engineer, underground utility contractor, and UES geotechnical engineer and materials testing technician.*** At this meeting, UES would describe in detail the geotechnical considerations that would impact the construction process and future serviceability of the improvements.

# APPENDIX

- Figure 1: Site Vicinity Map
- Figure 2: SPT Boring Location Plan
- Boring Logs (4 pages)
- Keys to Boring Logs
- Important Information About This Geotechnical Engineering Report




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION**<br>Union County Elementary Field House<br>Blairsville, Union County, Georgia | FOR: **Union County Schools** | |
| | | DRAWN BY : AN | DATE : 1/14/2019 |
| | | CHECKED BY : ST | |
| | **Figure 1 – Site Vicinity Map** | SCALE : NTS | REFERENCE: USGS Quad Map – Blairsville and Coosa Bald, GA 2017 |
| | | PROJ NO: 1630.1900002.0000 | REPORT NO: 1646655 |


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION**<br>**Union County Elementary Field House**<br>**Blairsville, Union County, Georgia** | FOR: **Union County** | |
| | | DRAWN BY : AN | CHECKED BY: ST | DATE : 2/12/19 |
| | | REFERENCE: Google Earth and Drawing C100 by Southern A&E (12/18/18) | |
| | **Figure 2: SPT Boring Location Plan** | UES PROJECT NO: 1630.1900002.0000 | REPORT NO: 1646655 |

# UNIVERSAL ENGINEERING SCIENCES
# BORING LOG

| | |
|---|---|
| PROJECT NO.: | 1630.1900002.0000 |
| REPORT NO.: | 1646655 |

PROJECT: Union County Field House
Union County Elementary School
Blairsville, Georgia

BORING DESIGNATION: **B-01** SHEET: **1 of 1**
SECTION: TOWNSHIP: RANGE:

CLIENT: Union County Schools
LOCATION:
REMARKS: Not Surveyed, Drilled with CME 550 (Automatic Hammer)

G.S. ELEVATION (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (TOB) (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (24HR) (ft):
EST W.S.W.T (ft) : NE

DATE STARTED: 2/1/19
DATE FINISHED: 2/1/19
DRILLED BY: Gable Drilling
TYPE OF SAMPLING: HSA, SPT

| DEPTH (FT.) | SAMPLE | BLOWS PER 6" INCREMENT | DCP blows/ 1.75" | W.T. | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | -200 (%) | MC (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS LL | ATTERBERG LIMITS PI | K (FT./ DAY) | ORG. CONT. (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | | | **CONCRETE**, 4.5 inches | | | | | | |
| | X | | 5 | | | **FILL**: firm, red brown, sandy **SILT (ML)**, with mica | | | | | | |
| | X | | 4 | | | Soft, gray orange, sandy **SILT (ML)**, with mica, with organics | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | 12 | | | **RESIDUUM**: stiff, red brown, sandy **SILT (ML)**, with mica, trace organics | | | | | | |
| | X | | 11 | | | Medium dense, red brown black, silty **SAND**, Micaceous | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | 17 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# UNIVERSAL ENGINEERING SCIENCES
# BORING LOG

| | |
|---|---|
| PROJECT NO.: | 1630.1900002.0000 |
| REPORT NO.: | 1646655 |

PROJECT: Union County Field House
Union County Elementary School
Blairsville, Georgia

BORING DESIGNATION: **B-02** SHEET: **1 of 1**
SECTION: TOWNSHIP: RANGE:

CLIENT: Union County Schools
LOCATION:
REMARKS: Not Surveyed, Drilled with CME 550 (Automatic Hammer)

G.S. ELEVATION (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (TOB) (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (24HR) (ft):
EST W.S.W.T (ft) : NE

DATE STARTED: 2/1/19
DATE FINISHED: 2/1/19
DRILLED BY: Gable Drilling
TYPE OF SAMPLING: HSA, SPT

| DEPTH (FT.) | SAMPLE | BLOWS PER 6" INCREMENT | DCP blows/ 1.75" | W.T. | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | -200 (%) | MC (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS LL | ATTERBERG LIMITS PI | K (FT./ DAY) | ORG. CONT. (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | | | **CONCRETE**, 5 inches | | | | | | |
| | X | | 12 | | | **FILL**: medium dense, tan black red brown, silty **SAND (SM)**, with organics, trace mica, with rock fragments | | | | | | |
| 5 | X | | 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | 8 | | | **RESIDUUM**: stiff to firm, red brown, sandy **SILT (ML)**, with mica, trace organics | | | | | | |
| 10 | X | | 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | Loose, red brown white black, silty **SAND**, Micaceous | | | | | | |
| 15 | X | | 10 | | | | | | | | | |

# UNIVERSAL ENGINEERING SCIENCES
# BORING LOG

| | |
|---|---|
| PROJECT NO.: | 1630.1900002.0000 |
| REPORT NO.: | 1646655 |

PROJECT: Union County Field House
Union County Elementary School
Blairsville, Georgia

BORING DESIGNATION: **B-03** SHEET: **1 of 1**
SECTION: TOWNSHIP: RANGE:

CLIENT: Union County Schools
LOCATION:
REMARKS: Not Surveyed, Drilled with CME 550 (Automatic Hammer)

G.S. ELEVATION (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (TOB) (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (24HR) (ft):
EST W.S.W.T (ft) : NE

DATE STARTED: 2/1/19
DATE FINISHED: 2/1/19
DRILLED BY: Gable Drilling
TYPE OF SAMPLING: HSA, SPT

| DEPTH (FT.) | SAMPLE | BLOWS PER 6" INCREMENT | DCP blows/ 1.75" | W.T. | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | -200 (%) | MC (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS LL | ATTERBERG LIMITS PI | K (FT./ DAY) | ORG. CONT. (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | | | **FILL**: loose, brown red, silty **SAND (SM)**, with mica, trace rock fragments | | | | | | |
| | | | 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | **RESIDUUM**: medium dense, red brown, silty **SAND (SM)**, Micaceous | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | 15 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | 15 | | | | | | | | | |

# UNIVERSAL ENGINEERING SCIENCES
# BORING LOG

| | |
|---|---|
| PROJECT NO.: | 1630.1900002.0000 |
| REPORT NO.: | 1646655 |

PROJECT: Union County Field House
Union County Elementary School
Blairsville, Georgia

BORING DESIGNATION: **B-04** SHEET: **1 of 1**
SECTION: TOWNSHIP: RANGE:

CLIENT: Union County Schools
LOCATION:
REMARKS: Not Surveyed, Drilled with CME 550 (Automatic Hammer)

G.S. ELEVATION (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (TOB) (ft):
DEPTH TO GW (24HR) (ft):
EST W.S.W.T (ft) : NE

DATE STARTED: 2/1/19
DATE FINISHED: 2/1/19
DRILLED BY: Gable Drilling
TYPE OF SAMPLING: HSA, SPT

| DEPTH (FT.) | SAMPLE | BLOWS PER 6" INCREMENT | DCP blows/ 1.75" | W.T. | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | -200 (%) | MC (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS LL | ATTERBERG LIMITS PI | K (FT./ DAY) | ORG. CONT. (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | | | **RESIDUUM**: very stiff, brown red, sandy **SILT**, with mica | | | | | | |
| | X | | 20 | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | | | | Loose, red brown, silty **SAND (SM)**, trace mica, trace organics | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | 15 | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | 13 | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | | | | Loose, tan black red brown, silty **SAND (SM)**, Micaceous | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | 16 | | | | | | | | | |
| | X | | 17 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**UNIVERSAL**
ENGINEERING SCIENCES

# KEY TO BORING LOGS

## SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

| SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| N-Value | No. of Blows of a 140-lb. Weight Falling 30 Inches Required to Drive a Standard Spoon 1 Foot |
| WOR | Weight of Drill Rods |
| WOH | Weight of Drill Rods and Hammer |
| | Sample from Auger Cuttings |
| | Standard Penetration Test Sample |
| | Thin-wall Shelby Tube Sample (Undisturbed Sampler Used) |
| RQD | Rock Quality Designation |
| | Stabilized Groundwater Level |
| | Seasonal High Groundwater Level (also referred to as the W.S.W.T.) |
| NE | Not Encountered |
| GNE | Groundwater Not Encountered |
| BT | Boring Terminated |
| -200 (%) | Fines Content or % Passing No. 200 Sieve |
| MC (%) | Moisture Content |
| LL | Liquid Limit (Atterberg Limits Test) |
| PI | Plasticity Index (Atterberg Limits Test) |
| NP | Non-Plastic (Atterberg Limits Test) |
| K | Coefficient of Permeability |
| Org. Cont. | Organic Content |
| G.S. Elevation | Ground Surface Elevation |

## UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

| MAJOR DIVISIONS | | | GROUP SYMBOLS | TYPICAL NAMES |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| COARSE GRAINED SOILS More than 50% retained on the No. 200 sieve* | GRAVELS 50% or more of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve | CLEAN GRAVELS | GW | Well-graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines |
| | | | GP | Poorly graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines |
| | | GRAVELS WITH FINES | GM | Silty gravels and gravel-sand-silt mixtures |
| | | | GC | Clayey gravels and gravel-sand-clay mixtures |
| | SANDS More than 50% of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve | CLEAN SANDS 5% or less passing No. 200 sieve | SW** | Well-graded sands and gravelly sands, little or no fines |
| | | | SP** | Poorly graded sands and gravelly sands, little or no fines |
| | | SANDS with 12% or more passing No. 200 sieve | SM** | Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures |
| | | | SC** | Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures |
| FINE-GRAINED SIOLS 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve* | SILTS AND CLAYS Liquid limit 50% or less | | ML | Inorganic silts, very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands |
| | | | CL | Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, lean clays |
| | | | OL | Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity |
| | SILTS AND CLAYS Liquid limit greater than 50% | | MH | Inorganic silts, micaceous or diamicaceous fine sands or silts, elastic silts |
| | | | CH | Inorganic clays or clays of high plasticity, fat clays |
| | | | OH | Organic clays of medium to high plasticity |
| | | | PT | Peat, muck and other highly organic soils |

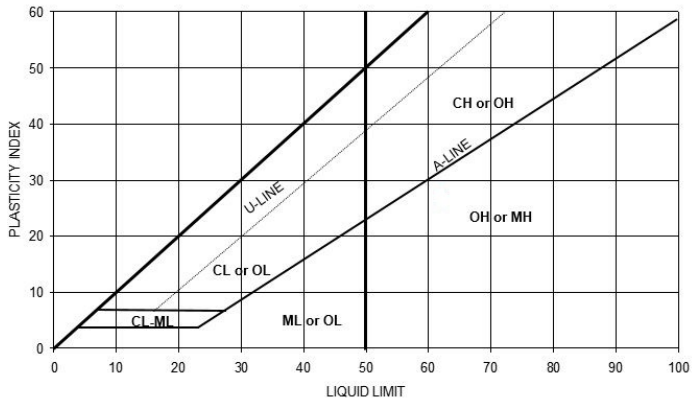
*Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75 mm) sieve
** Use dual symbol (such as SP-SM and SP-SC) for soils with more than 5% but less than 12% passing the No. 200 sieve

**RELATIVE DENSITY**
(Sands and Gravels)
Very loose – Less than 4 Blow/Foot
Loose – 4 to 10 Blows/Foot
Medium Dense – 11 to 30 Blows/Foot
Dense – 31 to 50 Blows/Foot
Very Dense – More than 50 Blows/Foot

**CONSISTENCY**
(Silts and Clays)
Very Soft – Less than 2 Blows/Foot
Soft – 2 to 4 Blows/Foot
Firm – 5 to 8 Blows/Foot
Stiff – 9 to 15 Blows/Foot
Very Stiff – 16 to 30 Blows/Foot
Hard – More than 30 Blows/Foot

**RELATIVE HARDNESS**
(Limestone)
Soft – 100 Blows for more than 2 Inches
Hard – 100 Blows for less than 2 Inches

PLASTICITY CHART



# Important Information about This

# Geotechnical-Engineering Report

**Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.**

**While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.**

## Geotechnical Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a civil engineer may not fulfill the needs of a constructor — a construction contractor — or even another civil engineer. Because each geotechnical- engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. No one except you should rely on this geotechnical-engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one — not even you* — should apply this report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.

## Read the Full Report

Serious problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read it all. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only.

## Geotechnical Engineers Base Each Report on a Unique Set of Project-Specific Factors

Geotechnical engineers consider many unique, project-specific factors when establishing the scope of a study. Typical factors include: the client's goals, objectives, and risk-management preferences; the general nature of the structure involved, its size, and configuration; the location of the structure on the site; and other planned or existing site improvements, such as access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities. Unless the geotechnical engineer who conducted the study specifically indicates otherwise, do not rely on a geotechnical-engineering report that was:

- not prepared for you;
- not prepared for your project;
- not prepared for the specific site explored; or
- completed before important project changes were made.

Typical changes that can erode the reliability of an existing geotechnical-engineering report include those that affect:

- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light-industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure;
- the composition of the design team; or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes—even minor ones—and request an assessment of their impact. *Geotechnical engineers cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that occur because their reports do not consider developments of which they were not informed.*

## Subsurface Conditions Can Change

A geotechnical-engineering report is based on conditions that existed at the time the geotechnical engineer performed the study. *Do not rely on a geotechnical-engineering report whose adequacy may have been affected by*: the passage of time; man-made events, such as construction on or adjacent to the site; or natural events, such as floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations. *Contact the geotechnical engineer before applying this report to determine if it is still reliable.* A minor amount of additional testing or analysis could prevent major problems.

## Most Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions only at those points where subsurface tests are conducted or samples are taken. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their professional judgment to render an opinion about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual subsurface conditions may differ — sometimes significantly — from those indicated in your report. Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide geotechnical-construction observation is the most effective method of managing the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

## A Report's Recommendations Are Not Final

Do not overrely on the confirmation-dependent recommendations included in your report. *Confirmation-dependent recommendations are not final,* because geotechnical engineers develop them principally from judgment and opinion. Geotechnical engineers can finalize their recommendations *only* by observing actual subsurface conditions revealed during construction. *The geotechnical engineer who developed your report cannot assume responsibility or liability for the report's confirmation-dependent recommendations if that engineer does not perform the geotechnical-construction observation required to confirm the recommendations' applicability.*

## A Geotechnical-Engineering Report Is Subject to Misinterpretation

Other design-team members' misinterpretation of geotechnical-engineering reports has resulted in costly

problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer confer with appropriate members of the design team after submitting the report. Also retain your geotechnical engineer to review pertinent elements of the design team's plans and specifications. Constructors can also misinterpret a geotechnical-engineering report. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences, and by providing geotechnical construction observation.

## Do Not Redraw the Engineer's Logs

Geotechnical engineers prepare final boring and testing logs based upon their interpretation of field logs and laboratory data. To prevent errors or omissions, the logs included in a geotechnical-engineering report should *never* be redrawn for inclusion in architectural or other design drawings. Only photographic or electronic reproduction is acceptable, *but recognize that separating logs from the report can elevate risk.*

## Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can make constructors liable for unanticipated subsurface conditions by limiting what they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent costly problems, give constructors the complete geotechnical-engineering report, *but* preface it with a clearly written letter of transmittal. In that letter, advise constructors that the report was not prepared for purposes of bid development and that the report's accuracy is limited; encourage them to confer with the geotechnical engineer who prepared the report (a modest fee may be required) and/or to conduct additional study to obtain the specific types of information they need or prefer. A prebid conference can also be valuable. *Be sure constructors have sufficient time* to perform additional study. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the best information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions.

## Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some clients, design professionals, and constructors fail to recognize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This lack of understanding has created unrealistic expectations that have led to disappointments, claims, and disputes. To help reduce the risk of such outcomes, geotechnical engineers commonly include a variety of explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations," many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

## Environmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform an *environmental* study differ significantly from those used to perform a *geotechnical* study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually relate any environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated environmental problems have led to numerous project failures.* If you have not yet obtained your own environmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk-management guidance. *Do not rely on an environmental report prepared for someone else.*

## Obtain Professional Assistance To Deal with Mold

Diverse strategies can be applied during building design, construction, operation, and maintenance to prevent significant amounts of mold from growing on indoor surfaces. To be effective, all such strategies should be devised for the *express purpose* of mold prevention, integrated into a comprehensive plan, and executed with diligent oversight by a professional mold-prevention consultant. Because just a small amount of water or moisture can lead to the development of severe mold infestations, many mold- prevention strategies focus on keeping building surfaces dry. While groundwater, water infiltration, and similar issues may have been addressed as part of the geotechnical- engineering study whose findings are conveyed in this report, the geotechnical engineer in charge of this project is not a mold prevention consultant; *none of the services performed in connection with the geotechnical engineer's study were designed or conducted for the purpose of mold prevention. Proper implementation of the recommendations conveyed in this report will not of itself be sufficient to prevent mold from growing in or on the structure involved.*

## Rely, on Your GBC-Member Geotechnical Engineer for Additional Assistance

Membership in the Geotechnical Business Council of the Geoprofessional Business Association exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project. Confer with you GBC-Member geotechnical engineer for more information.

GEOTECHNICAL BUSINESS COUNCIL
of the Geoprofessional Business Association

8811 Colesville Road/Suite G106, Silver Spring, MD 20910
Telephone: 301/565-2733 Facsimile: 301/589-2017
e-mail: info@geoprofessional.org www.geoprofessional.org